This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 20918.87.130

Harvard College Library

FROM THE

CONSTANTIUS FUND.

Established by Professor E. A. SOPHOCLES of Harvard University for "the purchase of Greek and Latin books (the ancient classics) or of Arabic books, or of books illustrating or explaining such Greek, Latin, or Arabic books." (Will, dated 1880.)

Received 12 Nov., 1888.

Digitized by Google

3 2044 102 875 804

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE

ETON LATIN GRAMMAR.

Part I.—ELEMENTARY.

FOR USE IN THE LOWER FORMS.

COMPILED, WITH THE SANCTION OF THE HEAD MASTER,
Arthur Campbell
BY A. C AINGER, M.A.,
TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;
Henry Gilbert
AND H. G. WINTLE, M.A.,
CHRIST CHURCH, OXFORD;
ASSISTANT MASTERS AT ETON COLLEGE.

LONDON:
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.
ETON: R. INGALTON DRAKE.
1887.

Digitized by Google

Educ T 20918.87.130
~~5252.62~~

Constantine Fund

BOOKS IN USE AT ETON COLLEGE.

A FIRST LATIN EXERCISE-BOOK, adapted to the Eton Latin Grammar. By A. C. AINGER, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge; and H. G. WINTLE, M.A., Christ Church, Oxford; Assistant Masters at Eton College. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

THE ETON FOURTH FORM OVID: Selections from OVID and TIBULLUS. With Notes by H. G. WINTLE. Third Edition. Post 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

THE ETON HORACE. Part I. THE ODES AND EPODES. With Notes to the Odes. In Two Parts. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.* Book I. By F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton College.

As it is considered desirable that the notes should be used only in the preparation of the lesson, and not in the class, they are bound up separate from the text.

JOHN MURRAY, Albemarle Street.

LONDON: PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

Digitized by Google

NOTICE.

THE old Eton Latin Grammar, written for the use of the school, maintained its ground until, with the advance of scholarship, it was felt by teachers to be antiquated, and fell into disuse.

It is now desired to revive at Eton an Eton Latin Grammar, for the use of the school. Of this Grammar, Part 1, Elementary, is intended to meet the requirements of the boys in the lower Forms.

An Elementary Grammar should make the acquirement of the language easier, and not harder, to the boy.

It should not add to his difficulties by the multiplication of technical terms, or by intricacies of arrangement.

Rather it should by a certain homeliness of explanation, as well as by clearness of method, place within the reach of his understanding and his industry the knowledge which he is expected to obtain.

Such is the aim of the present work, which has been undertaken at my request.

The Eton Latin Grammar is the property of the school, and may therefore be altered or amended from time to time, as the authorities of the school shall see fit.

EDMOND WARRE.

BARONS DOWN,
August 1885.

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

An Elementary Latin Grammar is naturally divided into two parts,—that which should be learnt by heart, and that with which familiarity is to be gained by constant reference.

In the first of these parts—the Accidence and the Syntax Rules—our aim has been, on the one hand, conciseness, gained not by the use of abbreviations or technical terms, but by the omission of matter not essential to beginners; and, on the other hand, clearness, not only of statement, but also of type and arrangement.

In the second part, we have endeavoured to facilitate the use of the book as a book of reference by adopting an alphabetical order, wherever it was possible.

This has involved the sacrifice or postponement of much that is undoubtedly valuable, as, for instance, the classification of Verbs under their different stems—in short, almost all the scientific part of elementary grammar; but our hope is that such losses are outweighed by a gain in simplicity and plainness, in a manual intended for the use of younger boys, and especially for the large majority who find Latin a very difficult study.

We have also borne in mind the fact, that for the beginner the greatest difficulties arise rather in his early efforts to turn English into Latin, than in parsing the

Digitized by Google

words or understanding the construction of a Latin sentence; and we have therefore endeavoured, by approaching the subject in many instances from the English side, to give help where it is most needed.

We have returned to the old arrangement of Cases, putting the Genitive next to the Nominative.

We omit many details of Genders, and irregular forms of comparatively rare occurrence, in the hope that ordinary forms and constructions may thereby have a better chance of being understood and remembered.

In the Tables of Verbs, we print the Perfect of all Verbs twice over, as Perfect and as Aorist; and we omit the English rendering of Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood, which is always awkward and often misleading.

The Syntax Rules are printed twice, first with explanations, which, while not intended in any way to supersede oral teaching or fetter a teacher's discretion, may still be found of service; and, secondly, with examples drawn from the Latin poets, which may be useful for repetition.

We gratefully acknowledge the assistance we have derived from such standard works as the Grammars of Madvig, Roby, and Kennedy; the Edition of Arnold's Latin Prose Composition revised by the Dean of Westminster; the Dictionary of Lewis and Short (whose orthography has usually been adopted); and the Dictionaries of Dr. Smith (which have been of great service in the preparation of the List of Conjunctions, &c.); while we have found useful hints in Allen's Latin Grammar and other elementary school books.

Digitized by Google

Our thanks are also due to friends, both at Eton and elsewhere, for many valuable suggestions and criticisms. The list is too long to enumerate them by name, but we would take this opportunity of mentioning the constant help we have received from the Head Master of Eton (at whose wish the book was undertaken), who has gone carefully through the proofs of the entire work.

The book owes much also to the care and patience of the publisher and printers, who have spared no pains to render it complete and free from error, and to carry out our wishes in every respect.

We have no right to claim indulgence for inaccuracies or omissions of necessary matter, but, as we can hardly expect that no such blemishes will be discovered, we hope that those who use the book will kindly send us any suggestions for its amendment or improvement.

A. C. AINGER,
H. G. WINTLE.

ETON, *September* 1885.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Notice	iii
Preface	v
Accidence	1
Declension of Substantives	5
First Declension	6
Second Declension	7
Third Declension	10
Fourth Declension	14
Fifth Declension	16
Declension of Adjectives	18
Comparison of Adjectives	26
Pronouns	29
Regular Verbs	35
Irregular Verbs	54
List of Latin Prepositions	81
Notes	83
Syntax, with Explanations	97
Syntax Rules, with Examples for Repetition	129
List of certain Latin Conjunctions, etc.	153
List of Verbs, with Notes	162
List of English Prepositions and Conjunctions	218
Index	303

Digitized by Google

NOTICE.—You will see over the vowels in the Latin words in this book a mark ˘ or ‒ . These marks refer to what is called the "quantity" of the syllables over which they are written.

The mark ˘ shows you that the syllable is *short*, as "Dŏmĭnŭs"; the mark ‒ shows you that it is *long*, as "Mūsīs." When both marks are written over a vowel, the syllable may be either *short* or *long*, as "tĕnĕbrīs."

Diphthongs (ae, oe, au, &c.) have only one mark, ‒ or ˘, over the two vowels, and form only one syllable.

The quantity of final syllables ending in 'm' is not marked in this book. The quantity of other final syllables is marked without reference to the word which follows them.

Digitized by Google

ETON LATIN GRAMMAR.

ACCIDENCE.

1. The English Alphabet contains twenty-six letters. Words consist of letters put together, and sentences are formed by putting words together.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English Alphabet, omitting the letter *W*.

In Latin, as in English, words consist of letters put together, and sentences are formed by putting words together.

In English the order of the words in a sentence is a guide to the meaning of the sentence.

The order of the words in a Latin sentence will not serve as a guide to its meaning.

2. Take an English sentence; for example—

The mother loves the boy..

In Latin "*mother*" is "mātĕr,"
"*I love*" is "ămō,"
"*boy*" is "pŭĕr."

But if we translate the sentence into Latin, it will run,
not—mātĕr ămō pŭĕr,
but—mātĕr pŭĕrum ămăt.

Notice here (besides the order of the words)—
(1) the English word "*the*" is not translated;
(2) "ămō" becomes "ămăt;"
(3) "pŭĕr" becomes "pŭĕrum."

2 5

Digitized by Google

3. Now take another sentence—

"*The boy's father strikes the dog with a stick.*'

In Latin "*father*" is "pătĕr,"
"*boy*" is "pŭĕr,"
"*I strike*" is "vērbĕrō,"
"*dog*" is "cănĭs,"
"*stick*" is "băcŭlum."

But the Latin runs,

not—pŭĕr pătĕr vērbĕrō cănĭs băcŭlum,
but—pŭĕrī pătĕr cănem băcŭlō vērbĕrăt.

Notice here (besides the order of the words)—

(1) the English word "*the*" is not translated;
(2) "pŭĕr" becomes "pŭĕrī;"
(3) "vērbĕrō" becomes "vērbĕrăt;"
(4) "cănĭs" becomes "cănem;"
(5) "băcŭlum" becomes "băcŭlō;"
(6) "*a*" is not translated.

Notice further—

(1) "*boy*" is "pŭĕr,"
but "*boy's*" is "pŭĕrī."

(2) "*I strike*" is "vērbĕrō,"
but (*the father*) "*strikes*" is "vērbĕrăt."

4. English Grammar teaches us that

"*boy*" is in the **Nominative Case,**
"*boy's*" is in the **Possessive Case,**

and that

"(*I*) *strike*" is 1st person, singular number, Present tense,
"(*the father*) *strikes*" is 3rd person, singular number, Present tense.

In the same way in Latin—

"pŭĕr" is in the Nominative Case,
"pŭĕrī" is in the Genitive Case,

Digitized by Google

"vĕrbĕrō" is 1st person, singular number, Present tense,
"vĕrbĕrăt" is 3rd person, singular number, Present tense.

From this we see, that both in Latin and English, if you add to or alter the end or **Termination** of a word, you alter its meaning in the sentence.

But this kind of change is much more common in Latin than in English, as, for example, in our first sentence—

"pŭĕr" became "pŭĕrum;"

and in our second sentence—

"cănĭs" became "cănem,"
"băcŭlum" became "băcŭlō,"

without any similar change in the English.

5. From all this we may draw our first rule—

"When you change the termination of a Latin word, you change its meaning in the sentence."

This rule is true of **Substantives** and words which are akin to **Substantives**; namely, **Adjectives** and **Pronouns.** It is also true of **Verbs.**

These changes follow regular rules, which you must know by heart before you can translate Latin sentences into English, or form Latin sentences out of English.

6. **Substantives** in Latin are of two **Numbers**—**Singular** and **Plural**, as in English. For example—

Singular.	Plural.
English "*dog*,"	"*dogs*."
Latin "cănĭs,"	"cănēs."

And there are six **Cases** in each number, namely—**Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.** When you repeat these Cases of any Substantive, you are said to "decline" the Substantive; and the list of twelve Cases, six Singular and six Plural, is called a "**Declension.**"

Digitized by Google

There are five **Declensions** of Substantives in Latin.

Adjectives and **Pronouns** have two Numbers and six Cases each, like Substantives.

7. **Verbs** have two **Numbers**—Singular and Plural, as in English; and three **Persons**—First, Second, and Third, in each Number.

They have also, as in English, different **Moods (Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive, Infinitive)**, and different **Tenses—Present, Future, Perfect, Imperfect, Pluperfect, Aorist.**

They have also two **Voices—Active** and **Passive**, as in English.

When you repeat the Persons, Singular and Plural, in any Tense and any Mood, Active or Passive, of a Verb, you are said to "**conjugate**" that Tense, and the whole group of Moods and Tenses, which make up the Verb, is called a "**Conjugation.**"

There are four **Conjugations** of Verbs in Latin.

8. Thus, there are four classes of words in Latin, namely—

Substantives,
Adjectives,
Pronouns,
Verbs;

which change their meaning in the sentence when the end of the word is changed, and are called "**Declinable.**"

There are four other classes of words—

Prepositions,
Adverbs,
Conjunctions,
Interjections,

the forms of which are never changed, and these are called "**Indeclinable.**"

Digitized by Google

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Genders.

There are three Genders, namely—

Masculine or Male Gender.
Feminine or Female Gender.
Neuter, or Neither Male nor Female Gender.

In Latin every Substantive has its own Gender, and you can often tell the Gender of a Substantive by its termination.

You will learn the Genders of Substantives, partly by learning rules for each Declension, but partly too by memory and observation, since the rules will not always guide you right.

Notice carefully therefore, and try to remember the Gender of every Substantive which you learn.

Digitized by Google

First Declension.

You can almost always tell the Declension to which any word belongs by the ending of the Genitive Singular.

In the First Declension, the Genitive Singular ends in "āē."

Singular.

Nom.	**Mūsă,**	a Muse.
Gen.	**Mūsāē,**	of a Muse.
Dat.	**Mūsāē,**	to a Muse.
Acc.	**Mūsam,**	a Muse.
Voc.	**Mūsă,**	O Muse.
Abl.	**Mūsā,**	from a Muse.

Plural.

Nom.	**Mūsāē,**	Muses.
Gen.	**Mūsārum,**	of Muses.
Dat.	**Mūsīs,**	to Muses.
Acc.	**Mūsās,**	Muses.
Voc.	**Mūsāē,**	O Muses.
Abl.	**Mūsīs,**	from Muses.

Like "Mūsă" are declined—

cănnă, *a reed.*	hōstĭă, *a victim.*
cērvă, *a hind.*	lănă, *wool.*
cŏmă, *the hair.*	pŭēllă, *a girl*, &c.

"Mūsă" is Feminine, and so are most words of the First Declension. But there are some words in common use,—such as, "nāūtă" (*a sailor*), "pŏētă" (*a poet*), "ăgrĭcŏlă" (*a farmer*),—which are Masculine.

Digitized by Google

Second Declension.

In the Second Declension the Genitive Singular ends in "I."

Singular.

Nom.	**Dŏmĭnŭs,**	a lord.
Gen.	**Dŏmĭnī,**	of a lord.
Dat.	**Dŏmĭnō,**	to a lord.
Acc.	**Dŏmĭnum,**	a lord.
Voc.	**Dŏmĭnĕ,**	O lord.
Abl.	**Dŏmĭnō,**	from a lord.

Plural.

Nom.	**Dŏmĭnī,**	lords.
Gen.	**Dŏmĭnōrum,**	of lords.
Dat.	**Dŏmĭnīs,**	to lords.
Acc.	**Dŏmĭnōs,**	lords.
Voc.	**Dŏmĭnī,**	O lords.
Abl.	**Dŏmĭnīs,**	from lords.

Singular.

Nom.	**Pŭĕr,**	a boy.
Gen.	**Pŭĕrī,**	of a boy.
Dat.	**Pŭĕrō,**	to a boy.
Acc.	**Pŭĕrum,**	a boy.
Voc.	**Pŭĕr,**	O boy.
Abl.	**Pŭĕrō,**	from a boy.

Plural.

Nom.	**Pŭĕrī,**	boys.
Gen.	**Pŭĕrōrum,**	of boys.
Dat.	**Pŭĕrīs,**	to boys.
Acc.	**Pŭĕrōs,**	boys.
Voc.	**Pŭĕrī,**	O boys.
Abl.	**Pŭĕrīs,**	from boys.

Digitized by Google

Singular.

Nom.	**Măgistĕr,**	a master.
Gen.	**Măgistrī,**	of a master.
Dat.	**Măgistrō,**	to a master.
Acc.	**Măgistrum,**	a master.
Voc.	**Măgistĕr,**	O master.
Abl.	**Măgistrō,**	from a master

Plural.

Nom.	**Măgistrī,**	masters.
Gen.	**Măgistrōrum,**	of masters.
Dat.	**Măgistrīs,**	to masters.
Acc.	**Măgistrōs,**	masters.
Voc.	**Măgistrī,**	O masters.
Abl.	**Măgistrīs,**	from masters.

Singular.

Nom.	**Rēgnum,**	a kingdom.
Gen.	**Rēgnī,**	of a kingdom.
Dat.	**Rēgnō,**	to a kingdom.
Acc.	**Rēgnum,**	a kingdom.
Voc.	**Rēgnum,**	O kingdom.
Abl.	**Rēgnō,**	from a kingdom.

Plural.

Nom.	**Rēgnă,**	kingdoms.
Gen.	**Rēgnōrum,**	of kingdoms.
Dat.	**Rēgnīs,**	to kingdoms.
Acc.	**Rēgnă,**	kingdoms.
Voc.	**Rēgnă,**	O kingdoms.
Abl.	**Rēgnīs,**	from kingdoms.

Like "Dŏmĭnŭs" are declined—

ānnŭs, *a year.*
clīvŭs, *a slope.*
ĕquŭs, *a horse.*
hāēdŭs, *a kid.*
rēmŭs, *an oar.*
rīvŭs, *a brook.*
sērvŭs, *a slave.*
tērmĭnŭs, *a boundary*, &c.

Like "Pŭĕr" are declined—

gĕnĕr, *a son-in-law.*
Lĭbĕr, *the wine-god Bacchus.* (no plural.)
sŏcĕr, *a father-in-law.*
Vēspĕr, *the evening star*, &c. (no plural.)

Digitized by Google

Like "Măgīstĕr" are declined—

ăgĕr, *a field.*	căpĕr, *a goat.*
ăpĕr, *a boar.*	cūltĕr, *a knife.*
Āustĕr, *the South Wind.*	făbĕr, *a smith.*
cāncĕr, *a crab.*	lĭbĕr, *a book*, &c.

Like "Rēgnum" are declined—

bēllum, *a war.*	jŭgum, *a yoke.*
brācchĭum, *the arm.*	lŭcrum, *gain.*
cāēlum, *the heavens.* (no plural.)	ōvum, *an egg.*
	vīnum, *wine*, &c.
cōllum, *the neck.*	

"Dŏmĭnŭs" is Masculine, and so are nearly all words of the Second Declension ending in "ŭs." Exceptions are—"hŭmŭs" (*the ground*), "dŏmŭs" (*a house*), which are Feminine; "pĕlăgŭs" (*the sea*), "vūlgŭs" (*the common people*), which are Neuter. (See the Notes.)

"Pŭĕr" and "Măgīstĕr" are Masculine, and so are all words of the Second Declension ending in "ĕr."

"Rēgnum" is Neuter, and so are all words of the Second Declension ending in "um."

¶ Notice that in Neuter words of all Declensions the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases are alike, both in the Singular and also in the Plural.

Digitized by Google

Third Declension.

In the Third Declension the Genitive Singular ends in "ĭs."

Singular.

Nom.	**Lăpĭs,**	a stone.
Gen.	**Lăpĭdĭs,**	of a stone.
Dat.	**Lăpĭdĭ,**	to a stone.
Acc.	**Lăpĭdem,**	a stone.
Voc.	**Lăpĭs,**	O stone.
Abl.	**Lăpĭdĕ,**	from a stone.

Plural.

Nom.	**Lăpĭdēs,**	stones.
Gen.	**Lăpĭdum,**	of stones.
Dat.	**Lăpĭdĭbŭs,**	to stones.
Acc.	**Lăpĭdēs,**	stones.
Voc.	**Lăpĭdēs,**	O stones.
Abl.	**Lăpĭdĭbŭs,**	from stones.

Singular.

Nom.	**Nūbēs,**	a cloud.
Gen.	**Nūbĭs,**	of a cloud.
Dat.	**Nūbĭ,**	to a cloud.
Acc.	**Nūbem,**	a cloud.
Voc.	**Nūbēs,**	O cloud.
Abl.	**Nūbĕ,**	from a cloud.

Plural.

Nom.	**Nūbēs,**	clouds.
Gen.	**Nūbĭum,**	of clouds.
Dat.	**Nūbĭbŭs,**	to clouds.
Acc.	**Nūbēs,**	clouds.
Voc.	**Nūbēs,**	O clouds.
Abl.	**Nūbĭbŭs,**	from clouds.

Digitized by Google

Singular.

Nom.	**Nōmĕn,**	a name.
Gen.	**Nōmĭnĭs,**	of a name.
Dat.	**Nōmĭnī,**	to a name.
Acc.	**Nōmĕn,**	a name.
Voc.	**Nōmĕn,**	O name.
Abl.	**Nōmĭnĕ,**	from a name.

Plural.

Nom.	**Nōmĭnă,**	names.
Gen.	**Nōmĭnum,**	of names.
Dat.	**Nōmĭnĭbŭs,**	to names.
Acc.	**Nōmĭnă,**	names.
Voc.	**Nōmĭnă,**	names.
Abl.	**Nōmĭnĭbŭs,**	from names.

Singular.

Nom.	**Ŏvĭlĕ,**	a sheepfold.
Gen.	**Ŏvĭlĭs,**	of a sheepfold.
Dat.	**Ŏvĭlī,**	to a sheepfold.
Acc.	**Ŏvĭlĕ,**	a sheepfold.
Voc.	**Ŏvĭlĕ,**	O sheepfold.
Abl.	**Ŏvĭlī,**	from a sheepfold.

Plural.

Nom.	**Ŏvĭlĭă,**	sheepfolds.
Gen.	**Ŏvĭlĭum,**	of sheepfolds.
Dat.	**Ŏvĭlĭbŭs,**	to sheepfolds.
Acc.	**Ŏvĭlĭă,**	sheepfolds.
Voc.	**Ŏvĭlĭă,**	O sheepfolds.
Abl.	**Ŏvĭlĭbŭs,**	from sheepfolds.

Like "Lăpĭs" are declined—

āūgŭr (gen. āūgŭrĭs), *an augur.*
cănĭs (gen. cănĭs), *a dog.*
grēx (gen. grĕgĭs), *a flock.*
hŏnŏr (gen. hŏnōrĭs), *honour.*
lĕō (gen. lĕōnĭs), *a lion.*
mīlĕs (gen. mīlĭtĭs), *a soldier.*

Digitized by Google

pēs (gen. pĕdĭs), *a foot.*
sĕnēx (gen. sĕnĭs), *an old man.*
sŭpēllēx (gen. sŭpēllēctĭlĭs, no plural), *furniture.*
vŏlūptās (gen. vŏlūptātĭs), *pleasure.*
vōx (gen. vōcĭs), *a voice*, &c.

Like "Nūbēs" are declined—

ārs (gen. ārtĭs), *an art.*
āurĭs (gen. āurĭs), *an ear.*
cŏhōrs (gen. cŏhōrtĭs), *a cohort.*
mōns (gen. mōntĭs), *a mountain.*
mūs (gen. mūrĭs), *a mouse.*
tēstĭs (gen. tēstĭs), *a witness.*
ūrbs (gen. ūrbĭs), *a city.*
vāllĭs (gen. vāllĭs), *a valley*, &c.

Like "Nōmĕn" are declined—

aēquŏr (gen. aēquŏrĭs), *water.*
căpŭt (gen. căpĭtĭs), *a head.*
flūmĕn (gen. flūmĭnĭs), *a river.*
foēdŭs (gen. foēdĕrĭs), *a treaty.*
ĭtĕr (gen. ĭtĭnĕrĭs), *a journey.*
jĕcŭr (gen. jĕcŏrĭs, jĕcĭnŏrĭs, *or* jŏcĭnŏrĭs), *the liver.*
lĭtŭs (gen. lĭtŏrĭs), *a shore.*
mūrmŭr (gen. mūrmŭrĭs), *a murmur.*
rōbŭr (gen. rōbŏrĭs), *strength*, &c.

Like "Ŏvĭlĕ" are declined—

praesaepĕ (gen. praesēpĭs), *a stable.*
ănĭmăl (gen. ănĭmālĭs), *an animal.*
cālcăr (gen. cālcārĭs), *a spur*, &c.

¶ Notice that the Genitive Singular always ends in "ĭs," by which you may always know a word of the Third Declension; and that the Genitive Singular is sometimes the same number of syllables as the Nominative, sometimes one or two syllables longer.

¶ Notice also, that the Nominative in the Third Declension has very many different terminations; but when you know the Genitive Singular and the Gender, you can always decline the word according to the models above.

Digitized by Google

¶ No fixed rules can be laid down about Genders in the Third Declension. You must learn them by observation and memory; but you will find some help in the Notes.

¶ Notice that the Genitive Plural in some words ends in "um," as "Lăpĭdum," "Nōmĭnum;" in others, in "ĭum," as "Nūbĭum," "Ŏvĭlĭum." (See Notes.)

Digitized by Google

Fourth Declension.

In the Fourth Declension the Genitive Singular ends in "ūs."

Singular.

Nom.	**Grădŭs,**	a step.
Gen.	**Grădūs,**	of a step.
Dat.	**Grădŭī,**	to a step.
Acc.	**Grădum,**	a step.
Voc.	**Grădŭs,**	O step.
Abl.	**Grădū,**	from a step.

Plural.

Nom.	**Grădūs,**	steps.
Gen.	**Grădŭum,**	of steps.
Dat.	**Grădĭbŭs,**	to steps.
Acc.	**Grădūs,**	steps.
Voc.	**Grădūs,**	O steps.
Abl.	**Grădĭbŭs,**	from steps.

Singular.

Nom.	**Gĕnū,**	a knee.
Gen.	**Gĕnūs,**	of a knee.
Dat.	**Gĕnŭī,**	to a knee.
Acc.	**Gĕnū,**	a knee.
Voc.	**Gĕnū,**	O knee.
Abl.	**Gĕnū,**	from a knee.

Plural.

Nom.	**Gĕnŭă,**	knees.
Gen.	**Gĕnŭum,**	of knees.
Dat.	**Gĕnĭbŭs,**	to knees.
Acc.	**Gĕnŭă,**	knees.
Voc.	**Gĕnŭă,**	O knees.
Abl.	**Gĕnĭbŭs,**	from knees.

Digitized by Google

Like "Grădŭs" are declined—

cūrrŭs, *a chariot.*	ēxĕrcĭtŭs, *an army.*
gĕmĭtŭs, *a groan.*	sĭngūltŭs, *a sob.*
grēssŭs, *a step.*	vūltŭs, *a face*, &c.

Like "Gĕnū" are declined—

cōrnū, *a horn.*	vĕrū, *a spit*, &c.

"Grădŭs" is Masculine, and so are most words of the Fourth Declension ending in "ŭs." Exceptions are—"mănŭs" (*a hand*), "trĭbŭs" (*a tribe*), "ănŭs" (*an old woman*), "ăcŭs" (*a needle*), "pōrtĭcŭs" (*a colonnade*), "Īdūs" (pl. *the Ides*), and a few others, which are Feminine.

"Gĕnū" is Neuter, and so are all words of the Fourth Declension ending in "ū."

"Dŏmŭs," a house, is declined as follows, partly according to the 2nd, and partly according to the 4th Declension.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
Nom.		Dŏmŭs	Nom.	4	Dŏmūs
Gen.	4	Dŏmūs	Gen.	4	Dŏmŭum
Dat.	4	Dŏmŭī		2	Dŏmōrum
	2	Dŏmō	Dat.	4	Dŏmĭbŭs
Acc.		Dŏmum	Acc.	4	Dŏmūs
Voc.	4	Dŏmŭs		2	Dŏmōs
Abl.	2	Dŏmō	Voc.	4	Dŏmūs
			Abl.	4	Dŏmĭbŭs.

Observe that the terminations '-me' '-mi' '-mu' '-mis' do not occur. 'Dŏmī' means 'at home.'

Digitized by Google

Fifth Declension.

In the Fifth Declension the Genitive Singular ends in "ēī" or "ĕī."

Singular.

Nom.	**Dĭēs,**	a day.
Gen.	**Dĭēī,**	of a day.
Dat.	**Dĭēī,**	to a day.
Acc.	**Dĭem,**	a day.
Voc.	**Dĭēs,**	O day.
Abl.	**Dĭē,**	from a day.

Plural.

Nom.	**Dĭēs,**	days.
Gen.	**Dĭērum,**	of days.
Dat.	**Dĭēbŭs,**	to days.
Acc.	**Dĭēs,**	days.
Voc.	**Dĭēs,**	O days.
Abl.	**Dĭēbŭs,**	from days.

Singular.

Nom.	**Rēs,**	a thing.
Gen.	**Rĕī,**	of a thing.
Dat.	**Rĕī,**	to a thing.
Acc.	**Rem,**	a thing.
Voc.	**Rēs,**	O thing.
Abl.	**Rē,**	from a thing.

Plural.

Nom.	**Rēs,**	things.
Gen.	**Rērum,**	of things.
Dat.	**Rēbŭs,**	to things.
Acc.	**Rēs,**	things.
Voc.	**Rēs,**	O things.
Abl.	**Rēbŭs,**	from things.

Like "Dĭēs" are declined—

făcĭēs, *a face.* ēffĭgĭēs, *a likeness,* &c.

Digitized by Google

Like "Rēs" is declined—

spēs, *hope.*

¶ "Rēs" is Feminine, and so are all words of the Fifth Declension, except "dĭēs" (*a day*), which, in the Singular, is either Masculine or Feminine, and in the Plural is Masculine.

"Dĭēs" and "Rēs" are the only words of the Fifth Declension which have Genitive, Dative, or Ablative, Plural. Most words of this Declension have no Plural at all.

Digitized by Google

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

The Latin for—

"*a good father*" is "bŏnŭs pătĕr," mas.
"*a good mother*" is "bŏnă mātĕr," fem.
"*a good work*" is "bŏnum ŏpŭs," neut.

for—"*a heavy labour*" is "grăvĭs lăbŏr," mas.
"*a heavy punishment*" is "grăvĭs pōenă," fem.
"*a heavy weight*" is "grăvĕ pōndŭs," neut.

for—"*a bold man*" is "āudāx vĭr," mas.
"*a bold woman*" is "āudāx fĕmĭnă," fem.
"*a bold deed*" is "āudāx făcĭnŭs," neut.

From these Examples we see that Adjectives may be divided into three classes, according to their terminations in the Nominative Singular.

1. Adjectives of **Three Terminations**, as—

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Bŏnŭs	**Bŏnă**	**Bŏnum**

2. Adjectives of **Two Terminations**, as—

Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Grăvĭs	**Grăvĕ**

3. Adjectives of **One Termination**, as—

Mas. Fem. Neut.
Āudāx

Digitized by Google

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

Adjectives of Three Terminations are declined like Substantives of the First and Second Declension.

"Bŏnŭs," *good.* Masculine as "Dŏmĭnŭs."
Feminine as "Mūsă."
Neuter as "Rēgnum."

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Bŏnŭs**	**Bŏnă**	**Bŏnum**
Gen.	**Bŏnī**	**Bŏnāē**	**Bŏnī**
Dat.	**Bŏnō**	**Bŏnāē**	**Bŏnō**
Acc.	**Bŏnum**	**Bŏnam**	**Bŏnum**
Voc.	**Bŏnĕ**	**Bŏnă**	**Bŏnum**
Abl.	**Bŏnō**	**Bŏnā**	**Bŏnō**

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Bŏnī**	**Bŏnāē**	**Bŏnă**
Gen.	**Bŏnōrum**	**Bŏnārum**	**Bŏnōrum**
Dat.	**Bŏnīs**	**Bŏnīs**	**Bŏnīs**
Acc.	**Bŏnōs**	**Bŏnās**	**Bŏnă**
Voc.	**Bŏnī**	**Bŏnāē**	**Bŏnă**
Abl.	**Bŏnīs**	**Bŏnīs**	**Bŏnīs**

Note.—Like "Bŏnŭs" are declined all Past and Future Participles of Verbs, as "ămātŭs," "ămātūrŭs," &c., and the Gerundive, as "ămāndŭs," &c.

"Tĕnĕr," *tender.* Masculine as "Pŭĕr."
Feminine as "Mūsă."
Neuter as "Rēgnum."

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Tĕnĕr**	**Tĕnĕră**	**Tĕnĕrum**
Gen.	**Tĕnĕrī**	**Tĕnĕrāē**	**Tĕnĕrī**
Dat.	**Tĕnĕrō**	**Tĕnĕrāē**	**Tĕnĕrō**
Acc.	**Tĕnĕrum**	**Tĕnĕram**	**Tĕnĕrum**
Voc.	**Tĕnĕr**	**Tĕnĕră**	**Tĕnĕrum**
Abl.	**Tĕnĕrō**	**Tĕnĕrā**	**Tĕnĕrō**

Digitized by Google

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Tĕnĕrī	Tĕnĕrāē	Tĕnĕrā
Gen.	Tĕnĕrōrum	Tĕnĕrārum	Tĕnĕrōrum
Dat.	Tĕnĕrīs	Tĕnĕrīs	Tĕnĕrīs
Acc.	Tĕnĕrōs	Tĕnĕrās	Tĕnĕrā
Voc.	Tĕnĕrī	Tĕnĕrāē	Tĕnĕrā
Abl.	Tĕnĕrīs	Tĕnĕrīs	Tĕnĕrīs

"Ægĕr," *sick.* Masculine as "Măgīstĕr."
Feminine as "Mūsă."
Neuter as "Rēgnum."

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ægĕr	Ægrā	Ægrum
Gen.	Ægrī	Ægrāē	Ægrī
Dat.	Ægrō	Ægrāē	Ægrō
Acc.	Ægrum	Ægram	Ægrum
Voc.	Ægĕr	Ægrā	Ægrum
Abl.	Ægrō	Ægrā	Ægrō

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ægrī	Ægrāē	Ægrā
Gen.	Ægrōrum	Ægrārum	Ægrōrum
Dat.	Ægrīs	Ægrīs	Ægrīs
Acc.	Ægrōs	Ægrās	Ægrā
Voc.	Ægrī	Ægrāē	Ægrā
Abl.	Ægrīs	Ægrīs	Ægrīs

¶ A few Adejctives of Three Terminations form the Genitive Singular in "ĭus" and the Dative in "ī," but in the other Cases are regular, as—

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Tōtŭs	Tōtă	Tōtum
Gen.	Tōtĭŭs	Tōtĭŭs	Tōtĭŭs
Dat.	Tōtī	Tōtī	Tōtī

The rest like "Bŏnŭs," Singular and Plural.

Digitized by Google

Like "Tōtŭs" decline "sōlŭs," *alone;* "ūnŭs," *one;* "ūllŭs," *any;* "nūllŭs," *none.*

¶ "Ălĭŭs," *another*, is thus declined—

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Ălĭŭs**	**Ălĭă**	**Ălĭŭd**
Gen.	**Ălĭŭs**	**Ălĭŭs**	**Ălĭŭs**
Dat.	**Ălĭī**	**Ălĭī**	**Ălĭī**
Acc.	**Ălĭum**	**Ălĭam**	**Ălĭŭd**

The rest like "Bŏnŭs." (The word has no Vocative. The Genitive Singular "Ălĭŭs" is rare, "Āltĕrĭŭs" being used instead.)

"Ŭtĕr," *which of two*, is thus declined—

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Ŭtĕr**	**Ŭtră**	**Ŭtrum**
Gen.	**Ŭtrĭŭs**	**Ŭtrĭŭs**	**Ŭtrĭŭs**
Dat.	**Ŭtrī**	**Ŭtrī**	**Ŭtrī**

The rest like "Aegĕr," Singular and Plural.

Like "ŭtĕr" is declined "neuter."

The compounds of "ŭtĕr," e.g. "ŭtĕrquĕ," "ŭtĕrvīs," &c., are declined like "ŭtĕr;" the terminations "-quĕ," "-vīs," &c., being unchanged throughout.

"Āltĕr," *one* or *the other* (*of two*), is thus declined—

Nom.	**Āltĕr**	**Āltĕră**	**Āltĕrum**
Gen.	**Āltĕrĭŭs**	**Āltĕrĭŭs**	**Āltĕrĭŭs**
Dat.	**Āltĕrī**	**Āltĕrī**	**Āltĕrī**

The rest like "Tĕnĕr," Singular and Plural.

Digitized by Google

Adjectives of Two Terminations.

Adjectives of Two Terminations are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. The Masculine and Feminine Terminations are always alike.

"Grăvĭs," *heavy.*

Singular.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Grăvĭs**	**Grăvĕ**
Gen.	**Grăvĭs**	**Grăvĭs**
Dat.	**Grăvī**	**Grăvī**
Acc.	**Grăvem**	**Grăvĕ**
Voc.	**Grăvĭs**	**Grăvĕ**
Abl.	**Grăvī**	**Grăvī**

Plural.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Grăvēs**	**Grăvĭă**
Gen.	**Grăvĭum**	**Grăvĭum**
Dat.	**Grăvĭbŭs**	**Grăvĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Grăvēs**	**Grăvĭă**
Voc.	**Grăvēs**	**Grăvĭă**
Abl.	**Grăvĭbŭs**	**Grăvĭbŭs**

"Mĕlĭŏr," *better.*

Singular.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Mĕlĭŏr**	**Mĕlĭŭs**
Gen.	**Mĕlĭōrĭs**	**Mĕlĭōrĭs**
Dat.	**Mĕlĭōrī**	**Mĕlĭōrī**
Acc.	**Mĕlĭōrem**	**Mĕlĭŭs**
Voc.	**Mĕlĭŏr**	**Mĕlĭŭs**
Abl.	**Mĕlĭōrĕ**	**Mĕlĭōrĕ**

Plural.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Mĕlĭōrēs**	**Mĕlĭōră**
Gen.	**Mĕlĭōrum**	**Mĕlĭōrum**
Dat.	**Mĕlĭōrĭbŭs**	**Mĕlĭōrĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Mĕlĭōrēs**	**Mĕlĭōră**
Voc.	**Mĕlĭōrēs**	**Mĕlĭōră**
Abl.	**Mĕlĭōrĭbŭs**	**Mĕlĭōrĭbŭs**

Digitized by Google

¶ Notice that Adjectives of Two Terminations ending in "ĭs" have Ablative Singular in "ī," while those ending in "ŏr" have Ablative Singular in "ĕ."

¶ Like "Grăvĭs" are declined a few Adjectives ending in "ĕr" which have three Terminations in the Nominative, as—

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Ācĕr**	**Ācrĭs**	**Ācrĕ**
Gen.	**Ācrĭs**	**Ācrĭs**	**Ācrĭs**
	&c.	&c.	&c.
Nom.	**Cĕlĕr**	**Cĕlĕrĭs**	**Cĕlĕrĕ**
Gen.	**Cĕlĕrĭs**	**Cĕlĕrĭs**	**Cĕlĕrĭs**
	&c.	&c.	&c.

Digitized by Google

Adjectives of One Termination.

Adjectives of One Termination are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension.

"Āudāx," *bold.*

Singular.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Āudāx	Āudāx
Gen.	Āudācĭs	Āudācĭs
Dat.	Āudācĭ	Āudācĭ
Acc.	Āudācem	Āudāx
Voc.	Āudāx	Āudāx
Abl.	Āudācĭ	Āudācĭ
	rarely Āudācĕ	rarely Āudācĕ

Plural.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Āudācēs	Āudācĭă
Gen.	Āudācĭum	Āudācĭum
Dat.	Āudācĭbŭs	Āudācĭbŭs
Acc.	Āudācēs	Āudācĭă
Voc.	Āudācēs	Āudācĭă
Abl.	Āudācĭbŭs	Āudācĭbŭs

Īngēns," *huge.*

Singular.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Īngēns	Īngēns
Gen.	Īngēntĭs	Īngēntĭs
Dat.	Īngēntī	Īngēntī
Acc.	Īngēntem	Īngēns
Voc.	Īngēns	Īngēns
Abl.	Īngēntī	Īngēntī
	rarely Īngēntĕ	rarely Īngēntĕ

Digitized by Google

Plural.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Īngēntēs**	**Īngēntĭă**
Gen.	**Īngēntĭum**	**Īngēntĭum**
Dat.	**Īngēntĭbŭs**	**Īngēntĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Īngēntēs**	**Īngēntĭă**
Voc.	**Īngēntēs**	**Īngēntĭă**
Abl.	**Īngēntĭbŭs**	**Īngēntĭbŭs**

NOTE.—Like "Īngēns" are declined the Present Participles of Verbs, as "ămāns" (Genitive "ămāntĭs"), &c. When they are used as Participles, the Ablative Singular ends in 'e', but when they merely supply the place of Adjectives it ends in 'ĭ' or 'ĕ'.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

"Ūnŭs," *one*, is declined like "Tōtŭs," p. 20.

"Dŭŏ," *two*, is thus declined—

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Dŭŏ**	**Dŭāē**	**Dŭŏ**
Gen.	**Dŭōrum**	**Dŭārum**	**Dŭōrum**
Dat.	**Dŭōbŭs**	**Dŭābŭs**	**Dŭōbŭs**
Acc.	**Dŭŏ** or **Dŭōs**	**Dŭās**	**Dŭŏ**
Voc.	**Dŭŏ**	**Dŭāē**	**Dŭŏ**
Abl.	**Dŭōbŭs**	**Dŭābŭs**	**Dŭōbŭs**

Like "Dŭŏ" is declined "āmbō, āmbāē, āmbō," *both*.

"Trēs, trĭă," *three*, is declined, in the Plural only, like "Grăvēs," p. 22.

(For other Numeral Adjectives, see the Notes.)

Digitized by Google

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in Latin, as in English, have three **Degrees of Comparison—Positive, Comparative, Superlative.** The Comparative and the Superlative are usually formed, as in English, by changing the Termination of the Positive, as—

"Āudāx," *bold.*
"Āudācĭŏr," *bolder.*
"Āudācĭssĭmŭs," *boldest.*

To form the Comparative add the Termination "ŏr" to the first Case of the Positive that ends in "ī,"—e.g. "Āudāx," Dat. Sing. "āudācī," Comparative "āudācĭ-ŏr;" "āegĕr," Gen. Sing. Mas. "āegrī," Comparative "āegrĭ-ŏr."

To form the Superlative add the Termination "-ssĭmŭs" to the first Case of the Positive that ends in "ī,"—e.g. "Āudāx," Dat. "āudācī;" Superlative "āudācĭ-ssĭmŭs."

This rule does not apply to Adjectives the Nom. Sing. Mas. of which ends in "ĕr;" their Superlative is formed by adding to the "ĕr" the termination "-rĭmŭs," as—"āegĕr," Superlative "āegērrĭmŭs."

To these rules for forming the Comparative and Superlative there are exceptions. The commonest are those Adjectives which end in "ŭs" preceded by a vowel. In these you can form the Comparative and Superlative, by using "măgĭs," *more*, and "māxĭmē," *most*, with the Positive, as—

"Ĭdōnĕŭs," *fit.*
"Măgĭs ĭdōnĕŭs," *more fit.*
"Māxĭmē ĭdōnĕŭs," *most fit.*

Some Adjectives form the Comparative and Superlative irregularly. The commonest are—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bŏnŭs, *good.*	**Mĕlĭŏr**	**Ōptĭmŭs**
Dĭfficilis, *hard.*	**Dĭfficilĭŏr**	**Dĭfficillĭmŭs**
Dissĭmilis, *unlike.*	**Dissĭmilĭŏr**	**Dissĭmillĭmŭs**

Digitized by Google

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Făcĭlis, *easy.*	**Făcĭlĭŏr**	**Făcĭllĭmŭs**
Grăcĭlis, *lean.*	**Grăcĭlĭŏr**	**Grăcĭllĭmŭs**
Hŭmĭlis, *humble.*	**Hŭmĭlĭŏr**	**Hŭmĭllĭmŭs**
Māgnŭs, *great.*	**Mājŏr**	**Māxĭmŭs**
Mălŭs, *bad.*	**Pējŏr**	**Pēssĭmŭs**
Mūltŭs, *much.*	**Plūs** (neut.)	**Plūrĭmŭs**
Nēquam, *wicked.*	**Nēquĭŏr**	**Nēquĭssĭmŭs**
Pārvŭs, *small.*	**Mĭnŏr**	**Mĭnĭmŭs**
Sĭmĭlis, *like.*	**Sĭmĭlĭŏr**	**Sĭmĭllĭmŭs**

Adjectives ending in "-vŏlŭs," "-fĭcŭs," "-dĭcŭs," form their Comparatives and Superlatives in "-ēntĭŏr," "-ēntĭssĭmŭs," as—

Bĕnĕvŏlŭs, *kind.*	**Bĕnĕvŏlēntĭŏr**	**Bĕnĕvŏlēntĭssĭmŭs,** &c.

Notice also the following, which are Defective.

[N.B.—The words in brackets are inserted to supply the place of parts which are wanting.]

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
(**Cĭtrā,** prep., *on this side*)	**Cĭtĕrĭŏr**	**Cĭtĭmŭs**
(**Dē,** prep., *down from*)	**Dētĕrĭŏr,** *worse*	**Dētĕrrĭmŭs**
(**Ēxtĕrĕ,** nom. sing. fem., *external*)	**Ēxtĕrĭŏr**	**Ēxtrēmŭs**
(**Īnfĕrum,** nom. sing. neut., *low*)	**Īnfĕrĭŏr**	**Īnfĭmŭs** or **Īmŭs**
Jŭvĕnis, *young*	**Jūnĭŏr**	(**Nātū mĭnĭmŭs**)
(**Pōstĕrĕ,** nom. sing. fem., *late*)	**Pōstĕrĭŏr**	**Pōstrēmŭs**
(**Prāē,** prep., *before*)	**Prĭŏr**	**Prīmŭs**

Digitized by Google

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
(**Prŏpĕ**, prep., *near*)	**Prŏpĭŏr**	**Prōxĭmŭs**
Sĕnēx, *old*	**Sĕnĭŏr**	(**Nātū māxĭmŭs**)
(**Sŭpĕrum**, nom. sing. neut., *high*)	**Sŭpĕrĭŏr**	**Sŭprēmŭs** or **Sūmmŭs**
(**Ūltrā**, prep., *beyond*)	**Ūltĕrĭŏr**	**Ūltĭmŭs**
Vĕtŭs, *old*	(**Vĕtūstĭŏr**)	**Vĕtērrĭmŭs**

¶ All Comparatives (except "plūs") are declined like "Mĕlĭŏr." "Plūs" has, in the Singular, only Nominative, Genitive, Accusative, Neuter, but all Cases in all Genders Plural. (Genitive Singular "plūrĭs," Genitive Plural "plūrĭum.")

All Superlatives are declined like "Bŏnŭs."

¶ Adverbs formed from Adjectives form their Comparative and Superlative from the Comparative and Superlative of the Adjective by changing "ŏr" of the Comparative into "ŭs," and "ŭs" of the Superlative into "ē," as—

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Adj.	**Aegĕr**	**Aegrĭŏr**	**Aegērrĭmŭs**
Adv.	**Aegrē**	**Aegrĭŭs**	**Aegērrĭmē**

So also—

Aūdācĭtĕr / **Aūdāctĕr**	**Aūdācĭŭs**	**Aūdācissĭmē**
Grăvĭtĕr	**Grăvĭŭs**	**Grăvissĭmē**
Mălĕ	**Pējŭs**	**Pēssĭmē**

The following are exceptions—

(**Māgnŏpĕrĕ**)	**Măgis**	**Māxĭmē**
Mūltum	**Plūs**	**Plūrĭmum**

Also—

"pōstrēmum" and "pōstrēmō" from "pōstrēmŭs."
"prĭmum" and "prĭmō" from "prĭmŭs."
"sŭprēmum" and "sūmmum" from {"sŭprēmŭs" and "sūmmŭs."

Notice—

Dĭū	**Dĭūtĭŭs**	**Dĭūtĭssĭmē**
Sāēpĕ	**Sāēpĭŭs**	**Sāēpĭssĭmē**

Digitized by Google

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are arranged in Eight different classes according to their meanings and uses.

1. **Personal**—"ĕgŏ," *I;* "tū," *thou.*

2. **Reflexive**—"sŭĭ," *of himself*, &c., or *of themselves*, &c.

3. **Possessive**—"mĕŭs," *my;* "tŭŭs," *thy;* "sŭŭs," *his own, her own*, &c.; "nōstĕr," *our;* "vēstĕr, *your.*

4. **Demonstrative**—"Hĭc," *this;* "ĭs," *that;* "ĭllĕ," *that;* "ĭstĕ," *that.*

5. **Definitive**—"ĭdem," *the same;* "ĭpsĕ," *he himself.*

6. **Relative**—"quĭ," *who.*

7. **Interrogative**—"quĭs?" *who.*

8. **Indefinite**—"quĭs," *any, anyone.*

and their Compounds.

Personal Pronouns.

Singular.

Nom.	**Ĕgŏ,**	**Ĭ.**
Gen.	**Mĕĭ,**	of me.
Dat.	**Mĭhĭ,**	to me.
Acc.	**Mē,**	me.
Voc.	(none.)	
Abl.	**Mē,**	from me.

Digitized by Google

Plural.

Nom.	**Nōs,**	we.
Gen.	**Nōstrum** or **Nōstrī,**	of us.
Dat.	**Nōbīs,**	to us.
Acc.	**Nōs,**	us.
Voc.	(none.)	
Abl.	**Nōbīs,**	from us.

Singular.

Nom.	**Tū,**	thou.
Gen.	**Tŭī,**	of thee.
Dat.	**Tĭbĭ,**	to thee.
Acc.	**Tē,**	thee.
Voc.	**Tū,**	O thou.
Abl.	**Tē,**	from thee.

Plural.

Nom.	**Vōs,**	you.
Gen.	**Vēstrum** or **Vēstrī,**	of you.
Dat.	**Vōbīs,**	to you.
Acc.	**Vōs,**	you.
Voc.	**Vōs,**	O ye.
Abl.	**Vōbīs,**	from you.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

Nom.	(none.)	
Gen.	**Sŭī,**	of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.
Dat.	**Sĭbĭ,**	to himself, &c.
Acc.	**Sē,**	himself, &c.
Voc.	(none.)	
Abl.	**Sē,**	from himself, &c.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

"Mĕŭs," *my;* "tŭŭs," *thy;* "sŭŭs," *his own, her own, its own,* or *their own,* are declined like "bŏnŭs." The Vocative is not used, except Voc. Sing. Mas. of "Mĕŭs," which is "mī."

"Nōstĕr," *our;* "vēstĕr," *your,* are declined like "ăĕgĕr."

Digitized by Google

Demonstrative Pronouns.

"Hĭc," *this.*

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Hĭc**	**Hāēc**	**Hōc**
Gen.	**Hūjŭs**	**Hūjŭs**	**Hūjŭs**
Dat.	**Hūic**	**Hūic**	**Hūic**
Acc.	**Hūnc**	**Hānc**	**Hōc**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Hōc**	**Hāc**	**Hōc**

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Hī**	**Hāē**	**Hāēc**
Gen.	**Hōrum**	**Hārum**	**Hōrum**
Dat.	**Hīs**	**Hīs**	**Hīs**
Acc.	**Hōs**	**Hās**	**Hāēc**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Hīs**	**Hīs**	**Hīs**

"Ĭs," *that.*

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Ĭs**	**Ĕă**	**Ĭd**
Gen.	**Ējŭs**	**Ējŭs**	**Ējŭs**
Dat.	**Ĕī**	**Ĕī**	**Ĕī**
Acc.	**Ĕum**	**Ĕam**	**Ĭd**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Ĕō**	**Ĕā**	**Ĕō**

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Ĭī**	**Ĕāē**	**Ĕă**
Gen.	**Ĕōrum**	**Ĕārum**	**Ĕōrum**
Dat.	**Ĭīs**	**Ĭīs**	**Ĭīs**
Acc.	**Ĕōs**	**Ĕās**	**Ĕă**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Ĭīs**	**Ĭīs**	**Ĭīs**

Digitized by Google

"Īllĕ," *that.*

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Īllĕ**	**Īllă**	**Īllŭd**
Gen.	**Īllĭŭs**	**Īllĭŭs**	**Īllĭŭs**
Dat.	**Īllī**	**Īllī**	**Īllī**
Acc.	**Īllum**	**Īllam**	**Īllŭd**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Īllō**	**Īllā**	**Īllō**

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Īllī**	**Īllāē**	**Īllă**
Gen.	**Īllōrum**	**Īllārum**	**Īllōrum**
Dat.	**Īllīs**	**Īllīs**	**Īllīs**
Acc.	**Īllōs**	**Īllās**	**Īllă**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Īllīs**	**Īllīs**	**Īllīs**

"Istĕ," *that*, is declined like "Īllĕ."

Definitive Pronouns.

"Īdem," *the same.*

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Īdem**	**Ĕădem**	**Ĭdem**
Gen.	**Ējūsdem**	**Ējūsdem**	**Ējūsdem**
Dat.	**Ĕīdem**	**Ĕīdem**	**Ĕīdem**
Acc.	**Ĕūndem**	**Ĕāndem**	**Ĭdem**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Ĕōdem**	**Ĕādem**	**Ĕōdem**

Digitized by Google

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Īdem**	**Ĕāēdem**	**Ĕădem**
Gen.	**Ĕōrūndem**	**Ĕārūndem**	**Ĕōrūndem**
Dat.	**Īsdem**	**Īsdem**	**Īsdem**
Acc.	**Ĕōsdem**	**Ĕāsdem**	**Ĕădem**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Īsdem**	**Īsdem**	**Īsdem**

"Īpsĕ," *himself*, makes "Īpsum" in Nom. and Acc. Neuter in the Singular; otherwise it is declined like "Īllĕ."

Relative Pronoun.

"Quī," *who.*

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Quī**	**Quāē**	**Quŏd**
Gen.	**Cūjŭs**	**Cūjŭs**	**Cūjŭs**
Dat.	**Cūī**	**Cūī**	**Cūī**
Acc.	**Quem**	**Quam**	**Quŏd**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Quō**	**Quā**	**Quō**

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Quī**	**Quāē**	**Quāē**
Gen.	**Quōrum**	**Quārum**	**Quōrum**
Dat.	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Quōs**	**Quās**	**Quāē**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**

Interrogative Pronoun.

"Quĭs," *who?*

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Quĭs**	**Quāē**	**Quĭd** or **Quŏd**
Gen.	**Cūjŭs**	**Cūjŭs**	**Cūjŭs**
Dat.	**Cūī**	**Cūī**	**Cūī**
Acc.	**Quem**	**Quam**	**Quĭd** or **Quŏd**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Quō**	**Quā**	**Quō**

Digitized by Google

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Quī**	**Quāē**	**Quāē**
Gen.	**Quōrum**	**Quārum**	**Quōrum**
Dat.	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Quōs**	**Quās**	**Quāē**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**

INDEFINITE PRONOUN.

"Quĭs," *anyone.*

Singular.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Quĭs** or **Quĭ**	**Quă** or **Quāē**	**Quĭd** or **Quŏd**
Gen.	**Cūjŭs**	**Cūjŭs**	**Cūjŭs**
Dat.	**Cūī**	**Cūī**	**Cūī**
Acc.	**Quem**	**Quam**	**Quĭd** or **Quŏd**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Quō**	**Quā**	**Quō**

Plural.

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**Quī**	**Quāē**	**Quă** or **Quāē**
Gen.	**Quōrum**	**Quārum**	**Quōrum**
Dat.	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Quōs**	**Quās**	**Quă** or **Quāē**
Voc.	(none.)		
Abl.	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**	**Quĭbŭs**

¶ NOTE. — Like the above examples are declined their compounds ("Quĭsquĕ," "Quĭvĭs," &c.), the terminations "-quĕ," "-vĭs," &c., being unchanged throughout. (See Notes.)

Digitized by Google

VERBS.

There are Four Conjugations of Regular Verbs, distinguished by the endings of their Infinitive Moods, as follows—

First Conjugation . . .	-ārĕ
Second Conjugation . . .	-ērĕ
Third Conjugation . . .	-ĕrĕ
Fourth Conjugation . . .	-īrĕ

In order to Conjugate a Verb, it is necessary to know not only the Present Indicative and the Present Infinitive, but also the Perfect Indicative and the Supine in -um. These, when not formed as in the following models, will be found in the List of Verbs.

Before learning the Four Conjugations of Regular Verbs it is necessary to know the irregular Verb "Sum," *I am*, parts of which are used in the Conjugation of the Regular Verbs.

Digitized by Google

Sum, I am.

PRIMARY TENSES.

		INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
		PRESENT.	
Sum. Ĕssĕ.	*S.* **Sum,**	I am.	**Ĕs,** } Be thou.
	ĕs,	thou art.	**ĕstō,** }
	ĕst,	he is.	**ĕstō,** let him be.
	P. **Sŭmŭs,**	We are.	**Ĕstĕ** } Be ye.
	ēstĭs,	you are.	**Ĕstōtĕ,** }
	sūnt,	they are.	**sūntō,** let them be.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.
		FUTURE.	PRESENT.
	S. **Ĕrō,**	I shall be.	**Sim.**
	ĕrĭs,	thou wilt be.	**sĭs.**
	ĕrĭt,	he will be.	**sĭt.**
	P. **Ĕrĭmŭs,**	We shall be.	**Sīmŭs.**
	ĕrĭtĭs,	you will be.	**sītĭs.**
	ĕrūnt,	they will be.	**sīnt.**
		PERFECT.	PERFECT.
Fŭĭ.	*S.* **Fŭĭ,**	I have been.	**Fŭĕrim.**
	fŭĭstĭ,	thou hast been.	**fŭĕrĭs.**
	fŭĭt,	he has been.	**fŭĕrĭt.**
	P. **Fŭĭmŭs,**	We have been.	**Fŭĕrĭmŭs.**
	fŭĭstĭs,	you have been.	**fŭĕrĭtĭs.**
	fŭĕrūnt, } **fŭĕrĕ,** }	they have been.	**fŭĕrĭnt.**
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. **Fŭĕrō,**	I shall have been.	
	fŭĕrĭs,	thou wilt have been.	
	fŭĕrĭt,	he will have been.	
	P. **Fŭĕrĭmŭs,**	We shall have been.	
	fŭĕrĭtĭs,	you will have been.	
	fŭĕrĭnt,	they will have been.	
			PRIMARY FUTURE.
			S. **Fŭtūrŭs sim.**
			fŭtūrŭs sĭs.
			fŭtūrŭs sĭt.
			P. **Fŭtūrī sīmŭs.**
			fŭtūrī sītĭs.
			fŭtūrī sīnt.

Digitized by Google

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S.	**Ĕram,**	I was.
	ĕrās,	thou wast.
	ĕrăt,	he was.
P.	**Ĕrāmŭs,**	We were.
	ĕrātĭs,	you were.
	ĕrānt,	they were.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

Ĕssem.
ĕssēs.
ĕssĕt.
Ĕssēmŭs.
ĕssētĭs.
ĕssēnt.

or

S. **Fŏrem**
fŏrēs
fŏrĕt
P. **Fŏrēmŭs**
fŏrētĭs
fŏrēnt,

INFINITIVE

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Ĕssĕ, to be.

PLUPERFECT.

S.	**Fŭĕram,**	I had been.
	fŭĕrās,	thou hadst been.
	fŭĕrăt,	he had been.
P.	**Fŭĕrāmŭs,**	We had been.
	fŭĕrātĭs,	you had been.
	fŭĕrānt,	they had been.

AORIST.

S.	**Fŭĭ,**	I was.
	fŭĭstĭ,	thou wast.
	fŭĭt,	he was.
P.	**Fŭĭmŭs,**	We were.
	fŭĭstĭs,	you were.
	fŭĕrūnt, fŭĕrĕ,	they were.

PLUPERFECT.

Fŭĭssem.
fŭĭssēs.
fŭĭssĕt.
Fŭĭssēmŭs.
fŭĭssētĭs.
fŭĭssēnt.

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Fŭĭssĕ, to have been.

HISTORIC FUTURE.

S. **Fŭtūrŭs ĕssem.**
fŭtūrŭs ĕssēs.
fŭtūrŭs ĕssĕt.
P. **Fŭtūrī ĕssēmŭs.**
fŭtūrī ĕssētĭs.
fŭtūrī ĕssēnt.

FUTURE.

Fŏrĕ *or* **Fŭtūrŭs ĕssĕ,** to be about to be.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Fŭtūrŭs, about to be.

Digitized by Google

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Āmō, I love.

PRIMARY TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

Āmō. Āmārĕ.

PRESENT.

S.	**Āmō,**	I love.
	āmās,	thou lovest.
	āmāt,	he loves.
P.	**Āmāmŭs,**	We love.
	āmātĭs,	you love.
	āmānt,	they love.

FUTURE.

S.	**Āmābō,**	I shall love.
	āmābĭs,	thou wilt love.
	āmābĭt,	he will love.
P.	**Āmābĭmŭs,**	We shall love.
	āmābĭtĭs,	you will love.
	āmābūnt,	they will love.

IMPERATIVE.

Āmā, āmātō,	Love thou.
āmātō,	let him love.
Āmātĕ, āmātōtĕ,	Love ye.
āmāntō,	let them love.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Āmem.
āmēs.
āmĕt.
Āmēmŭs.
āmētĭs.
āmēnt.

āmāvī.

PERFECT.

S.	**Āmāvī,**	I have loved.
	āmāvīstī,	thou hast loved.
	āmāvīt,	he has loved.
P.	**Āmāvīmŭs,**	We have loved.
	āmāvīstĭs,	you have loved.
	āmāvērūnt, āmāvērĕ,	they have loved.

FUTURE PERFECT.

S.	**Āmāvērō,**	I shall have loved.
	āmāvērĭs,	thou wilt have loved.
	āmāvērĭt,	he will have loved.
P.	**Āmāvērĭmŭs,**	We shall have loved.
	āmāvērĭtĭs,	you will have loved.
	āmāvērĭnt,	they will have loved.

PERFECT.

Āmāvērim.
āmāvērĭs.
āmāvērĭt.
Āmāvērĭmŭs.
āmāvērĭtĭs.
āmāvērĭnt.

Āmātum.

PRIMARY FUTURE.

S. **Āmātūrŭs sim.**
āmātūrŭs sīs.
āmātūrŭs sĭt.

P. **Āmātūrī sīmŭs.**
āmātūrī sītĭs.
āmātūrī sint.

[NOTE.—*In the Perfect and Aorist contracted forms* **āmâstī, āmâstĭs, āmāvīstĭs, āmāvērūnt.** *In the same way* **āmâram**

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
		IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
S.	**Ămābam,**	I was loving.	**Ămārem.**
	ămābās,	thou wast loving.	**ămārēs.**
	ămābăt,	he was loving.	**ămārĕt.**
P.	**Ămābāmŭs,**	We were loving.	**Ămārēmŭs.**
	ămābātĭs,	you were loving.	**ămārētĭs.**
	ămābānt,	they were loving.	**ămārĕnt.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Ămārĕ, to love.

GERUNDS.

Ămāndī, of loving.
ămāndō, for *or* by loving.
ămāndum, to love.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Ămāns, loving.

		PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
S.	**Ămāvĕram,**	I had loved.	**Ămāvĭssem.**
	ămāvĕrās,	thou hadst loved.	**ămāvĭssēs.**
	ămāvĕrăt.	he had loved.	**ămāvĭssĕt.**
P.	**Ămāvĕrāmŭs,**	We had loved.	**Ămāvĭssēmŭs.**
	ămāvĕrātĭs,	you had loved.	**ămāvĭssētĭs.**
	ămāvĕrānt,	they had loved.	**ămāvĭssēnt.**
		AORIST.	
S.	**Ămāvī,**	I loved.	
	ămāvĭstī,	thou lovedst.	
	ămāvĭt,	he loved.	
P.	**Ămāvĭmŭs,**	We loved.	
	ămāvĭstĭs,	you loved.	
	ămāvĕrūnt, ămāvĕrĕ,	they loved.	

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Ămāvĭssĕ, to have loved.

	HISTORIC FUTURE.
S.	**Ămātūrŭs ēssem.**
	ămātūrŭs ēssēs.
	ămātūrŭs ēssĕt.
P.	**Ămātūrī ēssēmŭs.**
	ămātūrī ēssētĭs.
	ămātūrī ēssēnt.

FUTURE.

Ămātūrŭs ēssĕ, to be about to love.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Ămātūrŭs, about to love.

SUPINE.

Ămātum, to love

ămârūnt *are sometimes used instead of* **ămāvĭstī,** *is used for* **ămāvĕram, ămâssĕ** *for* **ămāvĭssĕ,** *&c.*]

Digitized by Google

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRIMARY TENSES.

Amō. Ămārĕ.

	INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
		PRESENT.	
S.	Ămŏr,	I am loved.	Ămārĕ, } Be thou loved.
	ămārĭs, ămārĕ,	thou art loved.	ămātŏr, }
	ămātŭr,	he is loved.	ămātŏr, let him be loved.
P.	Ămāmŭr,	We are loved.	Ămāmĭnī, Be ye loved.
	ămāmĭnī,	you are loved.	ămāntŏr, let them be loved.
	ămāntŭr,	they are loved.	

		FUTURE.	SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.
S.	Ămābŏr,	I shall be loved.	Ămĕr.
	ămābĕrĭs, ămābĕrĕ,	thou wilt be loved.	ămērĭs, ămērĕ. }
	ămābĭtŭr,	he will be loved.	ămētŭr.
P.	Ămābĭmŭr,	We shall be loved.	Ămēmŭr.
	ămābĭmĭnī,	you will be loved.	ămēmĭnī.
	ămābūntŭr,	they will be loved.	ămēntŭr.

Ămāvī.

Ămātum.

	PERFECT.		PERFECT.
S.	Ămātŭs sum,	I have been loved.	Ămātŭs sim.
	ămātŭs ĕs,	thou hast been loved.	ămātŭs sīs.
	ămātŭs ēst,	he has been loved.	ămātŭs sĭt.
P.	Ămātī sŭmŭs,	We have been loved.	Ămātī sīmŭs.
	ămātī ēstĭs,	you have been loved.	ămātī sītĭs.
	ămātī sūnt,	they have been loved.	ămātī sīnt.

FUTURE PERFECT.

S.	Ămātŭs ĕrō,	I shall have been loved.
	ămātŭs ĕrĭs,	thou wilt have been loved.
	ămātŭs ĕrĭt,	he will have been loved.
P.	Ămātī ĕrĭmŭs,	We shall have been loved.
	ămātī ĕrĭtĭs,	you will have been loved.
	ămātī ĕrūnt,	they will have been loved.

Digitized by Google

PASSIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.
S.	**ămābăr,**	I was being loved.	**ămārĕr.**
	ămābārĭs, ămābārĕ,	thou wast being loved.	**ămārĕrĭs, ămārĕrĕ.**
	ămābātŭr,	he was being loved.	**ămārĕtŭr.**
P.	**ămābămŭr,**	We were being loved.	**ămārĕmŭr.**
	ămābămĭnĭ,	you were being loved.	**ămārĕmĭnĭ.**
	ămābāntŭr,	they were being loved.	**ămārĕntŭr.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

ămārĭ, to be loved.

GERUNDIVE.

ămāndŭs, to be loved (*i.e.* that is to be, *or*, that ought to be loved).

	PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
S.	**ămātŭs ĕram,**	I had been loved.	**ămātŭs ĕssem.**
	ămātŭs ĕrās,	thou hadst been loved.	**ămātŭs ĕssēs.**
	ămātŭs ĕrāt,	he had been loved.	**ămātŭs ĕssĕt.**
P.	**ămātĭ ĕrāmŭs,**	We had been loved.	**ămātĭ ĕssēmŭs.**
	ămātĭ ĕrātĭs,	you had been loved.	**ămātĭ ĕssētĭs.**
	ămātĭ ĕrānt,	they had been loved.	**ămātĭ ĕssĕnt.**

	AORIST.	
S.	**ămātŭs sum,**	I was loved.
	ămātŭs ĕs,	thou wast loved.
	ămātŭs ĕst,	he was loved.
P.	**ămātĭ sŭmŭs,**	We were loved.
	ămātĭ ĕstĭs,	you were loved.
	ămātĭ sŭnt,	they were loved.

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

ămātŭs ĕssĕ, to have been loved.

FUTURE.

ămātum īrĭ, to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST.

ămātŭs, having been loved, *or*, being loved.

SUPINE.

ămātū.

Digitized by Google

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mŏnĕō, I advise.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
		PRESENT.	
Mŏnĕō. Mŏnĕrĕ.	*S.* **Mŏnĕō,**	I advise.	**Mŏnĕ,** Advise thou.
	mŏnēs,	thou advisest.	**mŏnētō,**
	mŏnĕt,	he advises.	**mŏnētō,** let him advise.
	P. **Mŏnēmŭs,**	We advise.	**Mŏnētĕ,** Advise ye.
	mŏnētĭs,	you advise.	**mŏnētōtō,**
	mŏnēnt,	they advise.	**mŏnēntō,** let them advise.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.
		PRESENT.	
	S. **Mŏnēbō,**	I shall advise.	**Mŏnĕam.**
	mŏnēbĭs,	thou wilt advise.	**mŏnĕās.**
	mŏnēbĭt,	he will advise.	**mŏnĕăt.**
	P. **Mŏnēbĭmŭs,**	We shall advise.	**Mŏnĕāmŭs.**
	mŏnēbĭtĭs,	you will advise.	**mŏnĕātĭs.**
	mŏnēbūnt,	they will advise.	**mŏnĕānt.**
		PERFECT.	PERFECT.
Mŏnŭī.	*S.* **Mŏnŭī,**	I have advised.	**Mŏnŭĕrim.**
	mŏnŭīstī,	thou hast advised.	**mŏnŭĕrĭs.**
	mŏnŭĭt,	he has advised.	**mŏnŭĕrĭt.**
	P. **Mŏnŭĭmŭs,**	We have advised.	**Mŏnŭĕrĭmŭs.**
	mŏnŭīstĭs,	you have advised.	**mŏnŭĕrĭtĭs.**
	mŏnŭĕrūnt, mŏnŭĕrĕ,	they have advised.	**mŏnŭĕrint.**
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. **Mŏnŭĕrō,**	I shall have advised.	
	mŏnŭĕrĭs,	thou wilt have advised.	
	mŏnŭĕrĭt,	he will have advised.	
	P. **Mŏnŭĕrĭmŭs,**	We shall have advised.	
	mŏnŭĕrĭtĭs,	you will have advised.	
	mŏnŭĕrint,	they will have advised.	
Mŏnĭtum.			PRIMARY FUTURE.
			S. **Mŏnĭtūrŭs sim.**
			mŏnĭtūrŭs sīs.
			mŏnĭtūrŭs sĭt.
			P. **Mŏnĭtūrī sīmŭs.**
			mŏnĭtūrī sītĭs.
			mŏnĭtūrī sint.

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.
S.	**Mŏnēbam,**	I was advising.	**Mŏnērem.**
	mŏnēbās,	thou wast advising.	**mŏnērēs.**
	mŏnēbăt,	he was advising.	**mŏnērēt.**
P.	**Mŏnēbāmŭs,**	We were advising.	**Mŏnērēmŭs.**
	mŏnēbātĭs,	you were advising.	**mŏnērētĭs.**
	mŏnēbant,	they were advising.	**mŏnērēnt.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Mŏnērē, to advise.

GERUNDS.

Mŏnēndĭ, of advising.

mŏnēndŏ, for *or* by advising.

mŏnēndum, to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Mŏnēns, advising.

	PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
S.	**Mŏnŭĕram,**	I had advised.	**Mŏnŭĭssem.**
	mŏnŭĕrās,	thou hadst advised.	**mŏnŭĭssēs.**
	mŏnŭĕrăt,	he had advised.	**mŏnŭĭssĕt.**
P.	**Mŏnŭĕrāmŭs,**	We had advised.	**Mŏnŭĭssēmŭs.**
	mŏnŭĕrātĭs,	you had advised.	**mŏnŭĭssētĭs.**
	mŏnŭĕrānt,	they had advised.	**mŏnŭĭssēnt.**
	AORIST.		
S.	**Mŏnŭĭ,**	I advised.	
	mŏnŭĭstĭ,	thou advisedst.	
	mŏnŭĭt,	he advised.	
P.	**Mŏnŭĭmŭs,**	We advised.	
	mŏnŭĭstĭs,	you advised.	
	mŏnŭĕrūnt, mŏnŭĕrĕ,	they advised.	

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Mŏnŭĭssĕ, to have advised.

	HISTORIC FUTURE.
S.	**Mŏnĭtūrŭs ĕssem.**
	mŏnĭtūrŭs ĕssēs.
	mŏnĭtūrŭs ĕssĕt.
P.	**Mŏnĭtūrī ĕssēmŭs.**
	mŏnĭtūrī ĕssētĭs.
	mŏnĭtūrī ĕssēnt.

FUTURE.

Mŏnĭtūrŭs ĕssĕ, to be about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Mŏnĭtūrŭs, about to advise.

SUPINE.

Mŏnĭtum, to advise.

Digitized by Google

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
		PRESENT.	
Mŏnĕō. Mŏnĕrĕ.	S.	Mŏnĕŏr, I am advised.	Mŏnĕrĕ, } Be thou
		mŏnērĭs, } thou art advised.	mŏnētŏr, } advised.
		mŏnērĕ,	mŏnētŏr, let him be advised.
		mŏnētŭr, he is advised.	
	P.	Mŏnĕmŭr, We are advised.	Mŏnĕmĭnĭ, Be ye advised.
		mŏnĕmĭnĭ, you are advised.	
		mŏnĕntŭr, they are advised.	mŏnĕntŏr, let them be advised.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.
		FUTURE.	PRESENT.
	S.	Mŏnēbŏr, I shall be advised.	Mŏnĕăr.
		mŏnēbĕrĭs, } thou wilt be advised.	mŏnĕărĭs, }
		mŏnēbĕrĕ,	mŏnĕărĕ. }
		mŏnēbĭtŭr, he will be advised.	mŏnĕātŭr.
	P.	Mŏnēbĭmŭr, We shall be advised.	Mŏnĕāmŭr.
		mŏnēbĭmĭnĭ, you will be advised.	mŏnĕāmĭnĭ.
		mŏnēbūntŭr, they will be advised.	mŏnĕāntŭr.
Mŏnĭī.			
Mŏnĭtum.		PERFECT.	PERFECT.
	S.	Mŏnĭtŭs sum, I have been advised.	Mŏnĭtŭs sim.
		mŏnĭtŭs ĕs, thou hast been advised.	mŏnĭtŭs sĭs.
		mŏnĭtŭs ĕst, he has been advised.	mŏnĭtŭs sĭt.
	P.	Mŏnĭtī sŭmŭs, We have been advised.	Mŏnĭtī sīmŭs.
		mŏnĭtī ĕstĭs, you have been advised.	mŏnĭtī sītĭs.
		mŏnĭtī sūnt, they have been advised.	mŏnĭtī sint.
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S.	Mŏnĭtŭs ĕrō, I shall have been advised.	
		mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭs, thou wilt have been advised.	
		mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭt, he will have been advised.	
	P.	Mŏnĭtī ĕrĭmŭs, We shall have been advised.	
		mŏnĭtī ĕrĭtĭs, you will have been advised.	
		mŏnĭtī ĕrūnt, they will have been advised.	

Digitized by Google

PASSIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.
S.	**Mŏnēbăr,**	I was being advised.	**Mŏnērēr.**
	mŏnēbārĭs, / **mŏnēbārĕ,**	thou wast being advised.	**mŏnērērĭs,** / **mŏnērērĕ.**
	mŏnēbātŭr,	he was being advised.	**mŏnērētŭr.**
P.	**Mŏnēbāmŭr,**	We were being advised.	**Mŏnērēmŭr.**
	mŏnēbāmĭnĭ,	you were being advised.	**mŏnērēmĭnĭ.**
	mŏnēbāntŭr,	they were being advised.	**mŏnērēntŭr.**

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
S.	**Mŏnĭtŭs ĕram,**	I had been advised.	**Mŏnĭtŭs ĕssem.**
	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrās,	thou hadst been advised.	**mŏnĭtŭs ĕssēs.**
	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăt,	he had been advised.	**mŏnĭtŭs ĕssĕt.**
P.	**Mŏnĭtĭ ĕrāmŭs,**	we had been advised.	**Mŏnĭtĭ ĕssēmŭs.**
	mŏnĭtĭ ĕrātĭs,	you had been advised.	**mŏnĭtĭ ĕssētĭs.**
	mŏnĭtĭ ĕrānt,	they had been advised.	**mŏnĭtĭ ĕssĕnt.**

	INDICATIVE.
	AORIST.
S.	**Mŏnĭtŭs sum,** I was advised.
	mŏnĭtŭs ĕs, thou wast advised.
	mŏnĭtŭs ĕst, he was advised.
P.	**Mŏnĭtĭ sŭmŭs,** We were advised.
	mŏnĭtĭ ĕstĭs, you were advised.
	mŏnĭtĭ sūnt, they were advised.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Mŏnērī, to be advised.

GERUNDIVE.

Mŏnēndŭs, to be advised (*i.e.* that is to be, *or*, that ought to be advised).

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Mŏnĭtŭs ĕssĕ, to have been advised.

FUTURE.

Mŏnĭtum īrī, to be about to be advised.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST.

Mŏnĭtŭs, having been advised, *or*, being advised.

SUPINE.

Mŏnĭtū.

Digitized by Google

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Rĕgō, I rule.

PRIMARY TENSES.

		INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Rĕgō. Rĕgĕrĕ.		PRESENT.	
	S. **Rĕgō,**	I rule.	**Rĕgĕ,** } Rule thou.
	rĕgĭs,	thou rulest.	**rĕgĭtō,** }
	rĕgĭt,	he rules.	**rĕgĭtō,** let him rule.
	P. **Rĕgĭmŭs,**	We rule.	**Rĕgĭtĕ,** } Rule ye.
	rĕgĭtĭs,	you rule.	**rĕgĭtōtĕ,** }
	rĕgūnt,	they rule.	**rĕgūntō,** let them rule.
		FUTURE.	SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.
	S. **Rĕgam,**	I shall rule.	**Rĕgam.**
	rĕgēs,	thou wilt rule.	**rĕgās.**
	rĕgĕt,	he will rule.	**rĕgăt.**
	P. **Rĕgĕmŭs,**	We shall rule.	**Rĕgāmŭs.**
	rĕgētĭs,	you will rule.	**rĕgātĭs.**
	rĕgēnt,	they will rule.	**rĕgānt.**
Rexī.		PERFECT.	PERFECT.
	S. **Rēxī,**	I have ruled.	**Rēxĕrim.**
	rēxīstī,	thou hast ruled.	**rēxĕrĭs.**
	rēxīt,	he has ruled.	**rēxĕrĭt.**
	P. **Rēxĭmŭs,**	We have ruled.	**Rēxĕrĭmŭs.**
	rēxīstĭs,	you have ruled.	**rēxĕrĭtĭs.**
	rēxērūnt, } **rēxērĕ,** }	they have ruled.	**rēxĕrint.**
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. **Rēxĕrō,**	I shall have ruled.	
	rēxĕrĭs,	thou wilt have ruled.	
	rēxĕrĭt,	he will have ruled.	
	P. **Rēxĕrĭmŭs,**	We shall have ruled.	
	rēxĕrĭtĭs,	you will have ruled.	
	rēxĕrint,	they will have ruled.	
Rēctum.			PRIMARY FUTURE.
			S. **Rēctūrŭs sim.**
			rēctūrŭs sīs.
			rēctūrŭs sit.
			P. **Rēctūrī sīmŭs.**
			rēctūrī sītĭs.
			rēctūrī sint.

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.
S.	**Rĕgēbam,**	I was ruling.	**Rĕgĕrem.**
	rĕgēbās,	thou wast ruling.	**rĕgĕrēs.**
	rĕgēbăt,	he was ruling.	**rĕgĕrĕt.**
P.	**Rĕgēbāmŭs,**	We were ruling.	**Rĕgĕrēmŭs.**
	rĕgēbātĭs,	you were ruling.	**rĕgĕrētĭs.**
	rĕgēbānt,	they were ruling.	**rĕgĕrēnt.**
	PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
S.	**Rĕxĕram,**	I had ruled.	**Rĕxĭssem.**
	rĕxĕrās,	thou hadst ruled.	**rĕxĭssēs.**
	rĕxĕrăt,	he had ruled.	**rĕxĭssĕt.**
P.	**Rĕxĕrāmŭs,**	We had ruled.	**Rexĭssēmŭs.**
	rĕxĕrātĭs,	you had ruled.	**rĕxĭssētĭs.**
	rĕxĕrānt,	they had ruled.	**rĕxĭssēnt.**
	AORIST.		
S.	**Rĕxĭ,**	I ruled.	
	rĕxĭstĭ,	thou ruledst.	
	rĕxĭt,	he ruled.	
P.	**Rĕxĭmŭs,**	We ruled.	
	rĕxĭstĭs,	you ruled.	
	rĕxĕrunt, rexĕrĕ,	they ruled.	
		HISTORIC FUTURE.	
S.		**Rĕctūrŭs ĕssem.**	
		rĕctūrŭs ĕssēs.	
		rĕctūrŭs ĕssĕt.	
P.		**Rĕctūrī ĕssēmŭs.**	
		rĕctūrī ĕssētĭs.	
		rĕctūrī ĕssēnt.	

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule.

GERUNDS.

Rĕgĕndī, of ruling.
rĕgĕndō, for *or* by ruling.
rĕgĕndum, to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Rĕgēns, ruling.

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Rĕxĭssĕ, to have ruled.

FUTURE.

Rĕctūrŭs ĕssĕ, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Rĕctūrŭs, about to rule.

SUPINE.

Rĕctum, to rule.

Digitized by Google

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PRIMARY TENSES.

		INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Rĕgō. Rĕgĕrĕ.		PRESENT.	
	S. **Rĕgŏr,**	I am ruled.	**Rĕgĕrĕ,** Be thou ruled.
	rĕgĕrĭs,	thou art ruled.	**rĕgĭtŏr,**
	rĕgĕrĕ,		
	rĕgĭtŭr,	he is ruled.	**rĕgĭtŏr,** let him be ruled.
	P. **Rĕgĭmŭr,**	We are ruled.	**Rĕgĭmĭnĭ,** Be ye ruled.
	rĕgĭmĭnĭ,	you are ruled.	
	rĕgŭntŭr,	they are ruled.	**rĕgŭntŏr,** let them be ruled.
		FUTURE.	SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.
	S. **Rĕgăr,**	I shall be ruled.	**Rĕgăr.**
	rĕgĕrĭs,	thou wilt be ruled.	**rĕgărĭs,**
	rĕgĕrĕ,		**rĕgărĕ.**
	rĕgĕtŭr,	he will be ruled.	**rĕgătŭr.**
	P. **Rĕgĕmŭr,**	We shall be ruled.	**Rĕgămŭr.**
	rĕgĕmĭnĭ,	you will be ruled.	**rĕgămĭnĭ.**
	rĕgĕntŭr,	they will be ruled.	**rĕgăntŭr.**
Rĕxĭ.			
Rĕctum.		PERFECT.	PERFECT.
	S. **Rĕctŭs sum,**	I have been ruled.	**Rĕctŭs sim.**
	rĕctŭs ĕs,	thou hast been ruled.	**rĕctŭs sĭs.**
	rĕctŭs ĕst,	he has been ruled.	**rĕctŭs sĭt.**
	P. **Rĕctĭ sŭmŭs,**	We have been ruled.	**Rĕctĭ sĭmŭs.**
	rĕctĭ ĕstĭs,	you have been ruled.	**rĕctĭ sĭtĭs,**
	rĕctĭ sŭnt,	they have been ruled.	**rĕctĭ sĭnt.**
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. **Rĕctŭs ĕrō,**	I shall have been ruled.	
	rĕctŭs ĕrĭs,	thou wilt have been ruled.	
	rĕctŭs ĕrĭt,	he will have been ruled.	
	P. **Rĕctĭ ĕrĭmŭs,**	We shall have been ruled.	
	rĕctĭ ĕrĭtĭs,	you will have been ruled.	
	rĕctĭ ĕrŭnt,	they will have been ruled.	

Digitized by Google

PASSIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.
S.	**rĕgēbăr,**	I was being ruled.	**Rĕgĕrĕr.**
	rĕgēbărĭs,	thou wast being ruled.	**rĕgĕrĕrĭs,**
	rĕgēbărĕ,		**rĕgĕrĕrĕ.**
	rĕgēbātŭr,	he was being ruled.	**rĕgĕrētŭr.**
P.	**Rĕgēbāmŭr,**	We were being ruled.	**Rĕgĕrēmŭr.**
	rĕgēbāmĭnĭ,	you were being ruled.	**rĕgĕrēmĭnĭ.**
	rĕgēbāntŭr,	they were being ruled.	**rĕgĕrēntŭr.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Rĕgī, to be ruled.

GERUNDIVE.

Rĕgēndŭs, to be ruled (*i.e.* that is to be, *or*, that ought to be ruled).

	PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.
S.	**Rĕctŭs ĕram,**	I had been ruled.	**Rĕctŭs ēssem.**
	rĕctŭs ĕrās,	thou hadst been ruled.	**rĕctŭs ēssēs.**
	rĕctŭs ĕrāt,	he had been ruled.	**rĕctŭs ēssĕt.**
P.	**Rĕctī ĕrāmŭs,**	We had been ruled.	**Rĕctī ēssēmŭs.**
	rĕctī ĕrātĭs,	you had been ruled.	**rĕctī ēssētĭs.**
	rĕctī ĕrānt,	they had been ruled.	**rĕctī ēssēnt.**

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Rĕctŭs ēssĕ, to have been ruled.

FUTURE.

Rĕctum īrī, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST.

Rĕctŭs, having been ruled, *or*, being ruled.

SUPINE.

Rĕctū.

AORIST.

S.	**Rĕctŭs sum,**	I was ruled.
	rĕctŭs ĕs,	thou wast ruled.
	rĕctŭs ĕst,	he was ruled.
P.	**Rĕctī sūmŭs,**	We were ruled.
	rĕctī ĕstĭs,	you were ruled.
	rĕctī sūnt,	they were ruled.

Digitized by Google

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Āudĭō, I hear.

PRIMARY TENSES.

Āudĭō. Āudīrĕ.

	INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.
		PRESENT.	
S.	**Āudĭō,**	I hear.	**Āudī,** } Hear thou.
	āudīs,	thou hearest.	**āudītō,** }
	āudĭt,	he hears.	**āudītō,** let him hear.
P.	**Āudīmŭs,**	We hear.	**Āudītĕ,** } Hear ye.
	āudītĭs,	you hear.	**āudītōtĕ,** }
	āudĭūnt,	they hear.	**āudĭūntō,** let them hear.
			SUBJUNCTIVE.
		FUTURE.	PRESENT.
S.	**Āudĭam,**	I shall hear.	**Āudĭam.**
	āudĭēs,	thou wilt hear.	**āudĭās.**
	āudĭĕt,	he will hear.	**āudĭăt.**
P.	**Āudĭēmŭs,**	We shall hear.	**Āudĭāmŭs.**
	āudĭētĭs,	you will hear.	**āudĭātĭs.**
	āudĭēnt,	they will hear.	**āudĭānt.**

Āudīvī.

		PERFECT.	PERFECT.
S.	**Āudīvī,**	I have heard.	**Āudīvĕrim.**
	āudīvīstī,	thou hast heard.	**āudīvĕrĭs.**
	āudīvĭt,	he has heard.	**āudīvĕrĭt.**
P.	**Āudīvĭmŭs,**	We have heard.	**Āudīvĕrĭmŭs.**
	āudīvīstĭs,	you have heard.	**āudīvĕrĭtĭs.**
	āudīvērūnt, }	they have heard.	**āudīvĕrīnt.**
	āudīvērĕ, }		
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
S.	**Āudīvĕrō,**	I shall have heard.	
	āudīvĕrĭs,	thou wilt have heard.	
	āudīvĕrĭt,	he will have heard.	
P.	**Āudīvĕrĭmŭs,**	We shall have heard.	
	āudīvĕrĭtĭs,	you will have heard.	
	āudīvĕrīnt,	they will have heard.	

Āudītum.

PRIMARY FUTURE.

S. **Āudītūrŭs sim.**
āudītūrŭs sīs.
āudītūrŭs sĭt.

P. **Āudītūrī sīmŭs.**
āudītūrī sītĭs.
āudītūrī sīnt.

[NOTE.—*The Perfect or Aorist of* **Āudĭō**, *and all Tenses formed and* **Āudĭĕrō**, *&c.; and this is the case with most*

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
		IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
S.	Āudīēbam,	I was hearing.	Āudīrem.
	āūdīēbās,	thou wast hearing.	āūdīrēs.
	āūdīēbăt,	he was hearing.	āūdīrēt.
P.	Āudīēbāmŭs,	We were hearing.	Āudīrēmŭs.
	āūdīēbātĭs,	you were hearing.	āūdīrētĭs.
	āūdīēbānt,	they were hearing.	āūdīrēnt.
		PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
S.	Āudīvĕram,	I had heard.	Āudīvĭssem.
	āūdīvĕrās,	thou hadst heard.	āūdīvĭssēs.
	āūdīvĕrăt,	he had heard.	āūdīvĭssēt.
P.	Āudīvĕrāmŭs,	We had heard.	Āudīvĭssēmŭs.
	āūdīvĕrātĭs,	you had heard.	āūdīvĭssētĭs.
	āūdīvĕrānt,	they had heard.	āūdīvĭssēnt.
		AORIST.	
S.	Āudīvī,	I heard.	
	āūdīvĭstĭ,	thou heardest.	
	āūdīvĭt,	he heard.	
P.	Āudīvĭmŭs,	We heard.	
	āūdīvĭstĭs,	you heard.	
	āūdīvĕrūnt, / āūdīvĕrĕ,	they heard.	
		HISTORIC FUTURE.	
S.		Āudītūrŭs ēssem.	
		āūdītūrŭs ēssēs.	
		āūdītūrŭs ēssēt.	
P.		Āudītūrī sūmŭs.	
		āūdītūrī ēstĭs.	
		āūdītūrī sūnt.	

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Āudīrĕ, to hear.

GERUNDS.

Āudīēndī, of hearing.
āūdīēndō, for *or* by hearing.
āūdīēndum, to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Āudīēns, hearing.

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Āudīvĭssĕ, to have heard.

FUTURE.

Āudītūrŭs ēssĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Āudītūrŭs, about to hear.

SUPINE.

Āudītum, to hear.

from it, have two forms, Āudīvī *and* Āudīī, Āudīvĕrĕ
verbs which form their Perfect in "Ivī."]

Digitized by Google

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PRIMARY TENSES.

		INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
		PRESENT.	
Audĭō. Audīrĕ.	S. Audĭŏr,	I am heard.	Audīrĕ, } Be thou heard.
	audīrĭs, audīrĕ, }	thou art heard.	audītŏr,
	audītŭr,	he is heard.	audītŏr, let him be heard.
	P. Audīmŭr,	We are heard.	Audīmĭnĭ, Be ye heard.
	audīmĭnĭ,	you are heard.	audĭūntŏr, let them be heard.
	audĭūntŭr,	they are heard.	
			SUBJUNCTIVE.
		FUTURE.	PRESENT.
	S. Audĭăr,	I shall be heard.	Audĭăr.
	audĭērĭs, audĭērĕ, }	thou wilt be heard.	audĭārĭs, audĭārĕ. }
	audĭētŭr,	he will be heard.	audĭātŭr.
	P. Audĭēmŭr,	We shall be heard.	Audĭāmŭr.
	audĭēmĭnĭ,	you will be heard.	audĭāmĭnĭ.
	audĭēntŭr,	they will be heard.	audĭāntŭr.
Audīvī.			
Auditum.		PERFECT.	PERFECT.
	S. Auditŭs sum,	I have been heard.	Auditŭs sim.
	auditŭs ĕs,	thou hast been heard.	auditŭs sīs.
	auditŭs ĕst,	he has been heard.	auditŭs sĭt.
	P. Auditī sŭmŭs,	We have been heard.	Auditī sīmŭs.
	auditī ĕstĭs,	you have been heard.	auditī sītĭs.
	auditī sŭnt,	they have been heard.	auditī sint.
		FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. Auditŭs ĕrō,	I shall have been heard.	
	auditŭs ĕrĭs,	thou wilt have been heard.	
	auditŭs ĕrĭt,	he will have been heard.	
	P. Auditī ĕrĭmŭs,	We shall have been heard.	
	auditī ĕrĭtĭs,	you will have been heard.	
	auditī ĕrūnt,	they will have been heard.	

Digitized by Google

PASSIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
		IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
S.	**Āudīēbăr,**	I was being heard.	**Āudīrĕr.**
	āudīēbārĭs, / **āudīēbārĕ,**	thou wast being heard.	**āudīrĕrĭs,** / **āudīrĕrĕ.**
	āudīēbātŭr,	he was being heard.	**āudīrĕtŭr.**
P.	**Āudīēbāmŭr,**	We were being heard.	**Āudīrēmŭr.**
	āudīēbāmĭnĭ,	you were being heard.	**āudīrēmĭnĭ.**
	āudīēbāntŭr,	they were being heard.	**āudīrĕntŭr.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Āudīrī, to be heard.

GERUNDIVE.

Āudīēndŭs, to be heard (*i.e.* that is to be, *or*, that ought to be heard).

	PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
S.	**Āudītŭs ĕram,** I had been heard.	**Āudītŭs ēssem.**
	āudītŭs ĕrăs, thou hadst been heard.	**āudītŭs ēssēs.**
	āudītŭs ĕrăt, he had been heard.	**āudītŭs ēssĕt.**
P.	**Āudītĭ ĕrāmŭs,** We had been heard.	**Āudītĭ essēmŭs.**
	āudītĭ ĕrātĭs, you had been heard.	**āudītĭ ēssētĭs.**
	āudītĭ ĕrānt, they had been heard.	**āudītĭ ēssēnt.**

AORIST.

S.	**Āudītŭs sum,**	I was heard.
	āudītŭs ēs,	thou wast heard.
	āudītŭs ēst,	he was heard.
P.	**Āudītĭ sūmŭs,**	We were heard.
	āudītĭ ēstĭs,	you were heard.
	āudītĭ sūnt,	they were heard.

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Āudītŭs ēssĕ, to have been heard.

FUTURE.

Āudītum īrī, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST.

Āudītŭs, having been heard, *or*, being heard.

SUPINE.

Āudītū.

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Căpĭō, I take. [*Some verbs ending in "ĭo" belong to the*

PRIMARY TENSES.

Căpĭō. Căpĕrĕ.

INDICATIVE.	IMPERATĬVE.
PRESENT.	
S. **Căpĭō.**	**Căpĕ,**
căpĭs.	**căpĭtō.**
căpĭt.	**căpĭtō.**
P. **Căpĭmŭs.**	**Căpĭtĕ,**
căpĭtis.	**căpĭtōtĕ.**
căpĭūnt.	**căpĭūntō.**
	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE.	PRESENT.
S. **Căpĭam.**	**Căpĭam.**
căpĭēs, &c.,	**căpĭās, &c.,**
as **Rĕgam.**	as **Rĕgās.**

Cēpī.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
S. **Cēpī,**	**Cēpĕrim,**
as **Rēxī.**	as **Rēxĕrim.**
FUTURE PERFECT.	
S. **Cēpĕrō,**	
as **Rēxĕrō.**	

Căptum.

	PRIMARY FUTURE.
	S. **Căptūrŭs sim,**
	as **Rēctūrŭs sim.**

NOTE.—*Like* **Căpĭō** *are conjugated the following verbs and their compounds*—**Săpĭō**; *also* **Ăllĭcĭō, Ĭllĭcĭō, Āspĭcĭō, Cōnspĭcĭō** *and all other*

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

Third Conjugation, and are thus conjugated.]

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.
S. **Căpĭēbam.**	**Căpĕrem,**	**Căpĕrĕ.**
căpĭēbās, &c.,	as **Rĕgĕrem.**	GERUNDS.
as **Rĕgēbam.**		**Căpĭēndī.**
		căpĭēndō.
		căpĭēndum.
		PARTICIPLE.
		PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.
		Căpĭēns.

PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	INFINITIVE.
S. **Cēpĕram,**	**Cēpĭssem,**	PRESENT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.
as **Rēxĕram.**	as **Rēxĭssem.**	**Cēpĭssĕ.**
AORIST.		
S. **Cēpī,**		
as **Rēxī.**		

	HISTORIC FUTURE.	FUTURE.
	S. **Căptūrŭs ēssem,**	**Căptūrŭs ēssĕ.**
	as **Rēctūrŭs ēssem.**	PARTICIPLE.
		FUTURE.
		Căptūrŭs.
		SUPINE.
		Căptum.

Cŭpĭō, Fŏdĭō, Fŭgĭō, Făcĭō, Jăcĭō, Părĭō, Quătĭō, Răpĭō, *compounds of the obsolete verbs* **Lăcĭō** *and* **Spĕcĭō.**

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRIMARY TENSES.

Căpĭō. Căpĕrĕ.

INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
PRESENT.	
S. **Căpĭŏr.**	**Căpĕrĕ,**
căpĕrĭs,	**căpĭtŏr.**
căpĕrĕ.	**căpĭtŏr.**
căpĭtŭr.	
P. **Căpĭmŭr.**	**Căpĭmĭnĭ,**
căpĭmĭnĭ.	**căpĭūntor.**
căpĭūntŭr.	
	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE.	PRESENT.
S. **Căpĭăr.**	**Căpĭăr.**
căpĭēris, &c.,	**căpĭāris, &c.,**
as Rĕgăr.	**as Rĕgăr.**

Cēpĭ.

Căptum.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
S. **Căptŭs sum,**	**Căptŭs sim,**
as Rĕctŭs sum.	**as Rĕctŭs sim.**
FUTURE PERFECT.	
S. **Căptŭs ĕrō,**	
as Rĕctŭs ĕrō.	

NOTE.—*Like* **Căpĭŏr** *are conjugated the Deponent Verbs* **Grădĭŏr,**

Digitized by Google

PASSIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Căpĭēbăr.**
căpĭēbārĭs, &c.,
as Rĕgēbăr.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

Căpĕrĕr,
as Rĕgĕrĕr.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Căpĭ.

GERUNDIVE.

Căpĭēndŭs.

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Căptŭs ĕram,**
as Rĕctŭs ĕram.

PLUPERFECT.

Căptŭs ĕssem,
as Rĕctŭs ĕssem.

AORIST.

S. **Căptŭs sum,**
as Rĕctŭs sum.

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Căptŭs ĕssĕ.

FUTURE.

Căptum īrĭ.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST.

Căptŭs.

SUPINE.

Căptū.

Mŏrĭŏr, Pătĭŏr, *and their compounds.* (*See page* 79.)

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Pŏssum, I am able.

PRIMARY TENSES.

Pŏssum. Pŏssĕ.

INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
PRESENT.	(*Wanting.*)
S. **Pŏssum.** **pŏtĕs.** **pŏtĕst.**	
P. **Pŏssŭmŭs.** **pŏtĕstĭs.** **pŏssŭnt.**	
	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE.	PRESENT.
S. **Pŏtĕrō,** as **Ĕrō.**	**Pŏssim,** as **Sim.**

Pŏtŭĭ.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
S. **Pŏtŭĭ,** as **Fŭĭ.**	**Pŏtŭĕrim,** as **Fŭĕrim.**
FUTURE PERFECT.	
S. **Pŏtŭĕrō,** as **Fŭĕrō.**	

	PRIMARY FUTURE.
	(*Wanting.*)

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
IMPERFECT. *S.* **Pŏtĕram,** as **Ĕram.**	IMPERFECT. **Pŏssem,** as **Ĕssem.**	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT. **Pŏssĕ.** GERUNDS. (*Wanting.*) PARTICIPLE. PRESENT OR IMPERFECT. **Pŏtĕns** (*only used as an Adjective*).
PLUPERFECT. *S.* **Pŏtŭĕram,** as **Fŭĕram.** AORIST. *S.* **Pŏtŭī,** as **Fŭī.**	PLUPERFECT. **Pŏtŭīssem,** as **Fŭīssem.**	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT. **Pŏtŭīssĕ.**
	HISTORIC FUTURE. (*Wanting.*)	(*The rest Wanting.*)

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Fĕrō, I bear.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Fĕrō. Fĕrrĕ.	PRESENT.	
	S. **Fĕrō.** **fĕrs.** **fĕrt.**	**Fĕr,** **fĕrtō.** **fĕrtō.**
	P. **Fĕrĭmŭs.** **fĕrtĭs.** **fĕrūnt.**	**Fĕrtĕ,** **fĕrtōtĕ.** **fĕrūntō.**
		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	FUTURE.	PRESENT.
	S. **Fĕram,** as **Rĕgam.**	**Fĕram,** as **Rĕgam.**
Tŭlĭ.	PERFECT.	PERFECT.
	S. **Tŭlĭ,** as **Rexĭ.**	**Tŭlĕrim,** as **Rexĕrim.**
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. **Tŭlĕrō,** as **Rexĕrō.**	
Lātum.		PRIMARY FUTURE.
		S. **Lātūrŭs sim,** as **Rectūrŭs sim.**

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Fĕrēbam,**
as **Rēgēbam.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

Fĕrrem.
fĕrrēs.
fĕrrēt.
P. **Fĕrrēmŭs.**
fĕrrētĭs.
fĕrrēnt.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Fĕrrĕ.

GERUNDS.

Fĕrēndĭ.
fĕrēndō.
fĕrēndum.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Fĕrēns.

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Tŭlĕram,**
as **Rēxĕram.**

PLUPERFECT.

Tŭlĭssem.
as **Rēxĭssem.**

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Tŭlĭssĕ.

AORIST.

S. **Tŭlĭ,**
as **Rēxĭ.**

HISTORIC FUTURE.

S. **Lātūrŭs ĕssem,**
as **Rēctūrŭs ĕssem.**

FUTURE.

Lātūrŭs ĕssĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Lātūrŭs.

SUPINE.

Lātum.

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Fĕrō. Fĕrrĕ.	PRESENT.	
	S. **Fĕrŏr.** **fĕrrĭs,** } **fĕrrĕ.** } **fĕrtur.**	**Fĕrrĕ,** } **fĕrtŏr.** } **fĕrtŏr.**
	P. **Fĕrĭmur.** **fĕrĭmĭnĭ.** **fĕrūntŭr.**	**Fĕrĭmĭnĭ.** **fĕrūntŏr.**
		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	FUTURE.	
	S. **Fĕrăr,** as **Rĕgăr.**	**Fĕrăr,** as **Rĕgăr.**
Tŭlĭ.		
Lātum.	PERFECT.	PERFECT.
	S. **Lātŭs sum,** as **Rĕctŭs sum.**	**Lātŭs sim,** as **Rĕctŭs sim.**
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. **Lātŭs ĕrō,** as **Rĕctŭs ĕrō.**	

Digitized by Google

PASSIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Fĕrēbăr,**
as **Rĕgēbăr.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Fĕrrĕr.**
fĕrrĕrĭs, }
fĕrrĕrĕ. }
fĕrrētŭr.

P. **Fĕrrēmŭr.**
fĕrrēmĭnĭ.
fĕrrēntŭr.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Fĕrrĭ.

GERUNDIVE.

Fĕrēndŭs.

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Lātŭs ĕram,**
as **Rĕctŭs ĕram.**

AORIST.

S. **Lātŭs sum,**
as **Rĕctŭs sum.**

PLUPERFECT.

Lātŭs ēssem,
as **Rĕctŭs ēssem.**

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Lātŭs ēssĕ.

FUTURE.

Lātum īrĭ.

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST.

Lātŭs.

SUPINE.

Lātŭ.

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Ĕdō, I eat.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Ĕdō. Ĕdĕrĕ.	PRESENT. *S.* **Ĕdō.** **ĕdĭs, or ēs.** **ĕdĭt, or ēst.** *P.* **Ĕdĭmŭs.** **ĕdĭtĭs, or ēstĭs.** **ĕdūnt.**	**Ĕdĕ, or Ēs; or Ĕdĭtō, or Ēstō.** **ĕdĭtō, or ēstō.** **Ĕdĭtĕ, or Ēstĕ; or Ĕdĭtōtĕ, or Ēstōtĕ.** **ĕdūntō.**
	FUTURE. *S.* **Ĕdam,** **as Rĕgam.**	SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT. **Ĕdam,** **as Rĕgam.**
Ēdī.	PERFECT. *S.* **Ēdī,** **as Rexī.**	PERFECT. **Ēdĕrim,** **as Rexĕrim.**
	FUTURE PERFECT. *S.* **Ēdĕrō,** **as Rexĕrō.**	
Esum.		PRIMARY FUTURE. *S.* **Ēsūrŭs sim,** **as Rēctūrŭs sim.**

PASSIVE

(*Re*

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Ĕdēbam,**
as **Rĕgēbam.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Ĕdĕrem,** or **Ĕssem.**
ĕdĕrēs, or **ĕssēs.**
ĕdĕrĕt, or **ĕssĕt.**

P. **Ĕdĕrēmŭs,** or **Ĕssēmŭs.**
ĕdĕrētĭs, or **ĕssētĭs.**
ĕdĕrēnt, or **ĕssēnt.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Ĕdĕrĕ, or **Ĕssĕ.**

GERUNDS.

Ĕdēndī.
ĕdēndō.
ĕdēndum.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Ĕdēns.

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Ĕdĕram,**
as **Rĕxĕram.**

AORIST.

S. **Ĕdī,**
as **Rĕxī.**

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Ĕdĭssem,**
as **Rĕxĭssem.**

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Ĕdĭssĕ.

HISTORIC FUTURE.

S. **Ĕsūrŭs ĕssem,**
as **Rĕctūrŭs ĕssem**

FUTURE.

Ĕsūrŭs esse.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Ĕsūrŭs.

SUPINE.

Ĕsum.

VOICE.
lar.)

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Vŏlŏ, I am willing.

PRIMARY TENSES.

VŎLŎ. VĔLLE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

S. **Vŏlŏ.**
vĭs.
vŭlt.

P. **Vŏlŭmŭs.**
vŭltĭs.
vŏlŭnt.

FUTURE.

S. **Vŏlam,**
as **Rĕgam.**

IMPERATIVE.

(*Wanting.*)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

S. **Vĕlim.**
vĕlĭs.
vĕlĭt.

P. **Vĕlĭmŭs.**
vĕlĭtĭs.
vĕlĭnt.

VŎLUI.

PERFECT.

S. **Vŏlŭĭ,**
as **Rĕxĭ.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

S. **Vŏlŭĕrŏ,**
as **Rĕxĕrŏ.**

PERFECT.

S. **Vŏlŭĕrim,**
as **Rĕxĕrim.**

PRIMARY FUTURE.

(*Wanting.*)

PASSIVE

(*Want*

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
IMPERFECT. *S.* **Vŏlēbam,** as **Rĕgēbam.**	IMPERFECT. *S.* **Vĕllem,** as **Rĕgĕrem.**	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT. **Vĕllĕ.** GERUNDS (*Wanting*). PARTICIPLE. PRESENT OR IMPERFECT. **Vŏlĕns.**
PLUPERFECT. *S.* **Vŏlŭĕram,** as **Rĕxĕram.** AORIST. *S.* **Vŏlŭī,** as **Rĕxī.**	PLUPERFECT. *S.* **Vŏlŭĭssem,** as **Rĕxĭssem.**	PERFECT, PLUPERFECT AND AORIST. **Vŏlŭĭssĕ.**
	HISTORIC FUTURE. (*Wanting.*)	(*The rest Wanting.*)

VOICE.
ing.)

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Nŏlŏ, I am unwilling.

PRIMARY TENSES.

Nŏlŏ. Nōllĕ.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

S. **Nōlŏ.**
nōnvīs.
nōnvūlt.

P. **Nōlŭmŭs.**
nōnvūltĭs.
nōlūnt.

FUTURE.

S. **Nōlam,**
as **Rĕgam.**
(1*st person not used.*)

IMPERATIVE.

S. **Nōlī,**
nōlītō.
nōlītō.

P. **Nōlītĕ,**
nōlītōtĕ.
nōlūntō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

S. **Nōlim.**
nōlīs.
nōlĭt.

P. **Nōlīmŭs.**
nōlītĭs.
nōlīnt.

Nōlŭī.

PERFECT.

S. **Nōlŭī,**
as **Rēxī.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

S. **Nōlŭĕrō,**
as **Rēxĕrō.**

PERFECT.

S. **Nōlŭĕrim,**
as **Rēxĕrim.**

PRIMARY FUTURE.

(*Wanting.*)

PASSIVE

(*Want-*

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Nōlēbam,**
as **Rēgēbam.**

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Nōlŭĕram,**
as **Rēxĕram.**

AORIST.

S. **Nōlŭī,**
as **Rēxī.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Nōllem,**
as **Rēgĕrem.**

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Nōlŭīssem,**
as **Rēxīssem.**

HISTORIC FUTURE.
(*Wanting.*)

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Nōllĕ.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Nōlŭīssĕ.

(*The rest Wanting.*)

GERUNDS
(*Wanting*).

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Nōlēns.

VOICE.
ing.)

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Mālŏ, I prefer.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Mālŏ. Mālĭs.	PRESENT.	(*Wanting.*)
	S. **Mālŏ.** **māvĭs.** **māvŭlt.** *P.* **Mālŭmŭs.** **māvŭltĭs.** **mālŭnt.**	
		SUBJUNCTIVE.
	FUTURE.	PRESENT.
	S. **Mālam,** as **Rēgam.** (1*st person not used.*)	*S.* **Mālim.** **mālĭs.** **mālĭt.** *P.* **Mālĭmŭs.** **mālĭtĭs.** **mālĭnt.**
Mālŭĭ.	PERFECT.	PERFECT.
	S. **Mālŭĭ,** as **Rēxĭ.**	*S.* **Mālŭĕrim,** as **Rēxĕrim.**
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
	S. **Mālŭĕrō,** as **Rēxĕrō.**	
		PRIMARY FUTURE.
		(*Wanting.*)

PASSIVE

(*Want-*

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
		PRESENT AND IMPERFECT. **Mällĕ.**
IMPERFECT. *S.* **Mälēbam,** as **Rĕgēbam.**	IMPERFECT. *S.* **Mällem,** as **Rĕgĕrem.**	GERUNDS AND PARTICIPLE. PRESENT OR IMPERFECT. (*Wanting.*)
PLUPERFECT. *S.* **Mälŭĕram,** as **Rĕxĕram.**	PLUPERFECT. *S.* **Mälŭissem,** as **Rĕxissem.**	PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST. **Mälŭissĕ.**
AORIST. *S.* **Mälŭi,** as **Rĕxi.**		
	HISTORIC FUTURE. (*Wanting.*)	(*The rest Wanting.*)

VOICE.

ing.)

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Ĕō (I go), **Īrĕ, Īvī** or **Ĭī, Ĭtum.**

PRIMARY TENSES.

Ĕō. Īrĕ.

INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
PRESENT.	
S. **Ĕō.**	*S.* **Ī,**
Īs.	**Ītō.**
Ĭt.	**Ītō.**
P. **Īmŭs.**	*P.* **Ĭtĕ,**
Ĭtĭs.	**Ītōtĕ.**
ĕūnt.	**ĕūntō.**
	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE.	PRESENT.
S. **Ĭbō.**	*S.* **Ĕam,**
Ĭbĭs.	as **Mŏnĕam.**
Ĭbĭt.	
P. **Ĭbĭmŭs.**	
Ĭbĭtĭs.	
Ĭbūnt.	

Īvī.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
S. **Īvī,**	*S.* **Īvĕrim,**
as **Āudīvī.**	as **Āudīvĕrim.**
FUTURE PERFECT.	
S. **Īvĕrō,**	
as **Āudīvĕrō.**	

Ĭtum.

	PRIMARY FUTURE.
	S. **Ĭtūrŭs sim,**
	as **Āudĭtūrŭs sim.**

NOTE.—*The form of the Perfect or Aorist in* **Ĭī** *is more usual in the Moods and Tenses*

Digitized by Google

ACTIVE VOICE.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Ĭbam.**
Ĭbās.
Ĭbăt.

P. **Ĭbāmŭs.**
Ĭbātĭs.
Ĭbānt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

S. **Īrem,**
as **Audīrem.**

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.

Īrĕ.

GERUNDS.

Ĕundī.
ĕundō.
ĕundum.

PARTICIPLE.

PRESENT OR IMPERFECT.

Ĭēns (Genitive **ĕuntĭs**, Dative **ĕuntī**, etc.).

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Ivĕram,**
as **Audīvĕram.**

AORIST.

S. **Īvī,**
as **Audīvī.**

PLUPERFECT.

S. **Īvĭssem,**
as **Audīvĭssem.**

INFINITIVE.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST.

Īvĭssĕ, to have gone.

HISTORIC FUTURE.

S. **Ĭtūrŭs ĕssem.**

FUTURE.

Ĭtūrŭs ĕssĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.

Ĭtūrŭs, about to go.

SUPINE.

Ĭtum, to go.

compounds of **Ĕō**, *as*, **ădĭī**, **prāētĕrĭī**, **pĕrĭī**, etc., *and in all formed from it.*

Digitized by Google

Ădĕŏr. [*In the Passive,* **Ĕō**, *being an Intransitive Verb, is only used however, are Transitive, and have*

PRIMARY TENSES.

Ădĕŏ. Ădĭrĕ.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

S. **Ădĕŏr.**
ădĭrĭs,
ădĭrĕ,
ădĭtŭr.

P. **Ădĭmŭr.**
ădĭmĭnĭ.
ădĕūntŭr.

FUTURE.

S. **Ădĭbŏr,**
as **Mŏnēbŏr.**

IMPERATIVE.

S. **Ădĭrĕ,**
ădĭtŏr.
ădĭtŏr.

P. **Ădĭmĭnĭ,**
ădĕūntŏr.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

S. **Ădĕăr,**
as **Mŏnĕăr.**

Ădĭt.

Ădĭtum.

PERFECT.

S. **Ădĭtŭs sum,**
as **Mŏnĭtŭs sum.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

S. **Ădĭtŭs ĕrō,**
as **Mŏnĭtŭs ĕrō.**

PERFECT.

S. **Ădĭtŭs sim,**
as **Mŏnĭtŭs sim.**

[*Like* **ĕō** *are conjugated* **vēnĕō**, I am sold (= **vēnum ĕō**), *and other compounds* able, **nĕquĕō**, I am unable, *but these have no*

Digitized by Google

Impersonally (see Syntax, Rule 32). Some of its Compounds, a full Passive, as **Ădĕŏr.**]

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT.
S. **Ădĭbăr.** **ădĭbārĭs,** **ădĭbārĕ.** **ădĭbātŭr.**	*S.* **Ădĭrĕr,** as **Ăudĭrĕr.**	**Ădĭrĭ.**
P. **Ădĭbāmŭr.** **ădĭbāmĭnĭ.** **ădĭbāntŭr.**		GERUNDIVE. **Ăděūndŭs.**
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	INFINITIVE.
S. **Ădĭtŭs ĕram,** as **Mŏnĭtŭs ĕram.**	*S.* **Ădĭtŭs ēssem,** as **Mŏnĭtŭs ēssem.**	PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST. **Ădĭtŭs ēssĕ.**
		FUTURE. **Ădĭtum īrĭ.**
AORIST. *S.* **Ădĭtŭs sum,** as **Mŏnĭtŭs sum.**		PARTICIPLE. PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST. **Ădĭtŭs.**
		SUPINE. **Ădĭtū.**

of **ĕō** *(except* **ămbĭō,** *which follows the 4th Conjugation); also* **quĕō,** I am
Imperative, Future, Participle, or Gerund.

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Fīō, I am made or I become.

PRIMARY TENSES.

Fīō. Fĭĕrī.

INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
PRESENT.	
S. **Fīō.**	*S.* **Fī.**
fīs.	
fīt.	
P. **Fīūnt.**	*P.* **Fītĕ.**
	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUTURE.	PRESENT.
S. **Fīam,** as **Rĕgam.**	*S.* **Fīam,** as **Rĕgam.**

Factum.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
S. **Fāctŭs sum,** as **Rēctŭs sum.**	*S.* **Fāctŭs sim,** as **Rēctŭs sim.**
FUTURE PERFECT.	
S. **Fāctŭs ĕrō,** as **Rēctŭs ĕrō.**	

Digitized by Google

PASSIVE OF FĂCĬŌ.

HISTORIC TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
IMPERFECT. *S.* **Fĭēbam,** as **Rĕgēbam.**	IMPERFECT. *S.* **Fĭĕrem,** as **Rĕgĕrem.**	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT. **Fĭĕrī.** GERUNDIVE. **Făcĭēndŭs.**
PLUPERFECT. *S.* **Făctŭs ĕram,** as **Rĕctŭs ĕram.**	PLUPERFECT. *S.* **Făctŭs ēssem,** as **Rĕctŭs ēssem.**	INFINITIVE. PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND AORIST. **Făctŭs ēssĕ.** FUTURE. **Făctum īrī.**
AORIST. *S.* **Făctŭs sum,** as **Rĕctŭs sum.**		PARTICIPLE. PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, OR AORIST. **Făctŭs.** SUPINE. **Făctū.**

Digitized by Google

Notes on Verbs.

¶ Certain Verbs are called **Defective.** They either have no Present Indicative or are used only in a very few forms.

The following have all the Perfect Stem Tenses declined according to the Third Conjugation—

Cōēpī, *I begin* or *began.*
Mĕmĭnī, *I remember.*
Ōdī, *I hate.*

Cōēpī has also Participles "cōēptūrŭs" and "cōēptŭs." From "cōēptūrŭs," a Primary and Historic Future Subjunctive Active are formed; and from "cōēptŭs," the Supine Stem Tenses in the Passive, but they are only used when a Passive Infinitive follows, e.g.—

Ămārĕ cōēpī, *I began to love.*
but Ămārī cōēptŭs sum, *I began to be loved.*

Mĕmĭnī has Imperative—

2 S. Mĕmēntō.
2 P. Mĕmēntōtĕ.

Ōdī has Future Participle "ōsūrŭs," and tenses formed with it.

Nōvī, *I know* (really Perfect of nōscō), is used as a Defective Verb in the Perfect Stem Tenses.

Aīō, *I say,* has only the following forms—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	PRESENT.
S. Aīō.	2 *S.* Aiās.
ăĭs.	3 *S.* aiăt.
ăĭt.	3 *P.* Aiānt.
3 *P.* Aiūnt.	
IMPERFECT.	
Aiēbam, &c. .	
as Rĕgēbam.	

Digitized by Google

Īnquam, *I say*, has—

INDICATIVE.	INDICATIVE.
PRESENT.	FUTURE.
S. Īnquam.	2 *S.* Īnquĭēs.
īnquĭs.	3 *S.* īnquĭēt.
īnquĭt.	PERFECT AND AORIST.
P. Īnquĭmŭs.	2 *S.* Īnquīstī.
īnquĭtĭs.	IMPERFECT.
īnquĭūnt.	3 *S.* Īnquĭēbăt.

Ăvē, *hail*, 2 Singular Imperative.
Ăvētĕ, 2 Plural Imperative.

Quāēsō, *I pray*, 1 Singular Present Indicative.
Quāēsŭmŭs, 1 Plural Present Indicative.

Sālvē, *hail*, 2 Singular Imperative.
Sālvētĕ, 2 Plural Imperative.
Sālvēbĭs, 2 Singular Future Indicative.
Sālvērĕ, Present Infinitive.

¶ **Impersonal Verbs** are used, without a Personal Subject expressed, in the 3rd Singular only in the Finite Verb. They have no Imperative Mood and no Passive Voice. (See Syntax Rules 10 and 31.)

¶ **Deponent Verbs** (such as "hōrtŏr," *I exhort*, "sĕquŏr," *I follow*) are conjugated as Passive Verbs, but are *Active in meaning*. They "lay aside" ("dēpōnūnt") their *Active form*. They retain, however, the Present and Future Participles, the Gerunds and the Supine of the Active Voice. The Gerundive is Passive in meaning.

The Deponent Verb **fātŭr,** *he says*, is Defective, and used in the following forms only—

Fātŭr, 3 Singular Present Indicative.

Fābŏr, 1 Singular Future Indicative.

Fābĭtŭr, 3 Singular Future Indicative.

Fārĕ, 2 Singular Imperative.

Digitized by Google

PERFECT AND AORIST.
Fātŭs sum, &c.,
and all Supine Stem Tenses
Regular.

INFINITIVE.
Fārī.

SUPINE.
Fātū.

GERUNDIVE.
Fāndŭs.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.
Fāntĭs, Gen.
Fāntī, Dat., &c.

PERFECT OR PLUPERFECT.
Fātŭs.

¶ **Semi-Deponent Verbs** "lay aside" part, but not the whole, of their Active Form. The commonest are :—

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Past Participle (with active meaning).
Āudĕō	āūdērĕ	āūsŭs sum	āūsŭs
Fīdō	fīdĕrĕ	fīsŭs sum	fīsŭs
Gāūdĕō	gāūdērĕ	gāvīsŭs sum	gāvīsŭs
Sŏlĕō	sŏlērĕ	sŏlĭtŭs sum	sŏlĭtŭs

¶ NOTE.—The Verb **dō** (dărĕ, dĕdĭ, dătum), *I give*, has "ă" throughout, except in "dā," "dās."

Digitized by Google

Prepositions.

The following is a list of the Latin Prepositions, with the Cases governed by each.

Ā, Āb,	from, by	*Ablative.*
Ăd,	to	*Accusative.*
Ādvērsum, Advērsŭs,	against	*Accusative.*
Āntĕ,	before	*Accusative.*
Āpŭd,	at, in the writings of	*Accusative.*
Circā,	about (of place, time, and number)	*Accusative.*
Circĭtĕr,	about (of time and number) . .	*Accusative.*
Circum,	about (of place)	*Accusative.*
Cĭs, Cĭtra,	on this side of	*Accusative.*
Cōntrā,	against	*Accusative.*
Cōram,	in the presence of	*Ablative.*
Cum,	together with	*Ablative.*
Dē,	down from, concerning . . .	*Ablative.*
Ē,	out of	*Ablative.*
Ērgā,	towards, with reference to . . .	*Accusative.*
Ex = Ē.		
Extrā,	outside of	*Accusative.*
Ĭn,	into, against	*Accusative.*
	in	*Ablative.*
Īnfrā,	beneath	*Accusative.*
Īntĕr,	between, among	*Accusative.*
Īntrā,	within	*Accusative.*
Jūxtā,	near	*Accusative.*
Ŏb,	on account of	*Accusative.*
Pĕnĕs,	in the power of	*Accusative.*
Pĕr,	through	*Accusative.*
Pōnĕ,	behind	*Accusative.*
Pōst,	after	*Accusative.*
Prāē,	before, in comparison with, for .	*Ablative.*
Prāētĕr,	beyond, except	*Accusative.*
Prō,	before, for	*Ablative.*
Prōpĕ.	near	*Accusative.*
Prōptĕr,	on account of	*Accusative.*
Sĕcūndum,	according to, along	*Accusative.*

Digitized by Google

Sinĕ,	without	*Ablative.*
Sŭb,	under (implying motion), about (of time)	*Accusative.*
	under (not implying motion) . .	*Ablative.*
Sŭbtĕr,	under	*Accusative* and (rarely) *Ablative.*
Sŭpĕr,	above	*Accusative* and (in poetry) *Ablative.*
	concerning	*Ablative.*
Sŭpra,	above	*Accusative.*
Tĕnŭs,	as far as	*Ablative* and (rarely) *Genitive.*
Trāns,	across	*Accusative.*
Ūltrā,	beyond	*Accusative.*
Vĕrsŭs,	towards	*Accusative.*

Prepositions stand either immediately before the Substantive which they govern, or before an Adjective agreeing with it, or a Genitive governed by it.

"Cum" when joined to a Personal or Relative Pronoun is written after it, forming one word, as "mēcum" (*with me*).

"Tĕnŭs" and "vĕrsŭs" always follow their Case.

In poetry, Prepositions of two syllables may follow their Case.

Digitized by Google

NOTES.

I. Forms of Substantives not mentioned in the "Declensions."

1. *First Declension.*

(α) "Fīlĭă" and "Dĕă" have a Dative and Ablative Plural, "Fīlĭābŭs" and "Dĕābŭs."

(β) Greek Substantives used by Latin writers have the Greek forms in some cases, either besides or instead of the Latin forms: e.g. "Ænēās" has Accusative "Ænēān" or "Ænēam"; "Ālcīdēs," Accusative "Ālcīdēn," Vocative "Ālcīdē"; "Cīrcē," Genitive "Cīrcēs," Accusative "Cīrcēn," &c.

(γ) Poetical Forms. Some words in "-cŏlă," "-gĕnă," "-dēs," have Genitive Plural in "ûm," as well as "ārum," e.g. "cāēlĭcŏlûm," "Grājŭgĕnûm," "Æneĕādûm."

2. *Second Declension.*

(α) The Vocative of Substantives ending in "ĭŭs" ends in "ĭ," not "ĭĕ," e.g. "fīlĭŭs," "Mĕrcŭrĭŭs," Vocative "fīlĭ," "Mĕrcŭrĭ."
"Dĕŭs" has Vocative "Dĕŭs."

(β) Substantives denoting money, weight, measure, often make Genitive Plural in "ûm," as well as "ōrūm," e.g. "sēstĕrtĭûm" *or* "sēstĕrtĭōrum," from "sēstĕrtĭŭs"; "mŏdĭûm" *or* "mŏdĭōrum," from "mŏdĭŭs"; also "vĭr," "Dĕŭs," and sometimes "sŏcĭŭs."

(γ) Poetical Forms.

(i) Words ending in "ĭŭs," "ĭum," make Genitive in "î," not "ĭī," in Lyrics and Hexameters, e.g. "cōnsĭlĭum," Genitive "cōnsĭlî."

Digitized by Google

(ii) Names of peoples have Genitive Plural in "ûm," as well as "-ōrum," e.g. "Teucrûm" *or* "Teūcrōrum," from "Teūcrī."

Also the following words, "dīvŭs," "sŭpĕrī" (*the gods above*), and a few others.

3. *Third Declension.*

(*a*) The following common words have "im" for "em" in the Accusative Singular:—"Sĭtĭs" (*thirst*), "vīs" (*force*).

Also the names of towns and rivers, as "Tĭbĕrĭs," Accusative "Tĭbĕrim."

"Pūppĭs" (*the stern*), "fĕbrĭs" (*the fever*), "tūrrĭs" (*the tower*), "sĕcūrĭs" (*the axe*), have "im" or "em."

(*β*) The following Substantives have "ī" in the Ablative Singular instead of "ĕ":—All Neuter words ending in "ĕ," "ăl," "ăr (āris)," as "ănĭmăl," Ablative "ănĭmālī"; also "sĭtĭs," "vīs," "sĕcūrĭs."

The following have "ī" or "ĕ"—"pūppĭs," "fĕbrĭs," "nāvĭs," "ăvĭs."

"Fămēs" makes Ablative Singular "fāmē."

(*γ*) As a general rule Substantives which have the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative Singular have "ĭum" in the Genitive Plural, e.g. "nūbēs" (*a cloud*), Genitive Plural "nūbĭum."

The following common words have "um"—"cănĭs" "jŭvĕnĭs," "vātēs," "vŏlŭcrĭs."

"Ăpĭs" (*a bee*) has both "ăpum" and "ăpĭum."

Substantives which have more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular have "um" in the Genitive Plural.

The following monosyllables (which have more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular,) have "ĭum" in the Genitive Plural—"ārx," "ārs," "ās," "dēns," "dōs," "fōns," "frāūs," "frōns," "gēns," "līs," "mās," "mēns," "mērx," "mōns," "mōrs," "mūs,"

Digitized by Google

"nōx," "pārs," "pōns," "sōrs," "stīrps," "trābs," "ūrbs."

Also the words "ădŏlēscēns," "clĭēns," "cŏhōrs," "părēns," "sērpēns," which however in poetry have often Genitive Plural in "ûm."

"Vīs" (*strength*) has Genitive Plural "vīrĭum."

4. *Fifth Declension.*

When the ending "ēs" of the Nominative Singular is preceded by a Consonant, the Genitive ends in "ĕī;" when it is preceded by a Vowel, the Genitive ends in "ēī."

II. Gender of Substantives.

1. *First Declension.*

All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, except "Hādrĭă" (*the Adriatic Sea*), and those which denote men or male animals.

2. *Second Declension.*

Besides "hŭmŭs" (*the ground*) and "cŏlŭs" (*the distaff*), nearly all names of trees, towns, and jewels are Feminine. "Vīrŭs" (*juice*), "pĕlăgŭs" (*the sea*), are always Neuter; "vūlgŭs" (*the common people*) usually so.

3. *Third Declension.*

The Genders of Substantives of the Third Declension follow no certain law. A list of the principal terminations with Genders is given below; those common words which are exceptions to the rule being mentioned in each case.

Termination.	Example.	Gender.	Exceptions.
Nom.			
-ĕr or -ēr	pătĕr	Mas.	līntĕr, mātĕr, mŭlĭĕr, Feminine.
	āethēr		cădāvĕr, ĭtĕr, păpāvĕr, vēr, Neuter.
-ĕs	ĕquĕs	Mas.	sĕgĕs, Feminine; ālĕs, Masculine or Feminine.
-ŏr	hŏnŏr	Mas.	ārbŏr, sŏrŏr, ūxŏr, Feminine; āequŏr, mārmŏr, cŏr, Neuter.
-ōs	mōs	Mas.	cōs, dōs, Feminine; ōs (ōssĭs) ōs (ōrĭs), Neuter.
-ās	lībērtās	Fem.	ās, vās, ĕlĕphās, Masculine; vās (*a vessel*), Neuter.

Digitized by Google

Termination.	Example.	Gender.	Exceptions.
Nom.			
-āūs	lāūs	Fem.	
-ēs	cāēdēs	Fem.	pārĭēs, pēs, Masculine; vātēs, hērēs, Masculine or Feminine; āēs, Neuter.
-ĭs	mēssĭs	Fem.	āmnĭs, āxĭs, cōllĭs, crīnĭs, ēnsĭs, fūnĭs, īgnĭs, clnĭs, lăpĭs, fūstĭs, ōrbĭs, hōstĭs, mēnsĭs, pānĭs, pīscĭs, pōstĭs, pūlvĭs, tōrquĭs, ūnguĭs, sānguĭs, Masculine; cănĭs, cīvĭs, fīnĭs, tēstĭs, ānguĭs, Masculine or Feminine.
-ō	ŏrīgō	Fem.	hŏmŏ, nēmō, cārdō, lĕō, ăquĭlō, lĭgō, ōrdō, pāpĭlĭō, Masculine; mārgō, Masculine or Feminine.
-s after consonant.	ūrbs	Fem.	fōns, pōns, mōns, dēns, prīncēps, āūcēps, Masculine.
-x	ārx	Fem.	ăpēx, grēx, rēx, pōllēx, vērtēx, sĕnēx, rēmēx, pōntĭfēx, Masculine; dūx, cōrtēx, sĭlēx, jūdēx, ārtĭfēx, īndēx, Masculine or Feminine.
-ăr *or* ār	nēctăr	Neut.	Lār, Masculine.
-ŭr	gūttŭr	Neut.	tūrtŭr, vūltŭr, fūr, Masculine.
-ŭs or -ūs	lĭtŭs	Neut.	mūs, lĕpŭs, Masculine.
	jūs		pĕcŭs (ŭdĭs), vīrtūs, pālūs, sĕnēctūs, jūvēntūs, sērvĭtūs, īncūs, Feminine.
-l	ănĭmăl	Neut.	cōnsŭl, sāl, sōl, Masculine.
-a	pŏēmă	Neut.	
-n	nōmĕn	Neut.	pēctĕn, tĭbĭcĕn, flāmĕn (*priest*), Masculine.
-c	lăc	Neut.	
-e	mărĕ	Neut.	
-t	căpŭt	Neut.	

III. Irregular and Defective Substantives.

1. Many Substantives are used in the Singular only, e.g.—

āūrum (*gold*), cāēlum (*the heavens*),
fĕrrum (*iron*), quiēs (*rest*).

2. Some Substantives have no Singular, as—

ārmă (*arms*), cāstrŭ (*a camp*),
lĭbĕrī (*children*), mōēnĭă (*walls*),
quādrīgāē (*a four-horse chariot*), sērtă (*a garland*),
tĕnĕbrāē (*darkness*).

Digitized by Google

3. Some Substantives have one meaning in the Singular and another in the Plural, as—

Singular.	Plural.
ǣdēs, *a temple.*	ǣdēs, *a house.*
cārcĕr, *a prison.*	cārcĕrēs, *a starting post.*
cōpĭă, *plenty.*	cōpĭāē, *forces.*
ŏpĭs (gen.), *of help.*	ŏpēs, *riches.*
rŏstrum, *a beak.*	rŏstrā, *the platform at Rome.*

4. Some compound Substantives decline both Component Parts, as—

rēspūblĭcă (*a state*), Genitive rēĭpūblĭcāē, &c.

Some decline one only, as—

pătērfămĭlĭās (*head of a household*), Genitive pătrĭsfămĭlĭās, &c.

5. Some Substantives are indeclinable, as—

fās (*right*), nĕfās (*wrong*).

6. Some Substantives are Defective. The most important not found in Nom. Sing. are—

Gen. dăpĭs	Dat. dăpī, &c. (no Genitive Plural)		(*banquet*).
Gen. dĭcĭōnĭs	Dat. dĭcĭōnī, &c.		(*sway*).
Gen. frūgĭs	Dat. frūgī, &c.		(*fruit*).
Gen. fĭdĭs	no Dat.	Acc. fĭdem	Abl. fĭdĕ (*lyre*).
Gen. ŏpĭs	no Dat.	Acc. ŏpem	Abl. ŏpĕ (*help*).
Gen. vĭcĭs	no Dat.	Acc. vĭcem	Abl. vĭcĕ (*turn*). (No Gen. Plu.)

Nom. Sing. vīs, no Gen. or Dat. Acc. vim Abl. vī (*force*). (Plural vīrēs, vīrĭum, &c.)

The following are commonly used in the Cases mentioned only—

Ablative Singular: jūssū (*order*), nātū (*birth*), gĕlū (*frost*), mānĕ (*morning*), cōmpĕdĕ (*chain*), ōbĭcĕ (*bolt*), prĕcĕ (*prayer*), but the last three are used in the Plural cases.

Accusative Plural: īnfĭtĭās (*denial*).

7. Some Substantives are declined according to more than one Declension.

"Cŭprēssŭs," "fĭcŭs," "laūrŭs," "pīnŭs," besides the terminations of the Second Declension, have Ablative Singular and Nominative and Accusative Plural according to the Fourth.

"Vēspĕră" (sometimes "Vēspĕr") (*evening*), besides the terminations of the First Declension, has Accusative "vēspĕrum," and Ablative "vēspĕrĕ" or "vēspĕrī."

Digitized by Google

"Rĕquĭēs" (*rest*), Genitive "rĕqŭiētĭs," has usually Accusative "rĕquĭem," Ablative "rĕqŭiē."

"Vās" (Genitive "vāsĭs") has Plural according to the Second Declension only, "vāsă" ("vāsōrum").

8. Some Nouns change their Gender in the Plural.

Singular.	Plural.
cārbăsŭs, Feminine.	cārbăsă, Neuter.
frēnum, Neuter.	frēnī and frēnă, Mas. and Neut.
jŏcŭs, Masculine.	jŏcī and jŏcă, Mas. and Neut.
lŏcŭs, Masculine.	lŏcī and lŏcă, Mas. and Neut.
rāstrum, Neuter.	rāstrī and rāstră, Mas. and Neut.

IV. Diminutives.

The following terminations express smallness, and often imply either contempt or affection.

-lŭs, -ŏlŭs, -cŭlŭs, as rēx, *a king.*	rēgŭlŭs, *a petty king.*
-lă, -ŏlă, -cŭlă, as fīlĭa, *a daughter.*	fīlĭŏlă, *a little daughter.*
-lum, -ŏlum, -cŭlum, as ŏpŭs, *a work.*	ŏpūscŭlum, *a small work.*

Other instances of Diminutives are—

cătŭlŭs, *a dog.*	cătēllŭs, *a puppy.*
cătēnă, *a chain.*	cătēllă, *a small chain.*

V.

The following lists contain some common Pronouns and Adverbs derived from Pronouns with their meanings:—

quī . . .	quāē . .	quŏd . . .	Relative, *who.*
quĭs, Subst. or Adj. . . / quī, Adj. . .	quāē . .	quĭd, Subst. . / quŏd, Adj. .	Interrogative, *who?*

(Accusative Neuter as Nominative.)

quĭs . . . / quī . . .	quāē . . / quă . . .	quĭd, Subst. . / quŏd, Adj. .	Indefinite, *anyone, a.*

(Nominative and Accusative Neuter Plural: quāē or quă.)

ēcquĭs . . . / ēcquī . . .	ēcquāē . . / ēcquă . .	ēcquĭd, Subst. . / ēcquŏd, Adj. .	Interrogative, *any one?*
ălĭquĭs, Subst. or Adj. . . / ălĭquī, Adj. .	ălĭquă . .	ălĭquĭd, Subst. . / ălĭquŏd, Adj. .	Indefinite, *some one.*

(Nominative and Accusative Neuter Plural: ălĭquă.)

quĭsquam .	No Fem. .	quĭdquam . .	Indefinite, *any one, a.*

(Substantive, used only in Negative Sentences. It has no Plural.)

Digitized by Google

quīdam . .	quāēdam .	quīddam, Subst. quōddam, Adj. .	Indefinite, *a certain.*
quīsquĕ . .	quāēquĕ .	quīdquĕ, Subst. quōdquĕ, Adj. .	Indefinite, *each.*
quīvīs . . .	quāēvīs .	quīdvīs, Subst. quōdvīs, Adj. .	Indefinite, *any you will.*
quīlĭbĕt . .	quāēlĭbĕt .	quīdlĭbĕt, Subst. quōdlĭbĕt, Adj.	
quīcūnquĕ .	quāēcūnquĕ	quōdcūnquĕ . .	Indefinite Relative, *whoever, whatever.*
quīsquĭs . .	No Fem. .	quīdquĭd . .	Indefinite Relative, *whoever.*

(The only other parts in use are the Accusative Singular Neuter and Ablative Singular Masculine and Neuter.)

ŭtĕr . . .	ŭtrā . .	ŭtrum . . .	Interrogative, *which* (of two); Indefinite, *which* (of two).
ŭtĕrquĕ . .	utrăquĕ .	ŭtrūmquĕ . .	Indefinite, *both.*
ŭtĕrvis . .	ŭtrăvīs .	ŭtrūmvīs . .	Indefinite, *which you will* (of two).
ŭtĕrlĭbĕt . .	ŭtrălĭbĕt .	ŭtrūmlĭbĕt . .	
ūnūsquīsquĕ .	ūnăquāēquĕ	ūnūmquōdquĕ .	Indefinite, *each* or *each one severally.*

Adverbs.

1. *Rest.*

Hīc, *here;* ĭbĭ, *there;* ĭbīdem, *in the same place;* īllīc, *there;* ŭbĭ, *where* or *where?* ŭbĭcūnquĕ, *wherever;* ălĭcŭbĭ, ūsquam, *anywhere;* ūndĭquĕ, *on all sides.*

2. *Motion towards.*

Hūc, *hither;* ĕō, *thither;* ĕōdem, *to the same place;* īllūc, īllō, *thither;* quō, *whither* or (interrogative) *whither?* quōcūnquĕ, *whithersoever;* ūsquam, *anywhither.*

3. *Motion from.*

Hīnc, *hence;* īndĕ, *thence;* īllīnc, *thence;* ūndĕ, *whence* or (interrogative) *whence?* ūndĭquĕ, *from all sides.*

4. *Place* or *direction.*

Ĕā, *by that way;* quā, *by which way, where* or (interrogative) *where? in what way?* quācūnquĕ, *wherever.*

5. *Time.*

Nūnc, *now;* tūnc, tum, *then;* quum, *when;* quāndō, *when;* quāndōcūnquĕ, *whenever;* ălĭquāndō, *at some time or other?* ūnquam, *at any time.*

Digitized by Google

6. *Degree.*

Tam, *so* (usually with Adjectives or Adverbs); ădĕō, *so* (usually with Verbs); ĭtă, *only so far;* quam, *how!; as* (after tam); *than* (after Comparatives).

7. *Number.*

Tŏtĭēs, *so often;* quŏtĭēs, *as* (after tŏtĭēs), *how often?*

8. *Manner.*

Ĭtă, sīc (*thus*); ŭt, *as.*

9. *Cause.*

Quŏd, quĭă, *because;* cūr, quārē, *why?*

Notice also the Adjectives—

Tālĭs, *such;* quālĭs, *as* (after tālĭs), *such as, of what sort?* quālĭscūnquĕ, *of what sort soever.*

Tāntŭs, *so great;* quāntŭs, *as* (after tāntŭs), *as great as, how great?*

Tŏt, *so many;* quŏt, *as* (after tŏt), *as many as, how many?* quōtquŏt, *how many soever;* ălĭquŏt, *some few;* tŏtĭdem, *just so many.*

Quŏtŭs, *which in order?* (answered by the Ordinals "prīmŭs," &c.)

VI. Numerals.

Numerals are of various kinds, as—

ūnŭs, *one*, called a *Cardinal* Number.
prīmŭs, *first*, called an *Ordinal* Number.
sīngŭlī, *one each*, called a *Distributive* Number.
sĕmĕl, *once*, called a *Numeral* Adverb.

All Ordinal and Distributive Numbers are declinable Adjectives.

Of the Cardinal Numbers "ūnŭs," "dŭŏ," "trēs," are declinable; the rest up to "dĕcem," and "vīgīntī," "trīgīntā," &c., up to "cēntum," indeclinable.

"Dŭcēntī," "trĕcēntī," &c., are declinable. "Mīllĕ" in the Singular is used as an Indeclinable Adjective (and, in the Nominative and Accusative, as an Indeclinable Substantive); the Plural, "mīlĭă," is a Declinable Substantive.

All Numbers up to 21 are given in the table below. In forming compound Numbers between 21 and 100, the larger Number comes first without "ĕt," or the smaller with "ĕt," as—"vīgīntī dŭŏ," *or* "dŭŏ ĕt vīgīntī" = 22.

Digitized by Google

In Numbers from 100 to 1000 the hundreds (with or without "ĕt") come first, then the tens, and lastly the units.

In Numbers above 1000, the thousands (with or without "ĕt") come first, then the hundreds, &c. When "mīlĭă" occurs, followed by smaller numbers, the Substantive is in the Genitive, if it precedes the number; but is in the same case as "mīlĭă" if it follows it, as—

dŭŏ mīlĭă dŭcēntī sēx ĕquĭtēs
or ĕquĭtum dŭŏ mīlĭă dŭcēntī sēx } = 2206 cavalry.

Numbers ending in 8 or 9 are often formed by subtraction, e.g.—"sixty-eight," "dŭŏdēsēptŭāgīntā"; "seventy-nine," "ūndĕōctōgīntā."

No.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	ūnŭs -ă -um . .	prīmŭs (of two, "prĭŏr")	sīngŭlī -āē -ă .	sĕmĕl.
2	dŭŏ -āē -ŏ . .	altĕr -ă -um, sĕcundŭs -ă -um	bīnī -āē -ă . .	bĭs.
3	trēs, trĭă. . .	tērtĭŭs -ă -um . .	tērnī -āē -ă . .	tĕr.
4	quāttŭŏr. . .	quārtus -ă -um . .	quătērnī -āē -ă .	quătĕr.
5	quīnquĕ . . .	quīntŭs -ă -um . .	quīnī -āē -ă . .	quīnquĭēs.
6	sēx	sēxtŭs -ă -um . .	sēnī -āē -ă . .	sēxĭēs.
7	sēptem . . .	sēptĭmŭs -ă -um . .	sēptēnī -āē -ă .	sēptĭēs.
8	ōctŏ	ōctāvŭs -ă -um . .	ōctōnī -āē -ă . .	ōctĭēs.
9	nŏvem . . .	nōnŭs -ă -um . . .	nŏvēnī -āē -ă. .	nŏvĭēs.
10	dĕcem . . .	dĕcĭmŭs -ă -um . .	dēnī -āē -ă . .	dĕcĭēs.
11	ūndĕcim . . .	ūndĕcĭmŭs -ă -um .	ūndēnī -āē -ă .	ūndĕcĭēs.
12	dŭŏdĕcim . .	dŭŏdĕcĭmŭs -ă -um .	dŭŏdēnī -āē -ă .	dŭŏdĕcĭēs.
13	trĕdĕcim *or* dĕcĕm ĕt trēs	tērtĭŭs -ă -um dĕcĭmŭs -ă -um	tērnī -āē -ă dēnī -āē -ă	tērdĕcĭēs.
14	quāttŭōrdĕcim .	quārtŭs -ă -um dĕcĭmŭs -ă -um	quătērnī -āē -ă dēnī -āē -ă	quătérdĕcĭēs.
15	quīndĕcim . .	quīntŭs -ă -um dĕcĭmŭs -ă -um	quīnī -āē -ă dēnī -āē -ă	quīndĕcĭēs.
16	sēdĕcim . . .	sēxtŭs -ă -um dĕcĭmŭs -ă -um	sēnī -āē -ă dēnī -āē -ă	sēdĕcĭēs.
17	sēptēmdĕcim .	sēptĭmŭs -ă -um dĕcĭmŭs -ă -um	sēptēnī -āē -ă dēnī -āē -ă	sēptĭēs dĕcĭēs

Digitized by Google

No.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
18	dŭŏdēvīgīntī .	dŭŏdēvīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um	dŭŏdēvīcēnī -āē -ă	dŭŏdēvĭcĭēs.
19	ūndēvīgīntī . .	ūndēvīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um	ūndēvīcēnī -āē -ă	ūndēvĭcĭēs.
20	vīgīntī . . .	vīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um	vīcēnī -āē -ă . .	vĭcĭēs.
21	ūnŭs -ă -um ĕt vīgīntī, *or* vīgīntī ūnŭs -ă -um	ūnŭs -ă -um ĕt vīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um	vīcēnī -āē -ă sīngŭlī -āē -ă	sĕmĕl ĕt vĭcĭēs.
22	dŭŏ -āē -ŏ ĕt vīgīntī, *or* vīgīntī dŭŏ -āē -ŏ	āltĕr -ă -um ĕt vīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um, *or* dŭŏētvīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um	vīcēnī -āē -ă bīnī -āē -ă	bĭs ĕt vĭcĭēs.
28	dŭŏdētrīgīntā .	dŭŏdētrīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um	dŭŏdētrīcēnī -āē -ă	dŭŏdētrĭcĭēs.
29	ūndētrīgīntā .	ūndētrīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um	ūndētrīcēnī -āē -ă	ūndētrĭcĭēs.
30	trīgīntā . . .	trīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um .	trīcēnī -āē -ă .	trĭcĭēs.
35	trīgīntā quīnquĕ, *or* quīnquĕ ĕt trīgīntā	quīntŭs -ă -um ĕt trīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um, *or* trīcēsĭmŭs -ă -um quīntus -ă -um	quīnī -āē -ă trīcēnī -āē -ă	trĭcĭēs quīnquĭēs.
40	quādrāgīntā .	quādrāgēsĭmŭs -ă -um	quādrāgēnī -āē -ă	quādrāgĭēs.
50	quīnquāgīntā .	quīnquāgēsĭmŭs -ă -um	quīnquāgēnī. .	quīnquāgĭēs.
60	sēxāgīntā . .	sēxāgēsĭmŭs -ă -um .	sēxāgēnī -āē -ă .	sēxāgĭēs.
70	sēptŭāgīntā . .	sēptŭāgēsĭmŭs -ă -um	sēptŭāgēnī -āē -ă	sēptŭāgĭēs.
80	ōctōgīntā . .	ōctōgēsĭmŭs -ă -um .	ōctōgēnī -āē -ă .	ōctōgĭēs.
90	nōnāgīntā . .	nōnāgēsĭmŭs -ă -um .	nōnāgēnī -āē -ă .	nōnāgĭēs.
100	cēntum . . .	cēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um .	cēntēnī -āē -ă .	cēntĭēs.
147	cēntum (*or* cēntum ĕt) quādrāgīntā sēptem	cēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um (*or* cēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um ĕt) quādrāgēsĭmŭs -ă -um sēptĭmŭs -ă -um	cēntēnī -āē -ă quādrāgēnī -āē -ă sēptēnī -āē -ă	cēntĭēs (*or* cēntĭēs ĕt) quādrāgĭēs sēptĭēs.
200	dŭcēntī -āē -ă .	dŭcēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um.	dŭcēnī -āē -ă .	dŭcēntĭēs.
300	trĕcēntī -āē -ă .	trĕcēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um	trĕcēnī -āē -ă .	trĕcēntĭēs.
400	quādrĭngēntī -āē -ă	quādrĭngēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um	quādrĭngēnī -āē -ă	quādrĭngēntĭēs.
500	quĭngēntī -āē -ă	quĭngēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um	quĭngēnī -āē -ă .	quĭngēntĭēs.
600	sēxcēntī -āē -ă .	sēxcēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um	sēxcēnī -āē -ă .	sēxcēntĭēs.
700	sēptĭngēntī -āē -ă	sēptĭngēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um	sēptĭngēnī -āē -ă	sēptĭngēntĭēs
800	ōctĭngēntī -āē -ă	ōctĭngēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um	ōctĭngēnī -āē -ă .	ōctĭngēntĭēs.
900	nōngēntī -āē -ă .	nōngēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um	nōnāgēnī -āē -ă .	nōngēntĭēs.

Digitized by Google

No.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1000	mīllĕ . . .	mīllēsĭmŭs -ă -um .	sīngŭlă mīlĭă .	mīlĭēs.
2000	dŭŏ mīlĭă . .	bĭs mīllēsĭmŭs -ă -um	bīnă mīlĭă . .	bĭs mīlĭēs.
65,768	sēxāgīntā quīnquĕ mīlĭă, (ĕt) sēptĭngēntī -āē -ă sēxāgīntā ŏctŏ	sēxāgĭēs quīnquĭēs mīllēsĭmŭs -ă -um, sēptĭngēntēsĭmŭs -ă -um sēxāgēsĭmŭs -ă um ōctāvŭs -ă -um	sēxāgēnă quīnă mīlĭă, sēptĭngēnī -āē -ă sēxāgēnī -āē -ă ōctōnī -āē -ă.	sēxāgĭēs quīnquĭēs mīlĭēs, sēptĭngēntĭēs sēxāgĭēs ōctĭēs.

VII. Fractions. Interest.

The following is a list of some simple fractions, with their Latin Equivalents—

$\frac{1}{2}$ . . . . . dīmĭdĭum *or* pārs dīmĭdĭa.
$\frac{1}{3}$ . . . . . tērtĭă *or* pārs tērtĭă.
$\frac{1}{4}$ . . . . . quārtă *or* pārs quārtă,
&c. &c.
$\frac{2}{3}$ . . . . . dŭāē pārtēs,
$\frac{3}{4}$ . . . . . trēs pārtēs,
&c. &c.
$\frac{2}{3}$ . . . . . trēs quīntāē *or* trēs quīntāē pārtēs.
$\frac{3}{7}$ . . . . . trēs sēptĭmāē *or* trēs sēptĭmāē pārtēs,
&c. &c.

The "as" (originally a "pound of copper") was divided into twelve ounces, "ūncĭae," which had the following names—

Ounces.		
1	ūncĭă	$\frac{1}{12}$
2	sēxtāns	$\frac{1}{6}$
3	quādrāns	$\frac{1}{4}$
4	trĭēns	$\frac{1}{3}$
5	quīncūnx	$\frac{5}{12}$
6	sēmĭs	$\frac{1}{2}$
7	sēptūnx	$\frac{7}{12}$
8	bēs	$\frac{2}{3}$
9	dōdrāns	$\frac{3}{4}$
10	dēxtāns	$\frac{5}{6}$
11	dĕūnx	$\frac{11}{12}$
12	ās	

These names were made use of to express fractions of estates, &c., and rates of interest. Thus—

hērēs ēx trĭēntĕ = *heir to a third of an estate.*

Digitized by Google

Interest was reckoned by the month. The usual rate was 1 per cent. per month, i.e. 12 per cent. per year ("cēntēsĭmāē ūsūrāē"). Lower rates are expressed by fractions of the "as" in apposition to "ūsūrae," *interest* (1 pl.), higher rates by Distributive Numerals with "cēntēsĭmāē (sc. pārtēs)," as—

1 per cent. per ann.	. . .	ūsūrāē	ūncĭāē
5 „ „	. . .	„	quīncūncēs
8 „ „	. . .	„	bēssēs
12 „ „	. . .	„	cēntēsĭmāē
36 „ „	. . .	tērnāē	cēntēsĭmāē.

VIII. Money.

Money was usually reckoned by "sēstērtĭī" (sesterces). The "sēstērtĭŭs" was a coin = 2½ "asses," as its name implies (literally = "three asses, the third being a half 'as'"). Its value was about 2*d*. Sums up to 2000 sesterces are expressed in the ordinary way by Cardinal Numbers preceding "sēstērtĭī," as—

"1563 sesterces," mīllĕ quīngēntī sēxāgīntā trēs sēstērtĭī.

Sums from 2000 up to 1,000,000 sesterces were expressed in terms of "sēstērtĭă" (2 plur. neut.) (sums of money, not coins), three "sēstērtĭă" being equivalent to three thousand "sēstērtĭī," thus—

3000 sesterces . . . . . trĭă sēstērtĭă.
900,000 sesterces . . . . . nōngēntă sēstērtĭă.

Sums above a million are usually expressed by "sēstērtĭum" (Singular only), which is used with Numeral Adverbs as equivalent to 100,000 "sēstērtĭī," thus—

"I bought a farm for 3,400,000 sesterces," sēstērtĭō trĭcĭēs quātĕr fūndum ēmī.

For "sēstērtĭŭs," "sēstērtĭă," and "sēstērtĭum," we often find the abbreviation HS, properly IIS or 2½ (S = sēmĭs), thus—

HS. XX = 20 sēstērtĭī.

If the Numeral has a stroke over it, the number must be multiplied by 1000, thus—

HS. $\overline{\text{XX}}$ = 20,000 sēstērtĭī.

Digitized by Google

When both the HS and the Numeral have a stroke over them, the $\overline{\text{HS}}$ stands for "sēstērtĭum" and the Numeral for a Numeral Adverb, thus—

$\overline{\text{HS}}.\ \overline{\text{XX}}$ = vĭcĭēs sēstērtĭum or 2,000,000 sēstērtĭī.

The "dēnārĭŭs" was a silver coin of about the same value as the Attic "drachma" and modern "franc."

IX. Dates.

The Roman months (after 45 B.C.) corresponded in length to the English months. But instead of reckoning forwards from the beginning, the Romans reckoned backwards from three principal days—the "Kălēndae" or Kalends, the "Nōnae" or Nones, and the "Īdūs" or Ides. The Kalends were the first of the month, the Nones and Ides were the 5th and 13th, except in March, May, July and October, when they were the 7th and 15th. In reckoning, the Romans always counted inclusively. Thus the 2nd of January was (not the 3rd, but) the 4th day before the Nones of January; thus—

Nones—5th, 1 day.
4th, 2 days.
3rd, 3 days.
2nd, 4 days.

The 8th January was the 6th day before the Ides (or 13th) of January; the 18th January, the 15th day before the Kalends (or 1st) of February. Hence we get a rule—

To find the equivalent for an English date, subtract the English figure from the Date of the next Nones (or Ides) *increased by one*, or from the number of days in the month *increased by two;* the result will give the expression to be turned into Latin.

The names of the months are Adjectives. The first of January is "Kălēndae Jānŭārĭae," the January Kalends. The day before Kalends, Nones, Ides, is expressed by "Prĭdĭē" with the Accusative; thus, the 12th June is "Prĭdĭē Īdūs Jūnĭās."

Digitized by Google

All other days are expressed by "āntĕ dĭem ... Kălēndās" (*or* "Nōnās" *or* "Īdūs"), the Ordinal being inserted after "dĭem," thus—

2nd January	is	āntĕ dĭem quārtum Nōnās Jānŭārĭās.
8th January	„	āntĕ dĭem sēxtum Īdūs Jānŭārĭās.
18th January	„	āntĕ dĭem quīntum dĕcĭmum Kălēndās Fēbrŭārĭās.

These dates are usually written—

a.d. IV. Non. Jan.	*or simply*	IV. Non. Jan.
a.d. VI. Id. Jan.	„	VI. Id. Jan.
a.d. XV. Kal. Feb.	„	XV. Kal. Feb.

Digitized by Google

SYNTAX, WITH EXPLANATIONS.

I. Rules of Agreement.

¶ (1) First Concord.—**The Verb agrees with the Subject in Number and Person.**

(6) The Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative.

In the sentence,

The mother loves the boy,

something is said about the "*mother;*" namely, that she "*loves the boy.*" This is the commonest form of sentence: in fact, nearly every sentence, if you take it to pieces, will be found to consist of two principal parts, namely—

(1) the person about whom, or the thing about which, something is stated;
(2) the statement.

These two parts are called, both in English and Latin Grammar—

(1) The Subject,
(2) The Predicate.

Thus, in the sentence "*The mother loves the boy,*" "*The mother*" is the Subject, "*loves the boy*" is the Predicate. Now compare with this sentence another—

The mother loves the boy.
The boy runs.

In this sentence we state about the boy that "*he runs,*" or in other words—

"*The boy*" is the Subject,
"*runs*" is the Predicate.

Hence we see that one word is enough to make a complete Predicate.

Digitized by Google

But we can also see that the word "*loves*" will not make a complete Predicate. The sentence is incomplete till we know "whom" or "what" "*the mother loves.*" The verb requires a word to follow it before the sense is complete.

Such verbs are called **Transitive** Verbs.

The word which follows them is called the **Object.**

But verbs which will make a complete Predicate by themselves, such as "*to run,*" "*to grow,*" "*to stand,*" &c., are called **Intransitive** Verbs.

Notice here an important difference between English and Latin.

In the English sentence,

The mother loves the boy,

we know that

"*The mother*" is the Subject, and
"*the boy*" is the Object.

But how do we know it?

By the **order of the words.** If we altered the order, thus—

The boy loves the mother,

the sentence would have a different meaning.

But take the sentence in Latin—

Mātĕr ămăt pŭĕrum,

we know that

"Mātĕr" is the Subject, and that
"pŭĕrum" is the Object.

But how do we know it?

Not by the order of the words, but by the **Cases** of

"mātĕr" and
"pŭĕrum."

Whatever order the words stand in, as—

Mātĕr pŭĕrum ămăt,
Ămăt pŭĕrum mātĕr,
Ămăt mātĕr pŭĕrum, &c.,

the meaning is not changed.

Digitized by Google

Now let us parse the words in the sentence—

Mātĕr is nom. sing. fem. from mātĕr, mātrĭs, *a mother.*
Ămăt is 3 sing. pres. ind. act. from ămō, ămārĕ, ămāvĭ, ămātum, *I love.*
Pŭĕrum is acc. sing. mas. from pŭĕr, pŭĕrĭ, *a boy.*

Hence we get the two rules given above.

NOTE.—Sentences may be divided into three classes—
Statements,—Questions,—Commands.

The rules given for statements hold good for the other two, as—

Nōnnĕ mātĕr ămăt pŭĕrum?
Does not the mother love the boy?
Ămā mātrem, pŭĕr,
Love thy mother, O boy.

¶ (2) SECOND CONCORD.—**Adjectives and Participles agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number, and Case.**

TAKE the sentence—

The mother loves the boy,

and add Adjectives to the Substantives, as—

The good mother loves the little boy,
Bŏnă mātĕr ămăt pārvum pŭĕrum.

Participles, as you have learnt, are declined like Adjectives and follow the same rules. So in this sentence—

The widowed mother loves the boy,

we might write—

Vĭdŭă mātĕr ămăt pŭĕrum,
or Vĭdŭătă mātĕr ămăt pŭĕrum.

Digitized by Google

¶ (3) THIRD CONCORD.—**Substantives in Apposition agree in Case.**

SUPPOSE that we have a second Substantive alongside, as—

The mother loves the boy, her darling,
Mātĕr ămăt pŭĕrum, sŭās dēlĭcĭās.

The Latin for "*darling*" is "dēlĭcĭāē," a fem. Subst. only used in the Plural. But "pŭĕrum" is mas. and sing. Therefore, "dēlĭcĭās" does not agree with "pŭĕrum" in Gender or Number, but only in Case.

Substantives thus standing together are said to be in **Apposition.**

II. SUBJECT.

¶ **(4) The Subject of a Finite Verb is usually Substantive or Pronoun in the Nominative, as,**

Cănĭs cūrrĭt,	Īllĕ dīxĭt,
The dog runs.	*He said.*

NOTE.—The Subject in Latin is often not expressed, as—

Dīxĭt, *he said.*

NOTE.—(*a*) If there are two or more Subjects to one Verb, the Verb will be Plural, as—

Pŭĕr ĕt cănĭs cūrrūnt,
The boy and the dog run.

(*b*) If the Subjects are of different Persons, the Plural Verb agrees with the First Person rather than with the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third, as—

Ĕgŏ ĕt tū cūrrĭmŭs,
I and you run.

NOTE.—To find the Subject of a Verb—

(1) Take the Verb;
(2) Ask the question "who?" or "what?" with the Verb;

Digitized by Google

(3) The answer will be the Subject, as—

The mother loves the boy.

(1) The Verb is "*loves.*"
(2) Who loves?
(3) Answer: "*The mother.*"

¶ **(5) The Subject of a Verb may be a Verb in the Infinitive Mood, as,**

Pūgnārĕ dēlēctăt mīlĭtem,
To fight delights the soldier.

III. Object.

¶ **(6) The Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative, as,**

Mătĕr ămăt pŭĕrum,
The mother loves the boy.

Note.—Many Verbs, Transitive in English, are rendered in Latin by Verbs not Transitive, but followed by the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative Case. See Rules 12, 14, 15, 26.

IV. Link Verbs.

¶ **(7) Link Verbs have the Complement in the same Case as the Subject.**

If we take the words "*Cæsar became,*" we should say that "*Cæsar*" is the Subject, and "*became*" is the Predicate. But we should also say that the sense was incomplete, till we knew "who" or "what" Cæsar became. So, too, with—

Pompey was called.
Cicero seems.

Digitized by Google

If we add another word, the sense becomes complete, as—

Cæsar became Dictator.
Pompey was called the Great.
Cicero seems eloquent.

In Latin—

Cāēsăr fāctŭs ēst Dĭctātŏr.
Pŏmpēĭŭs vŏcātŭs ēst Māgnŭs.
Cĭcĕrō vĭdētŭr fācūndŭs.

Notice here—

(*a*) That the Verbs are not Transitive Verbs.
(*b*) The Case which follows the Verb is the same as that which precedes.

These Verbs, which do not govern Cases, but couple two words together, are, therefore, called "**Link**" or Coupling Verbs. The word following these Verbs is called, not the Object, but the "**Complement.**"

The following is a list of the most important Link Verbs:—

Sum, *I am.*	Lĕgŏr, *I am chosen.*
Fīō, *I become.*	Vŏcŏr, Appēllŏr, } *I am called.*
Vĭdĕŏr, *I seem.*	
Nāscŏr, *I am born.*	Hăbĕŏr, Pŭtŏr, Crēdŏr, } *I am thought.*
Dĭcŏr, *I am called.*	
Crĕŏr, *I am created.*	
	&c., &c.

NOTE.—After the verb "sum" the Complement is sometimes in the Dative, as—

Ēxĭtĭō ēst mărĕ naūtīs,
The sea is death to sailors (lit. "*for a destruction*").
Cūī bŏnō ēst?
To whom is it profitable? (lit. "*for a profit.*")

This construction is used with words signifying—

help *or* hindrance,
praise *or* shame,
gain *or* loss, and some others, as—

"dŏcŭmēntō," *a proof;* "ēxēmplō," *an example;* "lūdĭbrĭō," *a mockery,* etc.; but not with words signifying a person, or a thing that can be seen or touched, ("concrete" words).

Digitized by Google

V. Genitive Case.

¶ The Genitive Case cannot stand alone or be the Subject of a Verb.

In English and Latin alike it is governed by another word, usually a Substantive, but sometimes an Adjective or Adverb, sometimes a Verb (Rules 10, 11, 12).

(8) A Substantive governed by another Substantive is in the Genitive.

Some Adjectives and Adverbs govern a Genitive.

Substantive—

Amŏr lŭcrī, *Love of gain.*
Rēgĭs fĭlĭŭs, *The king's son*, i.e. *the son of the king.*

Adjective—

Cŭpĭdŭs bĕllī, *Eager for war.*
Mĕmŏr sŭāē mātrĭs, *Mindful of his mother.*

Adverb—

Vīrtūtĭs hăbĕt sătĭs, cōnsĭlĭī părum,
Of valour he has enough, of prudence too little.

When, therefore, you find in English two words joined by "*of*," "*for*," "*in*,"—as, "*love of gain*," "*eager for battle*," "*skilled in war*,"—the latter is usually in the Genitive in Latin.

This is not a rule without exception, as you will find many Adjectives followed by the Dative or Ablative; and you must take notice of such expressions as these:—

English—	*The city of Rome.*
Latin—	*The city Rome,* Ūrbs Rōmă.
English—	*The top of the mountain.*
Latin—	*The topmost mountain,* Sūmmŭs mōns.
English—	*The battle of Marathon.*
Latin—	*The Marathonian battle,* Mărăthōnĭă pūgnă.
Or—	*The battle fought at Marathon,* Pūgnă ăpŭd Mărăthōnem cōmmĭssă.
English—	*Alexander of Pheræ.*
Latin—	*Alexander the Pheræan.* Ălēxăndĕr Phĕrāēŭs.

Digitized by Google

English— *A man of courage.*
Latin— *A courageous man.*
Vĭr fŏrtĭs.

NOTE.—The principal uses of the Genitive may be classed under three heads.

1. *Possessive* or *Subjective*, as—

Rēgĭs fīlĭŭs = the son of the king, i.e. "the son belonging to the king," or "the son whom the king has or *possesses.*"

Tĭmŏr hōstĭum = the fear of the enemy, i.e. "the fear which the enemy feels," or "the fear of which the enemy is the *Subject.*"

2. *Objective*, as—

Tĭmŏr hōstĭum = the fear of the enemy, i.e. "the fear which is felt for the enemy," or "the fear of which the enemy is the *Object.*"

3. *Partitive*, as—

Pārs Gāllĭāē = part of Gaul.

This is usually found after Substantives expressing *a part*, as "dĭmĭdĭum" (*a half*), "cŏhōrs" (*a regiment*, as forming *part* of a legion), &c.; or Adverbs expressing *a part*, as "pārum" (*too little*, i.e. too small a *part* of the whole), "sātĭs" (*enough*, i.e. a sufficient *part* of the whole), &c.

NOTE.—In such sentences as—

Hŏmĭnĭs ēst ĕrrārĕ,
To err is human (lit. "is of a man"),

the Genitive is a Possessive Genitive, governed by a word meaning "habit," "duty," "mark," &c., which must be supplied in the mind of the reader. Such sentences are most easily rendered like the example given, by putting an Adjective for the Genitive case, e.g.—

Sāpĭēntĭs ēst pārērĕ lēgĭbŭs,
To obey the laws is wise (lit. "is (the mark) of a wise man").

Īgnāvī ēst fŭgĕrĕ,
To flee is cowardly (lit. "is (the part) of a coward").

Digitized by Google

¶ (9) Quality is expressed by the Genitive (or Ablative) with Epithet.

You have seen above that

A man of courage

is in Latin "vĭr fŏrtĭs," but in such a sentence as—

Cæsar was a man of wondrous courage,

where the word "*courage*" has an Adjective agreeing with it, the words "*of wondrous courage*" would, in Latin, be either in the Genitive or Ablative—

Cāēsăr vĭr fŭĭt mīrāē fŏrtĭtūdĭnĭs,
or mīrā fŏrtĭtūdĭnĕ.

This is called the Genitive or Ablative of **Quality.** The Adjective agreeing is called an **Epithet.**

NOTE.—In such sentences as—

I esteem Cæsar highly,
Cāēsărem măgnī făcĭō,

the Genitive "măgnī" (called the Genitive of **Price**) is akin to the Genitive of Quality, as the word "prĕtĭī" has to be supplied. (See "**At**" (3) in List of English Prepositions, &c.)

¶ (10) Some Impersonal Verbs take a Genitive besides the Accusative of the Object, as,

English—

I repent of my sin.

Latin—

It repents me of my sin,
Pāenĭtĕt mē mĕī scĕlĕrĭs.

English—

I pity your sorrow.

Latin—

It pities me of your sorrow,
Mĭsĕrĕt mē tŭī dŏlōrĭs.

Digitized by Google

The most important are—

Mĭsĕrĕt, *It pities.*
Pĭgĕt, *It troubles.*
Pāenĭtĕt, *It repents.*
Pŭdĕt, *It shames.*
Tāedĕt, *It wearies.*

(See also Rule 31.)

¶ **(11) Verbs of "accusing," "condemning," or "acquitting," take a Genitive besides the Accusative of the Object, as,**

Cĭcĕrō ăccūsāvĭt Vĕrrem fūrtī,
Cicero accused Verres of theft.

¶ **(12) Verbs of "forgetting" or "remembering," and the Verb "mĭsĕrĕŏr" (I pity), take a Genitive, as—**

Mĕmēntō tŭī pătrĭs,
Remember your father.

NOTE.—"Rĕcōrdŏr," *I remember*, always takes an Accusative; "mĕmĭnī," "rĕmĭnĭscŏr," "ōblĭvĭscŏr," sometimes do so.

VI. DATIVE CASE.

¶ THE Dative Case, as its name shows, expresses the person, &c., *to whom* a thing is given or *for whom* a thing is done.

The Dative may also express the person, &c., *from whom* a thing is taken away, or *against whom* a thing is done.

HENCE a Dative can be added to almost any sentence, as nearly everything, which is done, is done *for* or *against* some one or something.

(13) Many Verbs, especially Compound Verbs, take a Dative, besides the Accusative of the Object.

Digitized by Google

For instance—

He gave the book	— *to the boy,*
Dĕdĭt lĭbrum	— pŭĕrō.
He told the matter	— *to the general,*
Dīxĭt rem	— dŭcī.
Cæsar opposed	— *Pompey,*
Caēsăr sē ŏppŏsŭĭt	— Pŏmpēĭō.
He made war on	— *the Gauls,*
Ĭntŭlĭt bēllum	— Găllĭs.
He took away the kingdom from	— *Mithridates,*
Ăbstŭlĭt rēgnum	— Mĭthrĭdātī.
He put the eggs under	— *the hen,*
Sūppŏsŭĭt ōvă	— găllīnāē.

Notice that in the last three instances the words "*on,*" "*from,*" "*under,*" are expressed by Prepositions "ĭn," "ăb," "sŭb," compounded with the Verb.

NOTE.—This Dative is often found with Link Verbs, as—

Est mĭhĭ pătĕr,
I have a father,
lit. *There is to me a father.*

Cĭcĕrō vĭdētŭr fācūndŭs ōmnĭbŭs,
All men think Cicero eloquent,
lit. *Cicero seems eloquent to all.*

¶ (14) Compounds of "sum," except "pōssum," take a Dative, as,

The consul commanded the army,
Cōnsŭl prāēfŭĭt ēxĕrcĭtŭī.

¶ (15) Some Verbs take a Dative, and not an Accusative of the Object, as,

Făvĕō, *I favour.*
Ĭgnōscō, *I pardon.*
Nŏcĕō, *I hurt.*
Ōbstō, *I resist.*
Ŏccūrrō, *I meet.*
Pārcō, *I spare.*

Pārĕō, *I obey.*
Plăcĕō, *I please.*
Sĕrvĭō, *I serve.*
Sūbvĕnĭō, } *I help.*
Sūccūrrō, }

Digitized by Google

NOTE.—Some Verbs follow either Rule 13 or Rule 15. For instance—

Crēdō,	Īnvĭdĕō,
Īmpĕrō,	Pērsūādĕō,
Īndūlgĕō,	Sūādĕō.

¶ (16) Such Verbs in the Passive Voice can only be used Impersonally, as,

You are spared,
Tĭbĭ pārcĭtŭr.

¶ (17) Many Adjectives may be followed by the Dative, as,

Courage is contrary to fear,
Vīrtūs ēst cōntrārĭă tĭmōrī.
Rome is near to Tibur,
Rōmă ēst vīcīnă Tĭbŭrī.
The wind is useful for the sailor,
Vēntŭs ēst ūtĭlĭs nāutāē.
Songs are pleasing to the ears,
Cārmĭnă sūnt jūcūndă āurĭbŭs.

Adjectives followed by the Dative are those which express—

friendship *or* enmity.	ruling *or* serving.
help *or* harm.	likeness *or* difference.
pleasing *or* displeasing.	nearness *or* distance.

VII. ACCUSATIVE CASE.

¶ The Accusative Case is chiefly used as the Object after a Transitive Verb (Rule 6).

It has also some special uses, given below (Rules 18–23).

Digitized by Google

It may also be used as the Subject of a Verb in the Infinitive Mood (Rule 40).

(18) Some Intransitive Verbs can take after them an Accusative of kindred meaning, as,

To fight a battle,
Pūgnārĕ pūgnam.
To go a journey,
Īrĕ vĭam.
To play a game,
Lūdĕrĕ lūdum.

¶ (19) Verbs of asking, as "rŏgō," "ōrō," "pōscō," and the Verbs "dŏcĕō" (I teach), "cēlō" (I conceal), take two Accusatives, as,

We pray you for help,
Ōrāmŭs tē ŏpem.
He teaches the boy letters,
Dŏcĕt pŭĕrum lĭttĕrās.
He conceals his design from his parents,
Cēlăt cōnsĭlĭum părēntēs.

NOTE.—These are sometimes called the Accusatives of the "Nearer" and "Remoter" Object, or of the "Person" and the "Thing," as—

Cătōnem sēntēntĭam rŏgāmŭs.

We ask Cato ("Nearer Object" or "Person") *his opinion* ("Remoter Object" or "Thing").

Such Verbs can keep the Accusative of the "Remoter Object" or "Thing" in the Passive voice, as,

Cato was asked his opinion,
Cătō rŏgātŭs ēst sēntēntĭam.

¶ (20) Verbs of "making," "calling," "thinking," take two Accusatives, as,

They make Cæsar general,
Făcĭūnt Cæsărem dŭcem.

Digitized by Google

Romulus calls his city Rome,
Rōmŭlŭs vŏcăt sŭam ūrbem Rōmam.
Cicero showed himself a good citizen,
Cĭcĕrō prāestĭtĭt sē bŏnum cīvem.

NOTE.—Such Verbs in the Passive voice are "Link" Verbs under Rule 7, as—

Ūrbs vŏcātă ēst Rōmă,
The city was called Rome.

¶ (21) The Accusative or Ablative of the "part affected" is joined to Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives.

WE find in English such sentences as—

He trembles in his limbs.
Wounded in the thigh.

In Latin, the words "*in his limbs,*" "*in the thigh,*" can be put either in the Accusative or in the Ablative, as—

Trĕmĭt ărtūs *or* Trĕmĭt ārtŭbŭs.
Vūlnĕrātŭs fĕmŭr *or* Vūlnĕrātŭs fĕmŏrĕ.

This is called the Accusative or the Ablative of the "**part affected.**"

NOTE.—This Accusative is common in poetry, rare in prose.

¶ (22) Motion towards a person or a place is expressed by the Accusative with a Preposition, as,

They go to Gaul to Cæsar,
Ĕūnt ĭn Gāllĭam ăd Caēsărem.

But names of towns, and the words "dŏmum" (homewards), "rūs" (to the country), stand in the Accusative without a Preposition, as,

Digitized by Google

Cæsar returned to Rome,
Caēsăr rĕdĭīt Rōmam.
Go home, boys,
Ĭtĕ dŏmum, pŭĕrī.

¶ (23) Length of Time or Space is put in the Accusative, as,

Cæsar lived about fifty-six years,
Caēsăr vīxĭt quīnquāgīntā sēx fĕrē ānnōs.
A trench fifteen feet broad,
Fŏssă quīndĕcim pĕdēs lātă.

VIII. Ablative Case.

¶ (24) Substantives which qualify the Verb like Adverbs are put in the Ablative.

The Verb in an English sentence contains the statement which we make about the Subject, as—

Cæsar fought.

But nearly every sentence contains also words which qualify the verb like Adverbs, i.e. show us the time, the manner, &c., in which the action of the Verb takes place; in other words, we may ask in reference to any action—

"*when?*" "*why?*" "*where?*" "*how?*" "*with what means?*" "*under what circumstances?*"

it takes place.

The words which answer these questions are usually put in the Ablative. For instance—

Cæsar fought by night, (When?)
Caēsăr pūgnāvĭt nōctĕ.
Cæsar fought with great valour, (In what manner?)
Caēsăr pūgnāvĭt sūmmā vīrtūtĕ.
Cæsar fought with a sword, (With what means?)
Caēsăr pūgnāvĭt glădĭō.

Digitized by Google

These Ablatives may be called by the following names—

Ablative of **Time**,	answering the question		*When?*
Ablative of **Cause**,	"	"	*Why?*
Ablative of **Place where**,	"	"	*Where?*
Ablative of **Manner**,	"	"	*How?*
Ablative of **Means**,	"	"	*With what means?*
Ablative of **Attendant Circumstances**,	"	"	*Under what circumstances?*

NOTE.—On the same principle, words which answer the questions—

At what price?
By how much?

are put in the Ablative. They are called—

The Ablative of **Price**,
The Ablative of **Measure**,

as—

I bought a book for a penny,
Lĭbrum āssĕ ēmī.

The sun is much bigger than the earth,
Sōl mūltō mājŏr ēst quam tĕrrā.

The "Place whence one goes" and the "Origin whence one is sprung" are also put in the Ablative. They may be called—

The Ablative of **Place whence**,
The Ablative of **Origin**,

as—

He set out from Rome,
Rōmā prŏfēctŭs ēst.

He was the son of a Greek mother,
Grāecā mātrĕ nātŭs ēst.

¶ (25) Quality is expressed by the Ablative (or Genitive) with Epithet, as,

Caesăr vĭr fŭĭt mīrā fŏrtĭtūdĭnĕ,
Cæsar was a man of wondrous courage.

(See Rule 9.)

¶ (26) Several common words take the Ablative, as,

Digitized by Google

Verbs—

Frŭŏr, *I enjoy.*
Fūngŏr, *I perform.*
Pŏtĭŏr, *I get.*
Ūtŏr, *I use.*
Vēscŏr, *I eat.*

Adjectives—

Dīgnŭs, *worthy.*
Indīgnŭs, *unworthy.*
Frētŭs, *relying on.*

Substantives—

Ŏpŭs, *need.*
Ūsŭs, *use.*

¶ (27) Adjectives and Verbs which signify "abounding" or "wanting," "rich" or "poor," "full" or "empty," take an Ablative (sometimes also a Genitive), as,

Dīvĕs ăgrīs,
Rich in land.
Cărĕt lābĕ,
He is without stain.

¶ (28) A Substantive or a Pronoun combines with a Participle, or an Adjective, or another Substantive, to form the Ablative Absolute, as,

Dŭcĕ cāēsō mīlĭtēs fŭgĭūnt,
The general being slain the soldiers flee.

In the English sentence—

The general being slain the soldiers flee,

we say that the words "*the general being slain*" are in the Nominative Case used "absolutely," or the "Nominative Absolute." ("Absolute" means "released," because the words so used are not governed by any other words in the sentence.)

The same construction exists in Latin, but with the Ablative instead of the Nominative.

(See also page 124.)

¶ (29) Agent and Instrument are put in the Ablative: Agent with a Preposition, Instrument without.

Digitized by Google

If we take the sentences—

He was slain by an enemy,
He was slain by a sword,

they will run in Latin—

Caēsŭs ēst ăb hōstĕ,
Caēsŭs ēst ēnsĕ.

The first sentence tells us by what "**person**" *he was slain.* This is expressed in Latin by the Ablative with the Preposition "ā" or "ăb." It is called the Ablative of the "**Agent.**"

The second sentence tells us by what "**thing**" *he was slain.* This is expressed in Latin by the Ablative without a Preposition. It is called the Ablative of the "**Instrument.**"

¶ (30) When two things or persons are compared, the Conjunction "than" is either—

(1) rendered by "quam" with the same Case after it as before it,

or—

(2) it is omitted, and the latter of the two things or persons is put in the Ablative.

Take the sentence—

Exile is worse than death.

This may be rendered in Latin either—

Ēxsĭlĭum ēst pējŭs quam mōrs,
or Ēxsĭlĭum ēst pējŭs mōrtĕ.

If we also take the sentence—

I deem exile worse than death,

it may be rendered—

Crēdō ēxsĭlĭum pējŭs quam mōrtem,
or Crēdō ēxsĭlĭum pējŭs mōrtĕ.

See also "**Than,**" pp. 288, 289.

IX. Verbs.

¶ (31) Impersonal Verbs are used in the Third Singular only, without a Personal Subject, as,

Lĭbĕt, *It pleases.*	Ŏpōrtĕt, *It behoves.*	Pŭdĕt, *It shames.*
Lĭcĕt, *It is lawful.*	Pĭgĕt, *It troubles.*	Rēfĕrt, *It concerns.*
Mĭsĕrĕt, *It pities.*	Pāenĭtĕt, *It repents.*	Tāedĕt, *It wearies.*

Digitized by Google

Instances of the construction of these Verbs have been given under Rule 10, as—

Pāenĭtĕt mē mĕī scĕlĕrĭs,
I repent of my sin, &c.

But they are also found with a Subject expressed, as—

1. A Demonstrative or Relative Pronoun, Neuter Gender, as Subject, as—

Quŏd tĭbĭ lĭbĕt, ĭdem mĭhĭ lĭbĕt,
What pleases you likewise pleases me,
lit. *That which pleases you, the same pleases me.*

2. A Verb in the Infinitive Mood as Subject, as—

Pūgnārĕ lĭcĕt nōbīs,
We may fight,
lit. *To fight is allowed to us.*

3. A Clause as Subject (see Rule 40, last part), as—

Cāesărem fŭĭssĕ māgnum dŭcem cōnstăt,
That Cæsar was a great general is well known.

Other instances of Impersonal Verbs are—

Fūlgŭrăt, *It lightens.*	Plŭĭt, *It rains.*
Nĭngĭt, *It snows.*	Tŏnăt, *It thunders.*

These are generally used without any Subject expressed.

NOTE.—Some Verbs can be used both personally and impersonally, e.g. "jŭvō," "āccĭdō," "ēvĕnĭō," &c.

¶ (32) Intransitive Verbs are Impersonal in the Passive Voice, as,

Pūgnātŭr ăcrĭtĕr ā nōstrīs,
Our men fight bravely,
lit. *It is fought bravely by our men.*

Pārcĭtŭr hōstī,
The enemy is spared,
lit. *It is spared to the enemy.*

(As in Rule 16.)

Digitized by Google

¶ (33) Many Verbs require another Verb following them in the Infinitive Mood, to complete the sense, as,

Pŏssum	— cūrrĕrĕ,
I am able	— *to run.*
Sŏlĕō	— pūgnārĕ,
I am wont	— *to fight.*
Dēbĕō	— īrĕ,
I ought	— *to go.*

The following are the most common :—

āūdĕō,	*I dare.*	nēscĭŏ,	*I know not how.*
cōēpī,	*I begin.*	nōlŏ,	*I am unwilling.*
cōnŏr,	*I try.*	pārō,	*I prepare.*
cōnstĭtūō,	*I determine.*	pērgō,	*I proceed* or *continue.*
cūpĭō,	*I desire.*	pŏssum,	*I am able.*
dēbĕō,	*I ought.*	quĕō,	*I am able.*
dēcērnō,	*I determine.*	scĭŏ,	*I know how.*
dēsĭnō,	*I cease.*	sŏlĕō,	*I am wont.*
dĭscō,	*I learn.*	stātūō,	*I determine.*
īncĭpĭō,	*I begin.*	vĕrĕŏr,	*I fear.*
īnstĭtūō,	*I resolve.*	vŏlŏ,	*I wish.*
mālŏ,	*I prefer.*	nōn dŭbĭtō,	*I do not hesitate.*
nĕquĕō,	*I cannot.*		

The following are chiefly poetical :—

ămō,	*I am wont.*	ŏmittō,	*I forbear.*
fŭgĭō,	*I avoid.*	pārcō,	*I forbear.*
gāūdĕō,	*I delight.*	tĭmĕō,	*I fear.*
mĕtūō,	*I fear.*		

¶ (34) The Infinitive Mood is used, not only as a Verb, but also as a Neuter Substantive with Cases supplied by the Gerunds and Supines, thus,

Nominative—	ămārĕ, *loving.*
Genitive—	ămāndī, *of loving.*
Dative—	ămāndō, *to loving.*
Accusative—	ămārĕ, *loving.*
	ămāndum, *loving* (after a Preposition).
	ămātum, *to love* (after a Verb of Motion).
Ablative—	ămāndō, *by loving.*
	ămātū, *to be loved* (after Adjectives).

Digitized by Google

as,

Pūgnārĕ dēlēctăt mīlĭtem,
Fighting delights the soldier.
Mīlĕs ēst cŭpĭdŭs pūgnāndī,
The soldier is desirous of fighting.
Vĕnĭūnt spēctātum,
They come to see.

¶ (35) The Gerunds, Supine, and Present and Future Participles, take the same Cases as the Verb from which they come, as,

Vĕnĭūnt spēctātum pōmpam,
They come to see the procession.
Cŭpĭdŭs ēst fāvēndī ămīcō,
He is desirous of favouring his friend.
Ĭbăt fĕrēns ēnsem,
He walked bearing a sword.

¶ (36) The Past Participle, except in Deponent Verbs, is Passive, as,

Ămātŭs, *having been loved,*
but Sĕcūtŭs, *having followed.*

NOTE.—It follows that Past Participles of Deponent Verbs take the same Case as the Verb from which they come, as—

Sĕcūtŭs hōstem,
Having followed the enemy.

¶ (37) The Gerundive is used to express that which "must be" or "ought to be," as,

The thing must be done,
Rēs ēst făcĭēndă.

The Agent following it is usually in the Dative, as,

The thing must be done by me,
Rēs ēst făcĭēndă mĭhĭ.

Digitized by Google

NOTE.—When the Verb is Impersonal in the Passive Voice (Rule 16, 32), the Gerundive is also Impersonal, as—

Ĕūndum ēst nōbīs,
We must go.

See also "**Be,**" (2) p. 234.

X. COMPOUND SENTENCE.

¶ **(38) Conjunctions join words or clauses, as,**

Cæsar and Bibulus were consuls,
Cāēsăr ĕt Bĭbŭlŭs ĕrānt cōnsŭlēs.

Here "ĕt" joins "Cāēsăr" and "Bĭbŭlŭs."

This pleases neither me nor you,
Hōc plăcĕt nĕc mĭhĭ nĕc tĭbĭ.

"Nĕc" joins "mĭhĭ" and "tĭbĭ."

We and our possessions shall perish,
Nōs nōstrăquĕ pĕrĭbĭmŭs.

Here "quĕ" joins "Nōs" and "nōstră."

¶ **(39) FOURTH CONCORD.—The Relative agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its Case is settled by its own Clause.**

THE Relative Pronoun in English is thus declined—

	Mas. Fem.	Neut.
Nominative—	*who,*	*which.*
Genitive—	*of whom* or *whose,*	*of which.*
Accusative—	*whom,*	*which.*

There is no difficulty in distinguishing Nominative "*who,*" Genitive "*whose,*" Accusative "*whom,*" by their endings.

If we take the sentence—

The flower, which sun and showers nourish, grows,

we find that it is made up of two parts—

(1) *The flower grows,*
(2) *which sun and showers nourish.*

Digitized by Google

In the first part "*The flower*" is the Subject, "*grows*" is the Predicate; and in Latin we should write "Flōs crēscĭt."

But in the second part of the sentence, "*which sun and showers nourish*," the Subject of the Verb "*nourish*" is "*sun and showers*." But the Verb "*to nourish*" is a Transitive Verb; that is, it requires an Object after it in the Accusative to complete the sense.

That Object can only be the word "*which*."

Thus, the whole sentence in Latin will run—

Flōs, quem sōl ĕt īmbrēs nūtrĭūnt, crēscĭt.

"Flōs" is nom. sing. mas.

"Quem" is acc. sing. mas.

"Quem," as you have learnt, is called the Relative.

"Flōs" is called the **Antecedent.**

"Quem" is Singular and Masculine, because it agrees with "Flōs" (Rule 2).

"Quem" is Accusative, because it is the Object of the Transitive Verb "nūtrĭūnt" (Rule 6).

Look at a few more instances of this rule—

Here comes the dog, whom I love,
Hūc vĕnĭt cănĭs, quem ămō.

The dog, whose master runs, barks,
Cănĭs, cūjŭs dŏmĭnŭs cūrrĭt, lătrăt.

I love the master, who loves his dog,
Ĕgŏ ămō dŏmĭnum, quī ămăt sŭum cănem.

O master, love your dog, to whom you are dear,
Ō dŏmĭnĕ, ămā cănem, cuī ĕs cārŭs.

I love my mother, by whom I am loved,
Ĕgŏ ămō mĕam mātrem, ā quā ămŏr.

The boy who loves his mother is wise,
Pŭĕr, quī ămăt mātrem, ēst săpĭēns.

Account for the Case of the Relative in the above examples.

¶ (40) The Subject of a Verb in the Infinitive Mood is in the Accusative.

If we examine the sentence—

I see that the boy grows,

Digitized by Google

we divide it thus—

"*I*," Subject;
"*See that the boy grows*," Predicate.

If we further divide the Predicate, we find that it is made up of—

(1) "*See*," a Transitive Verb which requires an Object after it.
(2) "*That the boy grows*." This Clause must be the Object of the Verb "*see*."

In English, "*grows*" is a Finite Verb, and "*boy*" is the Subject. But the Latin is—

Vĭdĕō pŭĕrum crēscĕrĕ.

"Crēscĕrĕ" is in the Infinitive, and "pŭĕrum" is in the Accusative.

This is called the Construction of the **Accusative and Infinitive.**

A clause so constructed can be—

(1) The Object after a Transitive Verb;
(2) The Subject of a Verb.

(1) As Object it follows Verbs of *asserting* and *denying*, and Verbs connected with the senses: such as, *to see*, *to hear*, *to feel*, *to say*, *to think*, *to learn*, *to believe*, *to hope*, &c. In English it is usually joined to the Verb by the word "*that*," which is not translated in Latin. Look at a few more instances—

They saw that the enemy was at hand,
Vīdērūnt hōstem ădēssĕ.
We hear that you are well,
Aūdīmŭs tē vălērĕ.
He said that Pompey had fled,
Dīxĭt Pōmpēīum fūgīssĕ.
Do you think that you are becoming learned?
Pŭtāsnĕ tē fĭĕrī dōctum?
I hope that the Gauls will conquer,
Spērō Gāllōs vīctūrōs ēssĕ.
I hope that the Gauls will be conquered,
Spērō Gāllōs vīctum īrī.

NOTE.—In all these instances the word "*that*" may be left out in the English, without altering the sense, or the way in which they are to be translated into Latin.

Digitized by Google

(2) As Subject, the Accusative and Infinitive is generally used with Link Verbs, or Verbs elsewhere Impersonal, as—

That boys should become learned is profitable to the State,
Pŭĕrōs fĭĕrī dŏctōs ēst ūtĭlĕ cīvĭtātī.
That Cæsar was a great general is well known,
Cāēsărem fŭĭssĕ māgnum dŭcem cōnstăt.

NOTE.—Observe here the formation and use of the Future Infinitive, Active and Passive.

The Future Infinitive Active of a Verb is made up of the Future Participle of the Verb and the Infinitive of "Sum," as—

Vĭctūrŭs ēssĕ.

But the Future Participle is declinable in all genders and numbers like "bŏnŭs," and must therefore (by Rules 2 and 7) agree with the Subject of the Verb.

Thus, in the sentence above, we write—

Spērō Gāllōs vĭctūrōs (not vĭctūrŭs) ēssĕ.

Again—

I hope the girl will come.
Spērō pŭĕllam vēntūram ēssĕ.

The Future Infinitive Passive of a Verb is made up of the Active Supine of the Verb, and the Present Infinitive Passive of "Ĕō," to go, as—

Vĭctum īrī.

In the Sentence above—

Spērō Gāllōs vĭctum īrī,

the literal meaning is—

I hope that there is a going to conquer the Gauls (see Rule 35).

"Gāllōs" is the Object of "Vĭctum," not the Subject of "īrī."

Consequently the Future Infinitive Passive never changes its form. Thus,

I believe that the city will be taken,
Crēdō ūrbem cāptum īrī.
He said that the temples would be burnt,
Dīxĭt tēmplă īncēnsum īrī.

Digitized by Google

XI. Dependent Clauses.

¶ (41) The Finite Verb in a Dependent Clause introducing Question, Purpose, or Consequence, is in the Subjunctive Mood.

If we take such sentences as—

Cæsar came to Rome, and Pompey fled;
Hasdrubal reached Italy, but could not help his brother;
Syracuse was burnt, nor could Marcellus save Archimedes;

we see that they only contain simple statements joined to each other by conjunctions "*and*," "*but*," "*nor*."

Such sentences we can turn into Latin by rules already learnt, since they only consist of Subject and Predicate, and the Verbs are in the Indicative Mood.

But if we take such sentences as—

I ask what you are doing;
He came that he might see me;
Cæsar was so brave that he laughed at the pirates;

we can see that they differ from the former sentences because the two parts in each sentence are more closely connected, and the latter part is incomplete without the former. Of the two Clauses which make up each of these sentences, the latter is said to "depend" upon the former, and such sentences are said to contain a **Dependent Clause.**

In Latin the Verb in a Dependent Clause is either—

1. In the Infinitive Mood,
2. In the Indicative Mood,
3. In the Subjunctive Mood.

1. When the Verb in a Dependent Clause is in the Infinitive Mood, it falls under Rule 40.

2, 3. When the Verb in a Dependent Clause is in the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood, the Dependent Clause is joined to the Principal Clause by a Conjunction, or an Interrogative or Relative Pronoun or Adverb.

No fixed rule can be given for the use of either Mood in Dependent Clauses by Latin authors, but on page 152 you will find a list of common Conjunctions with examples of their use.

However, of the three sentences given above, the first—

I ask what you are doing,

is an instance of a *Dependent Question.*

Digitized by Google

The second—

He came that he might see me,

is an instance of a *Dependent Purpose.*

The third—

Cæsar was so brave that he laughed at the pirates,

is an instance of a *Dependent Consequence.*

A very large number of Dependent Clauses fall under one of these three heads, and in all such Clauses the Verb is in the **Subjunctive Mood.**

¶ (42) The Tense of the Finite Verb in a Dependent Clause is settled by the Tense of the Principal Verb in the Clause on which it depends.

THIS rule, called the rule of the "Sequence of Tenses," is naturally suggested by the arrangement of the Tenses of the Verb in the Accidence.

Tenses are there divided into two classes: Primary and Historic.

	Primary.	Historic.
Indicative—	Present,	Imperfect,
	Future,	Pluperfect,
	Perfect,	Aorist.
	Future Perfect.	
Subjunctive—	Present,	Imperfect,
	Perfect,	Pluperfect,
	Primary Future.	Historic Future.

The Imperative ranks as a Primary Tense.

¶ (43) Primary Tenses of the Indicative are followed by Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive; Historic Tenses of the Indicative are followed by Historic Tenses of the Subjunctive, as,

I ask what you are doing,
Rŏgō quĭd făcĭās.
He came that he might see me,
Vēnĭt ŭt vĭdērĕt mē.
Cæsar was so brave that he laughed at the pirates,
Cāēsăr ĕrăt tam fōrtĭs ŭt īrrĭdērĕt prāēdōnĭbŭs.

Digitized by Google

Usage of the Ablative Absolute.

The Ablative Absolute cannot be the Subject of its sentence, or refer to the Subject of its sentence.

If we take the sentence—

Cæsar, having seen the enemy, advanced,

and parse the words which it contains, we say that "*having seen*" is the Past Participle Active of the Verb "*to see,*" and agrees with the word "*Cæsar;*" and "*the enemy*" is the Accusative Case, governed by the Participle "*having seen.*" But if we try to turn it into Latin, we are met by the difficulty that there is no Past Participle Active in the Latin Verb, except in the case of Deponent Verbs (Rule 36). "Vĭsŭs" means "*having been seen*" or "*being seen,*" and is Passive. So we must alter the sentence in such a way that we can use a Passive Participle instead of the Active. Thus, instead of—

Cæsar, having seen the enemy, advanced,

we put—

Cæsar, the enemy having been seen, advanced;

and using the Construction of the Ablative Absolute (Rule 28), we translate it—

Caēsăr hōstĕ vĭsō prōgrĕssŭs ĕst.

This Construction is very frequently used in Latin, not only instead of the English Past Participle Active, but as a way of indicating time, cause, or other circumstances which qualify a sentence, as:—

English—	*As Cæsar was dead, Antonius became leader.*
Latin—	*Cæsar being dead, Antonius became leader,* Caēsărĕ mōrtŭō Āntōnĭŭs fāctŭs ĕst dŭx.
English—	*I will perform my duty with the help of God.*
Latin—	*I will perform my duty, God helping,* Pĕrfĭcĭam mūnŭs Dĕō jŭvāntĕ.
English—	*As the moon was full, the way was easy.*
Latin—	*The moon (being) full, the way was easy,* Lūnā plēnā vĭă fŭīt făcĭlĭs.

Digitized by Google

Notice that in all these instances the Ablative Absolute is not the Subject of its sentence, and does not refer to the Subject of its sentence.

Again take the example—

Cæsar, being made Dictator, changed the laws.

In this sentence "*Cæsar*" is the Subject; the words "*being made Dictator*" refer to Cæsar,—therefore they cannot be in the Ablative Case. By Rules 2 and 3, they agree with "*Cæsar*," and are, therefore, Nominative. Thus—

Cāēsăr fāctŭs Dĭctātŏr mūtāvĭt lēgēs.

But in the sentence—

Cæsar being made Dictator, Cicero left Italy,

the Subject is "*Cicero*," and the words "*Cæsar being made Dictator*" are in the Ablative Absolute. Thus—

Cāēsărĕ fāctō Dĭctātōrĕ, Cĭcĕrō Ĭtălĭā ēxcēssĭt.

Thus too, as a general rule, the Ablative Absolute does not refer to the Object of its sentence, as—

Hector, having seized his spear, threw it,
Hēctŏr hāstam ārrēptam ĭntōrsĭt.
not hāstā ārrēptā ĕam ĭntōrsĭt.

But in the sentence—

Hector, having seized his spear, attacked the Greeks,

the Object is "*Greeks*," and the words "*having seized his spear*" are in the Ablative Absolute, as—

Hēctŏr hāstā ārrēptā Graēcōs ĭnvāsĭt.

Digitized by Google

Oratio Obliqua.

In "Oratio Recta," or "Speech as Spoken," the Subject is in the Nominative, the Principal Verb usually in the Indicative, and other Verbs in the Indicative or Subjunctive, as—

I will return home when I have conquered the Gauls,
Ĕgŏ, quum Gāllōs vĭcĕrō, dŏmum rĕdĭbō.

In "Oratio Obliqua," or "Speech as Reported," the Subject is in the Accusative, and the Principal Verb in the Infinitive, all other Verbs in the Subjunctive. The Tense of the Subjunctive is determined by the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses (Rule 43). The Tense of the Infinitive is the same, as the Tense of the Indicative would be if the speech were in Oratio Recta. Thus—

Cæsar says that when he has conquered the Gauls, he will return home,
Ăĭt Cāēsăr sē quum Gāllōs vĭcĕrĭt dŏmum rĕdĭtūrum ēssĕ.
Cæsar said that when he had conquered the Gauls, he would return home,
Aĭēbăt Cāēsăr sē quum Gāllōs vĭcĭssĕt dŏmum rĕdĭtūrum ēssĕ.

Note.—As a general rule, Oratio Obliqua is introduced by a Historic Tense, like "āĭēbăt," and, therefore, the Tenses of the Subjunctive will be Historic.

It is plain that Pronouns and Verbs in Oratio Obliqua must be in the Third Person, not First or Second—"Ĕgŏ" becomes "sē," "tē" becomes "ĕum," &c. For instance—

I envy you, because you are learned,
Ĕgŏ ĭnvĭdĕō tĭbĭ quŏd dŏctŭs ĕs.
Cæsar said that he envied him, because he was learned,
Cāēsăr dĭxĭt sē ĕī ĭnvĭdērĕ, quŏd dŏctŭs ēssĕt.

Digitized by Google

Conditional Sentences.

The Mood and Tense of the Verb in the Apodosis settle the Mood and Tense of the Verb in the Protasis.

The following are examples of some Conditional Sentences.

Oratio Recta—

	Protasis or Condition.	Apodosis or Result.	
(*a*)	*If I sin,* Sī pĕccō	*I grieve,* dŏlĕō.	Present time.
(*b*)	*If I were to sin,* Si pĕccem	*I should grieve,* dŏlĕam.	Present or Future time.
(*c*)	*If I sin,* Sī pĕccābō Sī pĕccāvĕrō	*I shall grieve,* dŏlēbō.	Future time.
(*d*)	*If I sinned,* Sī pĕccārēm	*I should grieve,* dŏlērēm.	Past or Present time.
(*e*)	*If I had sinned,* Sī pĕccāvĭssēm	*I should have grieved,* dŏlŭĭssēm.	Past time.

Oratio Obliqua—

(*a*) (*b*)	*He said that if he sinned,* Dīxĭt sē sī pĕccārĕt	*he grieved,* dŏlērĕ.
(*b*) (*c*)	*He said that if he sinned,* Dīxĭt sē sī pĕccārĕt	*he would grieve,* dŏlĭtūrum ēssĕ.
(*d*) (*e*)	*He said that if he had sinned,* Dīxĭt sē sī pĕccāvĭssĕt *or* pĕccārĕt	*he would have grieved,* dŏlĭtūrum fŭĭssĕ.

Note.—If a Conditional Sentence in Oratio Obliqua is introduced by a Primary Tense,—as "*he says*,"—the Tense of the Protasis will be Primary.

Note.—You can often substitute an Ablative Absolute for the Conditional Clause in the Protasis, as—

Cæsar said that if he conquered the Gauls, he would return home,

Āiēbăt Cāēsăr sē, sī Gāllōs vĭcĭssĕt, dŏmum rĕdĭtūrum ēssĕ,

or Āiēbăt Cāēsăr sē, Gāllīs vĭctīs, dŏmum rĕdĭtūrum ēssĕ.

Digitized by Google

SYNTAX RULES,
WITH EXAMPLES FOR REPETITION.

(*For the English of the Examples see pp.* 307—318.)

I. Rules of Agreement.

(1) First Concord.—The Verb agrees with the Subject in Number and Person, as,

Mātĕr pŭĕrum ămăt,
The mother loves the boy.

---

1. Ĕgŏ cāntō. Tū cūrrĭs. Īllĕ vĕnĭt. Nōs pūgnāmŭs. Vōs ădēstĭs. Dĭffŭgĭūnt hōstēs.
2. Ī, pŭĕr.
3. Bōs ărĕt.
4. Pāŭpĕr ŭbīquĕ jăcĕt.
5. Xānthĕ, rĕtrō prŏpĕrā.
6. Pārthĕ, quĭd ēxūltās?
7. Tēmpŏrā lābūntŭr.
8. Ĕccĕ! tăcēnt ōmnēs.
9. Vēr ĕrăt: ērrābam: Zĕphyrŭs cōnspēxĭt: ăbībam: Īnsĕquĭtŭr: fŭgĭō.

(2) Second Concord.—Adjectives and Participles agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number, and Case, as,

Bŏnă mātĕr pŭĕrum pārvum ămăt,
The good mother loves the little boy

---

1. Prōspĕrā lūx ŏrĭtŭr.
2. Sālvē, lāētă dĭēs.
3. Jŭvăt īpsĕ lăbŏr.

Digitized by Google

4. Pŭĕr īnfēlīx vāgĭt.
5. Ārgŏlĭcī rĕdĭērĕ dŭcēs.
6. Nŏvă pūrpŭră fūlgĕt.
7. Nāscĕrĕ, māgnĕ pŭĕr.
8. Vĭgĭlēs cōntĭcŭērĕ cănēs.
9. Vīctă tămĕn vīncēs, ēvērsăquĕ Trōjă, rĕsūrgēs.

(3) Third Concord.—Substantives in Apposition agree in Case, as,

Mātĕr pŭĕrum, sŭās dēlĭcĭās, ămăt,
The mother loves the boy, her darling.

---

1. Effŏdĭūntŭr ŏpēs, īrrĭtāmēntă mălōrum.
2. Grāēcĭă, făcūndum, sĕd mălĕ fōrtĕ, gĕnŭs.
3. Flēnt părĭtĕr, mōllēs ănĭmī, vīrgōquĕ sĕnēxquĕ.
4. Hērmēs ōmnĭă sōlŭs ĕt tĕr ūnŭs.
5. Nȳmphārum pătĕr, āmnĭūmquĕ, Rhēnĕ.
6. Effŭgĭmŭs scŏpŭlōs Ĭthăcāē, Lāĕrtĭă rēgnă.
7. Fēcĭmŭs ĕt nōs Hāēc jŭvĕnēs.
8. Sīgnă, dĕcŭs bēllī, Pārthŭs Rōmānă tĕnēbăt.
9. Tĕrră fĕrōs pārtūs, īmmānĭă mōnstră, gĭgāntĭs Ēdĭdĭt.
10. Nātĕ, mĕāē vīrēs, mĕă māgnă pŏtēntĭă sōlŭs.

II. Subject.

(4) The Subject of a Finite Verb is usually a Substantive or Pronoun in the Nominative, as,

Cănĭs cūrrĭt,	Īllĕ dīxĭt,
The dog runs.	*He said.*

---

1. Āltārĭă fūmānt.
2. Īngĕmŭĭt Chīrōn.

Digitized by Google

3. Vīvĕ hŏdīē.
4. Sīc pūgnānt tāūrī, sīc cĕcĭdĕrĕ vĭrī.
5. Hāc ībăt Sĭmŏīs.
6. Hāēc tē vĭctŏrĭă pĕrdĕt.
7. Ēnŭmĕrăt mīlĕs vŭlnĕrā, pāstŏr ŏvēs.
8. Ēxăgĭtānt ĕt Lār, ĕt tūrbă Dĭānĭă fūrēs.
9. Mātĕr Hŷăn ĕt Hŷăn māēstāē flēvērĕ sŏrōrēs.
10. Ĕt cănĭs ĕt vărĭāē cōntĭcŭīstĭs ăvēs.

(5) The Subject of a Verb may be a Verb in the Infinitive Mood, as,

Pūgnārĕ mĭlĭtem dēlēctăt,
To fight delights the soldier.

---

1. Nōn ēst āūxĭlĭum flērĕ.
2. Nōn ēst vīvĕrĕ sĕd vălērĕ vītă.
3. Sĭt mĭhĭ pōssĕ mŏrī.
4. Īnsānīrĕ jŭvăt.
5. Prīncĭpĭs ēst vīrtūs māxĭmă nōssĕ sŭōs.
6. Vēnĕrăt ĭn mōrem pŏpŭlĭ dēpāscĕrĕ sāltūs.
7. Cōnvēctārĕ jŭvăt prāēdās.
8. Nōn ēst pāūpĕrtās, Nēstŏr, hăbērĕ nĭhĭl.
9. Īngĕnŭās dĭdĭcĭssĕ fĭdēlĭtĕr ārtēs
Ēmōllĭt mŏrēs.
10. Rĕvŏcārĕ grādum sŭpĕrāsquĕ ēvādĕrĕ ăd āūrās
Hōc ŏpŭs, hĭc lăbŏr ēst.

III. Object.

(6) The Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative, as,

Mātĕr pŭĕrum ămăt,
The mother loves the boy.

Digitized by Google

1. Quās hăbĭtās tērrās?
2. Nōn ōmnēs ārbūstă jŭvānt.
3. Ārmă vĭrūmquĕ cănō.
4. Frāngĕ tŏrōs, pĕtĕ vīnă, rŏsās căpĕ.
5. Ĭlĭăcōs ēxcĭpĕ, Vēstă, dĕōs.
6. Rōdĕ, căpĕr, vĭtem.
7. Quĭd bōs, quĭd plăcĭdāē cōmmĕrŭīstĭs ŏvēs?
8. Sīstĕ, pŭĕr, lăcrĭmās.
9. Pāgŭs ăgăt fēstum: pāgum lūstrātĕ cŏlōnī.
10. Prīncĭpĭum căpĭūnt Phŏēbŭs ĕt ānnŭs ĭdem.

IV. Link Verbs.

(7) Link Verbs have the Complement in the same Case as the Subject, as,

Caēsăr Dĭctātŏr fāctŭs ēst,
Cæsar became Dictator.

---

1. Sum pĭŭs Aenēās.
2. Vīs fĭĕrī lĭbĕr?
3. Sērā nĭmĭs vĭtă ēst crāstĭnă.
4. Hāēc mălă sūnt, sĕd tū nōn mĕllĭŏrā fācĭs.
5. Sum (fātĕŏr), sēmpērquĕ fŭī, Căllīstrătĕ, pāūpĕr.
6. Fāllŏr? ăn hī fĭēnt īngēntĭă mŏēnĭă cōllĕs?
7. Nōbīs nōn lĭcĕt ēssĕ tam dĭsērtĭs.
8. Ămāntĭum īrāē ămōrĭs īntĕgrātĭo ēst.
9. Ĭgnĭs, ăquāē, tĕllūs, ūnŭs ăcērvŭs ĕrānt.
10. Crēdŭlĭtās dāmnō sŏlĕt ēssĕ pŭĕllīs.
11. Hōc, vĕlŭtī vīrtūtĕ pārātum,
Spērāvĭt māgnāē lāūdī fŏrĕ.

V. Genitive Case.

(8) A Substantive governed by another Substantive is in the Genitive.

Some Adjectives and Adverbs govern a Genitive as—

Digitized by Google

Lŭcrī ămŏr,	Bēllī cŭpĭdŭs,
Love of gain.	*Eager for war.*

---

1. Crēscĭt ămŏr nūmmī.
2. Mūrōs ōptātāē mōlĭŏr ūrbĭs.
3. Vērĭs prāēnūntĭă vēnĭt hĭrūndō.
4. Mīlĭă crābrōnum cŏēūnt.
5. Brūtŭs ĕrăt stūltī săpĭēns ĭmĭtātŏr.
6. Quĭd tūtī sŭpĕrest.
7. Cōllă rŭdēs ŏpĕrum prāēbēnt fĕrĭēndă jŭvēncī.
8. Cōnscĭă mēns rēctī fāmāē mēndăclă rīdĕt.
9. Māgnă fŭĭt quōndam căpĭtĭs rĕvĕrēntĭă cănī.

(9) Quality is expressed by the Genitive (or Ablative) with Epithet, as,

Caēsăr vĭr fŭĭt mīraē fōrtĭtūdĭnĭs,	
Cæsar was a man of wondrous courage.	

---

1. Ăcūtāē cūspĭdĭs hāstă.
2. Mūltī Lȳdĭă nōmĭnĭs.
3. Cēntum pŭĕr ārtĭum.
4. Cōnstāntĭs jŭvĕnem fĭdē.
5. Cōnsĭlĭum mūltāē cāllĭdĭtātĭs ĭnĭt.
6. Ēnnĭŭs ārtĕ cărēns ănĭmōsĭquĕ Ăccĭŭs ōrĭs.
7. Īngĕnŭī vūltūs pŭĕr īngĕnŭĭque pŭdōrĭs.
8. Prōxĭmŭs ējūsdem prŏpĕrābăt Ăcōntĭŭs āevī.
9. Ĕmĭt lăcērnās mīlĭbŭs dĕcem Bāssŭs
   Tȳrĭās cŏlōrĭs ōptĭmī.
10. Plūrĭs ŏpēs nūnc sūnt.

(10) Some Impersonal Verbs take a Genitive besides the Accusative of the Object, as,

Mē mĕī scĕlĕrĭs paēnĭtĕt,	
I repent of my sin.	

Digitized by Google

1. Ăgămēmnŏnă pāēnĭtĕt īrāē.
2. Fāmam, Rōmă, tŭāē nōn pŭdĕt hīstŏrĭāē.
3. Tē lāpsōrum mĭsĕrĕt.
4. Pĭgĕt īncēptī lūcīsquĕ.
5. Nĕc tē mĭsĕrĕt nātīquĕ tŭīquĕ.
6. Pāēnĭtĕăt scĕlĕrĭs Dănăum sāēvāsquĕ sŏrōrēs.
7. Pāēnĭtĕt īnjūstī tum dēnĭquĕ Phīnĕă bĕllī.
8. Ĕt quōs
   Pērtāēsum māgnī īncēptī rērūmquĕ tŭārum ēst.
9. Nōn īnfĕlīcĭs pătrĭāē, vĕtĕrūmquĕ dĕōrum
   Ĕt māgnī Āenēāē, sēgnēs, mĭsĕrētquĕ pŭdētquĕ?

(11) Verbs of "accusing," "condemning," or "acquitting," take a Genitive besides the Accusative of the Object, as,

Cĭcĕrō Vērrem fūrtī āccūsāvĭt,
Cicero accused Verres of theft.

---

1. Pārcĕ tŭum vātem scĕlĕrĭs dāmnārĕ, Cŭpīdō
2. Īpsĕ rĕŭs sĭnĕ tē crīmĭnĭs hūjŭs ĕrō.
3. Mēquĕ tĭmōrĭs
   Ārgŭĕ.
4. Cōmmūnĭs cūlpāē cūr rĕŭs ūnŭs ăgŏr?

(12) Verbs of "forgetting" or "remembering," and the Verb "mĭsĕrĕŏr" (I pity), take a Genitive, as,

Pătrĭs tŭī mĕmēntō,
Remember thy father.

---

1. Cătŭlōrum ōblĭtă lĕāēnă.
2. Ŭt vălĕt? ŭt mĕmĭnĭt nōstrī?
3. Īpsĕ jŭbĕt mōrtĭs tē mĕmĭnĭssĕ dĕŭs.
4. Sĭnĕ mē fātī nōn mĕmĭnĭssĕ mĕī.
5. Vēntūrāē mĕmŏrēs jam nūnc ēstōtĕ sĕnēct

Digitized by Google

6. Āncīlĭōrum ĕt nōmĭnĭs ĕt tŏgāē
Ōblītŭs āetērnāēquĕ Vĕstāē.
7. Mĭsĕrērĕ mĕĭ, mĭsĕrērĕ mĕōrum.
8. Sī nōn ūnĭŭs, quāēsō, mĭsĕrērĕ dŭōrum.
9. Mĭsĕrērĕ lăbōrum
Tāntōrum, mĭsĕrērĕ ănĭmī nōn dīgnă fĕrēntĭs.
10. Audītă rĕcōrdŏr.

VI. Dative Case.

(13) Many Verbs, especially Compound Verbs, take a Dative, besides the Accusative of the Object, as,

Lĭbrum pŭĕrō dĕdĭt,
He gave the book to the boy.
Bĕllum Gāllīs ĭntŭlĭt,
He made war on the Gauls.

---

1. Ōtĭă dā nōbīs.
2. Hōc īllī prāētŭlĭt āuctŏr ŏpŭs.
3. Ōmnĕ sŏlum fŏrtī pătrĭă ĕst.
4. Mĭhĭ fĭlĭă rāptă ĕst.
5. Quĭs tē mĭhĭ cāsŭs ădĕmĭt.
6. Rĕddĕ pătrī nātum.
7. Ōmnĭă Mēdēāē fāllāx prōmīsĭt Ĭāsōn.
8. Quĭd ărēnāē sēmĭnă māndās?
9. Quĭd sĭbĭ pērsōnāē, quĭd stŏlă lōngă vŏlūnt?
10. Ēst mĭhĭ nāmquĕ dŏmī pătĕr, ĕst ĭnjūstă nŏvĕrcă.

(14) Compounds of "sum," except "pōssum," take a Dative, as,

Cōnsŭl ēxĕrcĭtŭī prāēfŭĭt,
The consul commanded the army.

---

1. Lăc mĭhĭ sēmpĕr ădēst nĭvĕum.
2. Fās ĕst cĭnĕrī mē sŭpĕrēssĕ mĕō.

Digitized by Google

3. Dēēst jam tērrā fŭgāē.
4. Nĕc dēxtrāē ērrāntī dĕŭs āfŭĭt.
5. Lāētŭs īntērsīs pŏpŭlō Quĭrīnī.
6. Mĭhĭ cūrā
   Nōn mĕdĭōcrĭs ĭnēst.
7. Nōn dēērĭt pŏpŭlō, tē vĕnĭēntē, dĭēs.
8. Quĭd spĕcĭēs, quĭd līnguā mĭhĭ, quĭd prōfŭĭt āētās?
9. "Ōmĭnā prĭncĭpĭīs," īnquĭt, "ĭnēssē sŏlēnt."
10. Īgnĭbŭs āētērnīs āētērnī nūmĭnā prāēsūnt
    Cāēsārĭs.

(15) Some Verbs take a Dative, and not an Accusative of the Object, as,

Fāvĕō, *I favour.*	Pārĕō, *I obey.*
Īgnōscō, *I pardon.*	Plăcĕō, *I please.*
Nŏcĕō, *I hurt.*	Sērvĭō, *I serve.*
Ōbstō, *I resist.*	Sūbvĕnĭō, } *I help.*
Ŏccūrrō, *I meet.*	Sūccūrrō, } *I help.*
Pārcō, *I spare.*	

---

1. Plăcĕt Īlĭā Mārtī.
2. Cāēsăr lēgī pārŭĭt īpsē sŭāē.
3. Pārcĕ pĭō gĕnĕrī.
4. Sūccūrrĕ rĕlĭctāē.
5. Īmpĕrāt āūt sērvĭt cōllēctā pĕcūnĭā cuiquĕ.
6. Dī nĕmŏrum, fāctīs īgnōscĭtĕ nōstrīs.
7. Pārĕt pūrpŭrēīs ăpĕr căpĭstrīs.
8. Ēst ălĭquĭd nūpsĭssē Jŏvī.
9. Ĕt chārtīs nĕc fātā nŏcēnt ĕt sāēcŭlā prōsūnt.
10. Cūlpā sŭī nŏcŭĭt, nŏcŭĭt quŏquē cūlpā căpēllāē.

(16) Such Verbs in the Passive Voice can only be used Impersonally, as,

Tĭbĭ pārcĭtŭr,
You are spared.

Digitized by Google

1. Mălĕ crēdĭtŭr hōstī.
2. Pārcēndum tĕnĕrīs.
3. Nōn bĕnĕ rīpāē Crēdĭtŭr.
4. Ē pōrtīs ōccūrrī cūiquĕ dĕcĕrĕt.
5. Prātēnsĭbŭs ōptĭmă fūngīs Nātūră est; ălĭīs mălĕ crēdĭtŭr.

(17) Many Adjectives may be followed by the Dative, as,

Vīrtūs tĭmōrī ēst cōntrārĭă,
Courage is contrary to fear.

---

1. Dīs cārŭs īpsīs.
2. Pătrĭāē sĭt ĭdōnĕŭs, ūtĭlĭs ăgrīs.
3. Pār lĕvĭbŭs vēntīs, vŏlŭcrīquĕ sĭmīllĭmă sŏmnō.
4. Vēntŭs ĕrăt nāūtīs āptŭs, nōn āptŭs ămāntī.
5. Quī cŏlŏr ălbŭs ĕrăt, nūnc ēst cōntrārĭŭs ălbō.
6. Nōn ĕgŏ sum lāūdī, nōn nātŭs ĭdōnĕŭs ārmīs.
7. Mōēnĭă jam stābānt pŏpŭlīs āngūstă fŭtūrīs.
8. Ēst ăquă Mērcŭrĭī pōrtāē vīcīnă Căpēnāē.
9. Tūrbă grăvĭs pācī, plăcĭdāēquĕ ĭnĭmīcă quĭētī.
10. Cōmpĭtă grātă dĕō, cōmpĭtă grātă cănī.

VII. Accusative Case.

(18) Some Intransitive Verbs can take after them an Accusative of kindred meaning, as,

Pūgnārĕ pūgnam,
To fight a battle.

---

1. Mīllĕ fŭgĭt rĕfŭgĭtquĕ vĭās.
2. Hūnc ōrō sĭnĕ mē fŭrĕrĕ āntĕ fŭrōrem.
3. Quī Cŭrĭōs sĭmŭlānt ĕt Bācchānālĭă vīvūnt.

Digitized by Google

4. Quĭs tē cōgēbăt mūltōs pāllērĕ cŏlōrēs?
5. Lȳncēūs īpsĕ mĕŭs sērōs īnsānĭt ămōrēs.
6. Māgnum ĭtĕr ăd dōctās prŏfĭcīscī cōgŏr Ăthēnās.
7. Scĭăt īndŏcĭlēs cūrrĕrĕ lȳmphă vĭās.
8. Dūrāē quērcūs sūdābūnt rōscĭdă mĕllă.
9. Gēns ĭnĭmĭcă mĭhĭ Tȳrrhēnum nāvĭgăt āequŏr.
10. Hūīc ĕgŏ vūlgŭs
Errōrī sĭmĭlem cūnctum īnsānīrĕ dŏcēbō.

(19) Verbs of asking, as "rŏgō," "ōrō," "pōscō," and the Verbs "dŏcĕō" (I teach), "cēlō" (I conceal), take two Accusatives, as,

Pŭĕrum lĭttĕrās dŏcĕt,
He teaches the boy letters.

---

1. Pōscĕ dĕōs vĕnĭam.
2. Sānctum mĭhĭ nūmĕn
Armă rŏgo.
3. Ŏtĭum dīvōs rŏgăt ĭn pătēntī
Prēnsŭs Āegāēō.
4. Nĭhĭl sĭprā
Dĕōs lācĕssō, nĕc pŏtēntem ămĭcum
Lārgĭōrā flāgĭtō.
5. Nūnquam dīvĭtĭās dĕōs rŏgăvī.
6. Nūnc ăllĭam cĭthăram mē mĕă mūsă dŏcĕt.
7. Quĭd dēdĭcātum pōscĭt Ăpōllĭnem
Vātēs?
8. Dŏctĕ sērmōnēs ŭtrĭūsquĕ lĭnguāē.
9. Mē nūnc Thrēssă Chlŏē rĕgĭt
Dūlcēs dŏctă mŏdōs.

(20) Verbs of "making," "calling," "thinking," take two Accusatives, as,

Rōmŭlŭs ūrbem sŭam Rōmam vŏcăt,
Romulus calls his city Rome.

Digitized by Google

1. Nōs tē,
Nōs făcĭmŭs, Fōrtūnă, dĕam.
2. Fēbrŭă Rōmānī dīxērĕ pĭāmĭnă pătrēs.
3. Sōlem Ăsĭāē Brūtum āppēllăt, stēllāsquĕ sălŭbrēs
Āppēllăt cŏmĭtēs.
4. Rōmă pătrem pătrĭāē Cĭcĕrōnem lĭbĕră dīxĭt.
5. Tū mē fēcīstī lŏcŭplētem.
6. Nōn pōssĭdēntem mūltă vŏcāvĕrĭs
Rēctē bēātum.
7. Mĕlĭōră dĭēs, ŭt vīnă, pŏēmătă rēddĭt.
8. Sȳllăbă lōngă brĕvī sūbjēctă vŏcātŭr ĭāmbŭs.
9. Vērtūmnŭs vērsŭ dīcŏr ăb āmnĕ dĕŭs.
10. Hīc ămēs dīcī pătĕr ātquĕ prīncēps.

(21) The Accusative or Ablative of the "part affected" is joined to Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, as,

Trĕmĭt ārtŭs,
He trembles in his limbs.
Fĕmŏrĕ vŭlnĕrātŭs,
Wounded in the thigh.

---

1. Ōs hŭmĕrōsquĕ dĕō sĭmĭlĭs.
2. Mĭcăt āūrĭbŭs ĕt trĕmĭt ārtŭs.
3. Strātŭs nūnc vĭrĭdī mēmbră sŭb ārbŭtō.
4. Ĭbăt ŏvĭs lānā cōrpŭs ămĭctă sŭā.
5. Pūrō cēlsum căpŭt ăĕrĕ sēptŭs.
6. Ĭō vērsă căpŭt prīmōs mūgīvĕrăt ānnōs.
7. Rēgālēs āccēnsă cŏmās, āccēnsă cŏrōnam.
8. Vīnctŭs ĕram gĕmĭnās pōst mĕă tĕrgă mănūs.
9. Dĕĭphŏbum vīdī, lăcĕrum crūdēlĭtĕr ōrā.
10. Ōmnĭă Mĕrcŭrĭō sĭmĭlĭs, vŏcēmquĕ cŏlōrēmquĕ
Ĕt crīnēs flāvōs.

(22) Motion towards a person or a place is expressed by the Accusative with a Preposition, as,

Ăd Caēsărem ĭn Gāllĭam ĕūnt,
They go to Gaul to Cæsar.

Digitized by Google

But names of towns, and the words "dŏmum" (homewards), "rūs" (to the country), stand in the Accusative without a Preposition, as,

Caēsăr Rōmam rĕdĭĭt,
Cæsar returned to Rome.

---

1. Rōmam vādĕ, lĭbĕr.
2. Ĭbĭs lĭtŏrēās, Măcĕr, Sălōnās.
3. Baĭās ĕt ăd ōstrĕă cūrrūnt.
4. Pŭĕrum ēst āūsŭs Rōmam pōrtārĕ.
5. Nōn sătĭs ēst Ĭthăcam rĕvĕhī?
6. Teūcrum mĕmĭnī Sīdōnă vĕnīrĕ.
7. Ăttŏnĭtă ēst plāngōrĕ Cĕrēs: mŏdŏ vēnĕrăt Hēnnam.
8. Ūrbem pĕtēbăt Bāssŭs? īmmŏ rūs ĭbăt.
9. "Dōctās ĕăt" īnquĭt "Ăthēnās."
10. Ĭtĕ dŏmum sătŭrāē (vĕnĭt Hēspĕrŭs), ĭtĕ căpēllāē.

(23) Length of Time or Space is put in the Accusative, as,

Caēsăr quīnquāgĭntā sēx fĕrē ānnōs vĭxĭt,
Cæsar lived almost fifty-six years.
Fōssă quīndĕcim pĕdēs lātă,
A trench fifteen feet broad.

---

1. Sēxtĭlem tōtum dēsīdĕrŏr.
2. Mīlĭă tum prānsī trĭă rēpĭmŭs.
3. Nōn hōram tēcum ēssĕ pŏtĕs.
4. Cȳnthĭă jam nōctēs ēst ŏpĕrātă dĕcem.
5. Quīnquĕ tĭbĭ pŏtŭī sērvīrĕ fĭdēlĭtĕr ānnōs.
6. Ūnā cum gēntĕ tŏt ānnōs
Bēllă gĕrō.
7. Mārtĭă tĕr sēnōs prōlēs ădŏlēvĕrăt ānnōs.
8. Nōctēs ātquĕ dĭēs pătĕt ātrī jānŭă Dītĭs.
9. Quāttŭŏr hīnc răpĭmŭr vīgĭntī ĕt mīlĭă rhēdīs.

Digitized by Google

10. Trēs ăděō īncērtōs cāēcā cālīgĭnĕ sōlēs
Ērrāmŭs pĕlăgō; tŏtĭdem sĭnĕ sīdĕrĕ nōctēs.

VIII. Ablative Case.

(24) Substantives which qualify the Verb like Adverbs are put in the Ablative, as,

Cāēsăr nōctĕ pūgnāvĭt,
Cæsar fought by night.

---

1. Lăc mĭhĭ nōn āēstātĕ nŏvum, nōn frīgŏrĕ dēfĭt.
2. Prīmŭs vērĕ rŏsam ātquĕ āūtūmnō cārpĕrĕ pōmă.
3. Ūndĭquĕ vīsēndī stŭdĭō Trōjānă jŭvēntūs
Cīrcūmfūsă rŭĭt.
4. Īpsī lāētĭtĭā vōcēs ăd sīdĕră jăctānt
Īntōnsī mōntēs.
5. Jŭvăt īrĕ jŭgīs.
6. Bēllum īngēns gĕrĕt Ītălĭā.
7. Rūstĭcŭs ūrbānum mūrem mūs pāūpĕrĕ fĕrtŭr
Āccēpĭssĕ căvō.
8. Ōrā mŏdīs ăttōllēns păllĭdă mīrīs.
9. Vērā īncēssū pătŭĭt dĕă.
10. Nātūrā sūblīmĭs ĕt ācĕr.
11. Lāctĕ fāvōs ĕt mītī dīlŭĕ Bācchō.
12. Tēstūdō rĕsŏnārĕ sēptem
Căllĭdă nervīs.
13. Vāstīs cum vīrĭbŭs ēffĕrt
Ōrā Dărēs māgnōquĕ vīrûm sē mūrmŭrĕ tōllĭt.
14. Ēmĭcăt Eūrÿălŭs, ĕt mūnĕrĕ vīctŏr ămīcī
Prīmă tĕnĕt, plāūsūquĕ vŏlăt frĕmĭtūquĕ sĕcūndō.
15. Aūrō cōrpŭs vēndēbăt Ăchīllēs.
16. Dīc, mēcum quō pīgnŏrĕ cērtēs.
17. Sūmmīs vīx cōrnĭbŭs ēxstānt.
18. Sĕd quāntō īllĕ măgĭs fōrmās sē vērtĕt ĭn ōmnēs
Tāntō, nātĕ, măgĭs cōntēndĕ tĕnācĭă vīnclă.

Digitized by Google

19. Āusŏnĭī, Trōjā gēns mĭssă, cŏlōnī.
20. Lĭbўāē dēsērtă pĕrăgrō,
Eūrōpā ātquē Āsĭā pūlsŭs.
21. Cārmĭnă vĕl cāēlō pōssūnt dēdūcĕrĕ lūnam.
22. Nātĕ dĕā.
23. Maīā gĕnĭtum dēmittĭt.
24. Māēcēnās, ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbŭs.

(25) Quality is expressed by the Ablative (or Genitive) with Epithet, as,

Caēsăr vĭr fŭĭt mīrā fŏrtĭtūdĭnĕ,
Cæsar was a man of wondrous courage.

---

1. Cērvŭs ĕrăt fŏrmā prāēstāntī ĕt cōrnĭbŭs īngēns.
2. Ĭnīquō pōndĕrĕ rāstrī.
3. Āmārīs īntĭbă fĭbrīs.
4. Ăcūtō rōbŏrĕ vāllōs.
5. Ēxĭgŭō sērmōnĕ fŏrēs nūnc, Ĭlĭŏn.
6. Īllă vĭam cĕlĕrāns pĕr mīllĕ cŏlōrĭbŭs ārcum.
7. Sūnt mĭhĭ bĭs sēptem prāēstāntī cōrpŏrĕ nўmphāē.
8. Tūrpĭs ămŏr sūrdīs āūrĭbŭs ēssĕ sŏlĕt.
9. Bīnă mănū lātō crīspāns hāstīlĭă fĕrrō.
10. Pōrtĭtŏr hās hōrrēndŭs ăquās, ĕt flūmĭnă sērvăt
Tērrĭbĭlī squālōrĕ Chărōn.

(26) Several common words take the Ablative, as,

Verbs—	frŭŏr, *I enjoy.*	Adjectives—	dīgnŭs, *worthy.*
	fūngŏr, *I perform.*		īndīgnŭs, *unworthy.*
	pŏtĭŏr, *I get.*		frētŭs, *relying on.*
	ūtŏr, *I use.*	Substantives—	ŏpŭs, *need.*
	vēscŏr, *I eat.*		ūsŭs, *use.*

---

1. Fūngĕrĕ mātērnīs vĭcĭbŭs, pătĕr.
2. Vērĕ frŭŏr sēmpĕr.

Digitized by Google

3. Īpsă sŭā Dīdō cōncĭdĭt ūsă mănū.
4. Vīscĕrĭbŭs mĭsĕrōrum ĕt sănguĭnĕ vēscĭtŭr ātrō.
5. Pŏtĭtŭr cāptā Māūrŭs Ĭārbă dŏmō.
6. Ēgrēssī ōptātā pŏtĭūntŭr Trŏēs ārēnā.
7. Cārcĕrĕ dīgnŭs ĕrās.
8. Dīgnum lāūdĕ vĭrum Mūsă vĕtăt mŏrī.
9. Dīgnă ātquĕ īndīgnă rĕlātū
Vŏcĭfĕrāns.
10. Īllĕ pĕdum mĕlĭŏr mōtū frĕtūsquĕ jŭvēntā.
11. Īllā frĕtŭs ăgĭt vēntōs, ĕt tūrbĭdă trānăt
Nūbĭlă.
12. Pācĕ brĕvī nōbīs ŏpŭs ēst.
13. Clāmōrĕ ŏpŭs ēst, ŭt sēntĭăt āūrĭs.
14. Nūnc vīrĭbŭs ūsŭs,
Nūnc mănĭbŭs răpĭdīs, ōmnī nūnc ārtĕ măgīstrā.

(27) Adjectives and Verbs which signify "abounding" or "wanting," "rich" or "poor," "full" or "empty," take an Ablative (sometimes also a Genitive), as,

Dīvĕs ăgrīs,
Rich in land.

---

1. Măncĭplĭs lŏcŭplēs ĕgĕt āerĭs Cāppădŏcum rēx.
2. Pānĕ ĕgĕō.
3. Nĕc lăcrĭmīs cărŭērĕ gĕnāē.
4. Crīmĭnĕ nōx văcŭă ēst.
5. Lītĕ văcēnt āūrēs.
6. Īmplēvī clāmōrĕ vĭās.
7. Vĕtĕrĭs nōn pārcŭs ăcētī.
8. Ŏpĭs nōn īndĭgă nōstrāē.
9. Dīvĕs ăgrīs, dīvĕs pŏsĭtīs ĭn fāēnōrĕ nūmmīs.
10. Rēs ēst sōllĭcĭtī plēnă tĭmōrĭs ămŏr.
11. Dīvĕs ĕquūm, dīvĕs pĭctāī vēstĭs ĕt āūrī.
12. Frĕquēns hĕrbīs ĕt fĕrtĭlĭs ūbĕrĕ cāmpŭs.
13. Īmplēntŭr vĕtĕrĭs Bācchī pīnguĭsquĕ fĕrīnāē.

Digitized by Google

(28) A Substantive or a Pronoun combines with a Participle, or an Adjective, or another Substantive, to form the Ablative Absolute, as,

Dŭcĕ caēsō fŭgĭūnt mĭlĭtēs,
The general being slain, the soldiers flee.

---

1. Sŏcĕrō căpĕ rēgnă nĕcātō.
2. Āmīssō dŭblāē rēgĕ văgāntŭr ăpēs.
3. Hĕrcŭlĕ sŭppŏsĭtō sīdĕră fŭlsĭt Ătlās.
4. Cāēsărĕ vēntūrō, Phōsphŏrĕ, rēddĕ dĭem.
5. Vīlĭcĕ, dā rĕquĭem tĕrrāē, sēmēntĕ pĕrāctā.
6. Flōrĕ sĕmĕl lāēsō pĕrĕūnt vĭcĭāēquĕ făbāēquĕ.
7. Rīdētŭr fĭctīs rĕrum, Bălătrōnĕ sĕcūndō.
8. Mōrtĕ lŭam pōēnās, jūdĭcĕ vĭctă dĕă.
9. Mē sĕnĕ, quŏd dīcam făctum ēst.
10. Nīl dĕspĕrāndum Teūcrō dŭcĕ ĕt āūspĭcĕ Teūcrō.
11. Mē dŭcĕ tūtŭs ĕrĭs.

(29) Agent and Instrument are put in the Ablative: Agent with a Preposition, Instrument without, as,

Ăb hōstĕ caēsŭs ēst,
He was slain by an enemy.

Ēnsĕ caēsŭs ēst,
He was slain by a sword.

---

1. Vīncŏr ăb Āenēă.
2. Laūdātŭr ăb hīs, cūlpātŭr ăb īllīs.
3. Pĭctōrēs quĭs nēscĭt ăb Īsĭdĕ pāscī.
4. Jam trīstĭs nŭcĭbŭs pŭĕr rĕlĭctīs
   Clāmōsō rĕvŏcātŭr ā măgīstrō.
5. Hī jăcŭlīs, īllī cērtānt dēfēndĕrĕ sāxīs.
6. Vīnō fōrmă pĕrĭt: vīnō cōrrūmpĭtŭr āētās.
7. Āptă jŭgō cērvīx nōn ēst fĕrĭēndă sĕcūrī.

Digitized by Google

(30) When two things or persons are compared, the conjunction "than" is either—

(1) rendered by "quam" with the same Case after it as before it,

or—

(2) it is omitted, and the latter of the two things or persons is put in the Ablative, as,

Exile is worse than death,
Ēxsĭlĭum quam mōrs pējŭs ēst,
or Ēxsĭlĭum mōrtĕ pējŭs ēst.

---

1. Plūs mūltō tĭbĭ dēbĭtūrŭs hĭc ēst
   Quam dēbēt dŏmĭnō sŭō lĭbēllŭs.
2. Plūs tĭbĭ, quam Jūnō, nŏcŭĭt Vĕnŭs.
3. Nēscĭŏ quĭd mājŭs nāscĭtŭr Īlĭădĕ.
4. Ō mātrĕ pūlchrā fīlĭă pūlchrĭŏr.
5. Ēxēgī mŏnŭmēntum āērĕ pĕrēnnĭŭs.
6. Vīlĭŭs ārgēntum ēst aūrō, vīrtūtĭbŭs āūrum.
7. Frīgĭdĭŭs glăcĭē pēctŭs ămāntĭs ĕrăt.
8. Īssă ēst blāndĭŏr ōmnĭbŭs pŭēllis.
9. Rīsū ĭnēptō rēs ĭnēptĭŏr nūllă ēst.

IX. Verbs.

(31) Impersonal Verbs are used in the Third Singular only, without a Personal Subject, as,

Lĭbĕt,	Ŏpōrtĕt,	Pŭdĕt,
Lĭcĕt,	Pĭgĕt,	Rēfērt,
Mĭsĕrĕt,	Paēnĭtĕt,	Taēdĕt.

---

1. Dōnĕc Bĭthȳnō lĭbĕăt vĭgĭlārĕ tȳrānnō.
2. Īrĕ lĭbĕt tŭmĭdās īpsī mĭhĭ sāēpĕ pĕr ūndās.
3. Lĭcĕt ēssĕ bĕātīs.
4. Īgnĭbŭs ēlāpsōs pāēnĭtĕt ēssĕ dĕōs.

Digitized by Google

5. Pŭdŏr ēst nōn lĭcŭĭssĕ mŏrī.
6. Tāedět cāelī cōnvēxă tŭērī.
7. Sānguĭnĭs ăltrĭcem nōn pŭdět ēssĕ lŭpam.
8. Mē jŭvět ĭn prīmā cŏlŭĭssĕ Hĕlĭcōnă jŭvēntā.
9. Quĭd nūnc Tārquĭnĭī frăctās jŭvăt ēssĕ sĕcūrēs?
10. Ēxpĕdĭt mātrĭs cĭnĕrēs ŏpĕrtōs
Fāllĕrĕ.
11. Hīnc tŏnăt, hīnc mĭssĭs ābrūmpĭtŭr īgnĭbŭs āethēr.

(32) Intransitive Verbs are Impersonal in the Passive Voice, as,

Ācrĭtĕr ā nōstrĭs pūgnātŭr,
Our men fight bravely.

---

1. Lŭdĭtŭr ĭn cāstrĭs.
2. Vēntum ĕrăt ăd rīpās.
3. Clāmōrĕ pārī cōncūrrĭtŭr.
4. Tōtā dĭscūrrĭtŭr ūrbĕ.
5. Crās, ūt rūmōr ăĭt, tōtā pūgnābĭtŭr ūrbĕ.
6. Nī pārērĕ vĕlĭs, pĕrĕūndum ēst.
7. Ōrāndum ēst, ŭt sĭt mēns sānă ĭn cōrpŏrĕ sānō.
8. Ĭtŭr ĭn āntīquam sĭlvam, stābŭlā āltă fĕrārum.
9. Sūrgĭtŭr, ĕt mĭssō prŏcĕrēs ēxīrĕ jŭbēntŭr
Cōnsĭlĭŏ.
10. Vīvĭtŭr pārvō bĕnĕ, cūī pătērnum
Splēndět ĭn mēnsā tĕnŭī sălĭnum.

(33) Many Verbs require another Verb following them in the Infinitive Mood, to complete the sense, as,

Pōssum cūrrĕrĕ,
I am able to run.

---

1. Vīsnĕ sălūtārī?
2. Pārcĕ plās scĕlĕrārĕ mănūs.
3. Ĭn nĕmŭs īrĕ pārānt.
4. Lăcrĭmās fīngĕ vĭdērĕ mĕās.

Digitized by Google

5. Dūrōs gāūdĕt trāctārĕ rŭdēntēs.
6. Nēscĭt ămŏr măgnĭs cēdĕrĕ dīvĭtĭīs.
7. Quī nōlūnt ŏccīdĕrĕ quēnquam,
Pŏssĕ vŏlūnt.
8. Dīvĕs quī fĭĕrī vūlt,
Ĕt cĭtŏ vūlt fĭĕrī.
9. Ā nōstrā pŭĕrīs pārcĕrĕ dīscĕ lŭpā.
10. Sāēpĕ ĕgŏ dīgēstōs vŏlŭī nŭmĕrārĕ cŏlōrēs,
Nĕc pŏtŭī.

(34) The Infinitive Mood is used, not only as a Verb, but also as a Neuter Substantive with Cases supplied by the Gerunds and Supines, as,

Pūgnārĕ mĭlĭtem dēlēctăt,
Fighting delights the soldier.
Mĭlĕs ēst pūgnāndī cŭpĭdŭs,
The soldier is desirous of fighting.
Spēctātum vĕnĭūnt,
They come to see.

---

1. Ĭn stăbŭlīs hăbĭtāssĕ ĕt ŏvēs pāvĭssĕ nŏcēbăt.
2. Sāēpĕ dĕōs ălĭquĭs pēccāndō fĕcĭt ĭnĭquōs.
3. Prōptĕr vĭtam vīvēndī pĕrdĕrĕ cāūsās.
4. Mānĕ sălūtātum vĕnĭō.
5. Mĭrābĭlĕ dĭctū.
6. Lūsum ĭt Māēcēnās, dōrmĭtum ĕgŏ Vērgĭlĭūsquĕ.
7. Cārpēndī stŭdĭō paūlātim lōngĭŭs ĭtŭr.
8. Spēctātum vĕnĭūnt, vĕnĭūnt spēctēntŭr ŭt īpsāē.
9. Mălă tāctū
Vīpĕrā dēlĭtŭĭt.
10. Sĭnĕ mē hāēc hāūd mōllĭa fātū
Sūblātīs ăpĕrīrĕ dŏlīs.

(35) The Gerunds, Supine, and Present and Future Participles, take the same Cases as the Verb from which they come, as,

Pōmpam spēctātum vĕnĭūnt,
They come to see the procession.

Digitized by Google

1. Cūī dăbĭt pārtēs scĕlŭs ēxpĭăndī
   Jūppĭtĕr ?
2. Vātēs tŭă cāstră cănēndō
   Māgnŭs ĕrō.
3. Jūs tĭbĭ dīscēndī.
4. Sēptĭmī Gādēs ădĭtūrĕ mēcum.
5. Crēscĭt īndŭlgēns sĭbĭ dīrŭs hȳdrōps.
6. Lātĭŭs rēgnēs ăvĭdum dŏmāndō
   Spīrĭtum.
7. Grāūīs sērvĭtum mātrĭbŭs ĭbō.
8. Dĕŭm prāēcēptă sĕcūtī
   Vēnĭmŭs hīnc lăpsīs quāēsĭtum ōrăcŭlă rēbŭs.
9. Cĕcrŏpĭăs īnnātŭs ăpēs ămŏr ūrgĕt hăbēndī.
10. Trītĭcĕōs fĕtūs, pāssūrăquĕ fārră bĭs īgnem,
    Hōrdĕăquĕ īngēntī fāēnŏrĕ rĕddăt ăgĕr.

(36) The Past Participle, except in Deponent Verbs, is Passive, as,

Ămātŭs,
Having been loved.
but Sĕcūtŭs,
Having followed.

---

1. Mōx dŏmĭtŭs vĭnclĭs ĭn sŭă mēmbră rĕdĭt.
2. Ēgrēssī vĕnĕrāmŭr Ăpōllĭnĭs ūrbem.
3. Rŭūnt ēffūsī cārcĕrĕ cūrrūs.
4. Cēdēs cŏēmptīs sāltĭbŭs ĕt dŏmō.
5. Tĕr āēvō fūnctŭs.
6. Nūllŭs ārgēntō cŏlŏr ēst ăvārīs
   Ābdĭtō tĕrrīs.
7. Quĭd ĭntāctum nĕfāstī
   Lĭquĭmŭs ?
8. Ō pāssī grăvĭōrā, dăbĭt dĕŭs hīs quŏquĕ fīnem.

(37) The Gerundive is used to express that which "must be" or "ought to be," as,

Rēs ēst făcĭēndă,
The thing must be done.

Digitized by Google

The Agent following it is usually in the Dative, as,

Rēs mĭhĭ ēst făcĭēndă,
The thing must be done by me.

---

1. Āncĭllĭs ēxcĭpĭēndă cădō.
2. Prōēlĭă cōnjŭgĭbŭs lŏquēndă.
3. Nūnc dĭcēndă mĭhĭ rēgĭs fŭgă.
4. Nōn hŏmĭnī rĕgĭō, nōn ădĕūndă fĕrāē.
5. Caūlĭs mĭsĕrĭs ātquĕ īgnĭs ĕmēndŭs.
6. Dūcĭtŭr īrātĭs plāūdēndum fūnŭs ămĭcĭs.
7. Ārmă tŭāē tĭbĭ sūnt ĭmĭtāndă Dĭānāē.
8. Ēxsŭlĭbūsnĕ dătŭr dūcēndă Lăvĭnĭă Teūcrĭs?
9. Sĭdŏnĭ, sĭc fŭĕrās āspĭcĭēndă Jŏvī.
10. Tĕstŏr mājōrum cĭnĕrēs, tĭbĭ, Rōmă, vĕrēndōs.
11. Sī vīs mē flĕrĕ, dŏlēndum ēst
Prīmum īpsī tĭbĭ.

X. Compound Sentence.

(38) Conjunctions join words or clauses, as,

Caēsăr ĕt Bĭbŭlŭs ĕrānt cōnsŭlēs,
Cæsar and Bibulus were consuls.

---

1. Coēpīstī mĕlĭŭs quam dēsĭnĭs.
2. Dĭssĭmĭlēs hīc vĭr ĕt īllĕ pŭĕr.
3. Laūdānt īllă, sĕd īstă lĕgūnt.
4. Prŏbĭtās laūdātŭr ĕt ālgĕt.
5. Aut pĕcŭs, aūt lātam dīvĕs hăbēbăt hŭmum.
6. Nŭmă nĕc Jānum, nĕc ăvĭtās praētĕrĭt ūmbrās.
7. Crāssŭs ăd Euphrātēn ăquĭlās nātūmquĕ sŭōsquĕ
Pĕrdĭdĭt.
8. Sūmmum nĕc mĕtŭās dĭem nĕc ōptēs.
9. Ĭnnŭmĕrī cīrcā stāntquĕ sĭlēntquĕ vĭrī.
10. Ĭbĭt ĭn āmplēxūs mātĕr frātĕrquĕ pătĕrquĕ
Ĕt sŏrŏr.

Digitized by Google

(39) Fourth Concord.—The Relative agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its Case is settled by its own Clause, as,

Flōs, quem sōl ĕt īmbrēs nūtrĭūnt, crēscĭt,
The flower, which sun and showers nourish, grows.

---

1. Lĕvĕ fĭt, quŏd bĕnĕ fĕrtŭr, ŏnŭs.
2. Quās dĕdĕrĭs, sōlās sēmpĕr hăbēbĭs ŏpēs.
3. Quāē tŭă sūnt, tĭbĭ hăbē: quāē mĕă, rēddĕ mĭhĭ.
4. Chlōrĭs ĕram, quāē Flōră vŏcŏr.
5. Nōn sum, quālĭs ĕram.
6. Cōnsĭlĭīs pārē, quāē dăt pūlchĕrrĭmă Nāūtēs.
7. Ō fŏrtūnātī, quōrum jam mōēnĭă sūrgūnt.
8. Sānctĕ pătĕr, sālvē, cūī jam făvĕt āspĕră Jūnō.
9. Nūm vēscĕrĭs īstā,
   Quam lāūdās plūmā?
10. Quam mōrtem frātrī dēpŭlĭt, īpsă tŭlĭt.

(40) The Subject of a Verb in the Infinitive Mood is in the Accusative, as,

Pŭĕrum crēscĕrĕ vĭdĕō,
I see that the boy grows.

---

1. Hōstīlēs crēdĭt ădēssĕ mănūs.
2. Dĕōs dĭdĭcī sēcūrum ăgĕrĕ āēvum.
3. Crēdĭmŭs āltōs
   Dēfēcīssĕ āmnēs.
4. Ārcădēs īpsum
   Crēdūnt sē vīdīssĕ Jŏvem.
5. Ūnō crēdĭs ĕquō pōssĕ sĕdērĕ dŭōs?
6. Quĭs tāntum fātī crēdăt hăbērĕ lŏcum?
7. Mēnsĕ mălās Māīō nūbĕrĕ vūlgŭs ălt.
8. Āenēān scīs īpsĕ, ĕt scīrĕ fātārĭs
   Dēbērī cāēlō.

Digitized by Google

9. Nūllōs ēssĕ dĕōs, ĭnānĕ cāēlum
Āffīrmăt Sĕgĭūs.

10. Sāēpĕ ĕgŏ lōngōs
Cāntāndō mĕmĭnī pŭĕrum mē cōndĕrĕ sōlēs.

XI. Dependent Clauses.

(41) The Finite Verb in a Dependent Clause introducing Question, Purpose, or Consequence, is in the Subjunctive Mood, as,

Rŏgō quĭd făcĭās,
I ask what you are doing.

---

1. Quāē sīnt ĕă nūmĭnă dīvûm,
Flăgĭtăt.
2. Īmmŏrtălĭă nē spĕrēs, mŏnĕt ānnŭs.
3. Nēmō ădĕō fĕrŭs ēst, ŭt nōn mītēscĕrĕ pōssĭt,
Sī mŏdŏ cūltūrāē pătĭēntem cōmmŏdĕt āūrem.
4. Nĕc, quāē sŏnĭtum dĕt cāūsă, vĭdēmŭs.
5. Cōndīscĕ mŏdōs, ămāndā
Vŏcĕ quōs rēddās.
6. Dūmmŏdŏ rīsum
Excŭtĭăt sĭbĭ, nōn hĭc cūīquam pārcĕt ămīcō.
7. Rŏgăbăt
Dēnĭquĕ, cūr ūnquam fūgīssĕt.
8. Nīl hăbĕō, quŏd ăgam.
9. Lāūdēs, lāūdērĭs ŭt ābsēns.

(42) The Tense of the Finite Verb in a Dependent Clause is settled by the Tense of the Principal Verb in the Clause on which it depends.

---

1. Rūstĭcŭs ēxspēctăt, dum dēflŭăt āmnĭs.
2. Nēscīs, quō vălĕăt nūmmŭs.
3. Vĭdēs, quāntō trĕpĭdĕt tūmūltū
Prōnŭs Ŏrīōn.
4. Quĭd sĭt fūtūrum crās, fūgĕ quāērĕrĕ.

Digitized by Google

5. Quĭd tĭmĕam, īgnōrō.
6. Thrācēn quī rĕgăt, āltĕr ĕrĭt.
7. Sūnt mĭhĭ, quās pōssĭnt scēptrā dĕcērĕ, mănūs.
8. Quĭd cāūsāē ēst, mĕrĭtō quīn īllīs Jūppĭtĕr āmbās
Īrātŭs būccās īnflĕt, nĕquĕ sē fŏrĕ pōsthāc
Tam făcĭlem dīcăt, vōtīs ŭt prāēbĕăt āūrem.

(43) Primary Tenses of the Indicative are followed by Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive; Historic Tenses of the Indicative are followed by Historic Tenses of the Subjunctive.

---

1. Quāē Rōmānō vēllĕt nūbĕrĕ, nūllă fŭĭt.
2. Quāē fŭĕrĭt mĭhĭ fōrmă, grăvĕ ēst nărrārĕ mŏdēstāē.
3. Frātrĕ măgĭs, dŭbĭtō, glōrĭĕr, ānnĕ vĭrō.
4. Rēfērt, sīs bŏnŭs ăn vĕlīs vĭdērī.
5. Cūr ābsim quāērĕt.
6. Ĭtă sōrdĭdŭs, ūt sē
Nōn ūnquam sērvō mĕlĭŭs vēstīrĕt.
7. Ŏccĭdĭt īnfēlīx, nē nōstrum dēdĕcŭs Ŭfēns
Āspĭcĕrĕt.
8. Nē mē Crīspīnī scrīnĭă lĭppī
Cŏmpīlâssĕ pŭtēs, vērbum nōn āmplĭŭs āddam.

Digitized by Google

List of certain Latin Conjunctions and Interrogative and Relative Pronouns and Adverbs, showing their Construction.

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

Āntĕquam, *before that, before.*

(*a*) Definite: Of a fact which has actually happened. Indicative, as—

I went away before he came (or *had come*),
Ăbĭī *āntĕquam* vēnĭt.

Note.—The Pluperfect in English is usually rendered by the Aorist in Latin.

(*b*) Indefinite: Of a fact which may or may not happen. Subjunctive, as—

Go away before he comes,
Ăbī *āntĕquam* vēnĭăt.

Note.—The words "āntĕ"–"quam" are often written separately, as—

I did not go away before Cæsar came,
Nōn āntĕ ăbĭī quam Cāēsăr vēnĭt.

Dōnĕc (chiefly poetical).

(1) *While, as long as.* Indicative, as—

As long as you are lucky, you will reckon many friends,
Dōnĕc ĕrĭs fĕlīx, multōs nŭmĕrābĭs ămīcōs.

(2) *Until.*

(*a*) Definite: Of a fact which has actually happened. Indicative, as—

I fought until I conquered,
Pūgnāvī *dōnĕc* vīcī.

(*b*) Indefinite: Of a fact which may or may not happen. Subjunctive, as—

Fight until you conquer,
Pūgnā *dōnĕc* vīncās.

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question**, it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

Dum.

(1) *While.* Indicative (usually Present Tense where English has Past), as—

I was present while this was going on,
Dum hāēc gĕrūntŭr, ăděram.

NOTE.—The Present Indicative may be used even in Historic Sequence in Oratio Obliqua.

Say, O stranger, at Sparta that you have seen us lying here, obeying the sacred laws of our fatherland.
Dīc hōspĕs Spārtāē nōs tē hīc vīdĭssĕ jăcēntēs,
Dum sānctīs pătrĭāē lēgĭbŭs ōbsĕquĭmŭr.

(2) *So long as, all the time that.* Indicative, as—

So long as you were present, I feared nothing,
Dum ăděrās nĭhĭl vĕrēbăr.

(3) *Until.*

(*a*) Definite: Of a fact which has actually happened. Indicative, as—

I fought until I conquered,
Pūgnāvī *dum* vīcī.

(*b*) Indefinite: Of a fact which may or may not happen. Subjunctive, as—

Fight until you conquer,
Pūgnā *dum* vĭncās.

(4) *If only, provided that.* Subjunctive, as—

Let them hate, if only they fear,
Ōděrĭnt *dum* mĕtŭānt.

Dūmmŏdŏ, *if only, provided that.* Subjunctive, as—

Let him kill me, if only he reign,
Ŏccīdăt mē *dūmmŏdŏ* ĭmpĕrĕt.

Ētsī, / **Ĕtĭāmsī,** } *although, even if.*

(1) Of a fact. Indicative, as—

Although he is a friend, I will blame him,
Ētsī ămīcŭs ĕst, ĕum cūlpābō.

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

---

(2) Of that which is not a fact. Subjunctive, as—

Even if he were a friend, I would blame him,
Ētsī ămīcŭs ēssĕt, ĕum cūlpārem.

Fōrsĭtăn, *perhaps.* Subjunctive, as—

Perhaps Brutus was wise,
Fōrsĭtăn Brūtŭs săpĭēns fŭĕrĭt.

Fōrtāssĕ, *perhaps,* with Adjective, or Verb in the Indicative Mood, as,—

We were together perhaps two hours,
Fŭĭmŭs ūnā hōrās dŭās *fōrtāssĕ.*

Perhaps I shall be present,
Ăděrō *fōrtāssĕ.*

Fōrtĕ.

(i.) *Accidentally, by chance,* as—

I was accidentally present,
Fōrtĕ ăděram.

(ii.) *Perhaps* (only when preceded by "sī," "nĭsĭ," "sīn," or "nē"). The mood of the verb is not affected by the word "fōrtĕ."

Lĭcĕt, *although.* Subjunctive, as—

Although you are strong, you will grow old,
Lĭcĕt vălĭdŭs sīs, sĕnēscēs.

Mŏdŏ, *if only, provided that* = "**Dūmmŏdŏ,**" q.v.

Nē.

(1) *That . . . not, lest.* Subjunctive, as—

We pray that you will not go away,
Ōrāmŭs *nē* ăbĕās.

(2) *Not,* in prohibitions. 2nd Singular Perfect Subjunctive, as—

Do not do this,
Nē hōc fēcĕrĭs.

Do not set out,
Nē prŏfēctŭs sīs.

(3) *Not even* (nē . . . quĭdem), as—

Not even one escaped,
Nē ūnŭs *quĭdem* ēffŭgĭt.

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

N.B.—The word emphasized is inserted between "nē" and "quĭdem."

Nĭsĭ, *unless, if not,* follows the same rules as "sī" in Conditional Sentences. See p. 127.

Pōstĕāquam, / **Pōstquam,** *when, after that.* Indicative, as—

When I had left the city, a sedition arose,
Pōstquam ăb ūrbĕ dĭscĕssī, ōrtă ēst sēdĭtĭō.

NOTE.—The Pluperfect Indicative should not be used after "pōstquam" or "pōstĕāquam."

Prĭūsquam, *before that, before* = "**Ăntĕquam,**" q.v.

Quā, *where.* Indicative. But see **Rule** 41 and "**Quī,**" Note.

Quāmdĭū, *as long as.* Indicative, as—

As long as he was speaking, I kept silence,
Quāmdĭū lŏquēbātŭr sĭlēbam.

Quāmquam, *although, though to be sure, however.* Indicative, as—

We conquered, though the enemy fought bravely,
Vĭcĭmŭs *quāmquam* hōstēs ăcrĭtĕr pūgnāvērūnt.

Quāmvīs, *although.* Subjunctive, as—

Although you flee, I shall overtake you,
Quāmvīs fŭgĭās, tē cōnsĕquăr.

Quāndō.

(1) *When?* (asking a question). Indicative, as—

When will you come?
Quāndō vĕnĭēs?

(2) *Since.* Indicative, as—

Since he challenges me to a fight, I will encounter him,
Quāndō mē ăd pūgnam prōvŏcăt, ĕī ŏbvĭŭs ĭbō.

Quāndŏquĭdem, *since.* Indicative, as—

Speak, since we are seated on the soft grass,
Dĭcĭtĕ, *quāndŏquĭdem* ĭn mŏllī cōnsēdĭmŭs hĕrbā.

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

Quăsĭ, *as if.* Subjunctive, as—

All were in consternation, as if the enemy were at the gates,
Cōntērrĭtī sūnt ōmnēs *quăsĭ* hōstēs ăd pōrtās ēssēnt.

Quī.

(1) *Who* (Relative Pronoun) in simple sense. Indicative, as—

I saw the house which was burning,
Dŏmum, *quāē ārdēbăt,* vīdī.

(2) Introducing a "purpose." Subjunctive (Rules 41–43), as—

He sent ambassadors to sue for peace,
Latin—*He sent ambassadors who should sue for peace,*
or *that they should sue for peace,*
Lēgātōs mīsĭt *quī* pācem *ōrārēnt.*

I have nothing to do,
Latin—*I have nothing which I may do,*
or *that I may do it,*
Nīl hăbĕō *quŏd ăgam.*

Notice the expressions "dĭgnŭs quī," "ĭndĭgnŭs quī," and "ĭdōnĕŭs quī," followed by the Subjunctive, as—

You are worthy to be praised,
Dĭgnŭs ĕs *quī* lāūdērĭs.

(3) Introducing a "consequence." Subjunctive (Rules 41–43), as—

I am not the man to do this,
Latin—*I am not such a man that I should do this,*
Nōn ĭs sum *quī* hōc *făcĭam,*
for—Nōn sum *tālĭs ŭt* hōc *făcĭam.*

He said such things as I would rather not repeat,
Latin—*He said such things that I should be unwilling to repeat them,*
Dīxĭt *quāē* ĭtĕrārĕ *nōllem,*
for—*Tālĭă* dīxĭt *ŭt ĕă* ĭtĕrārĕ *nōllem.*

(4) Giving a "reason." Subjunctive, as—

I pity you, since you are a coward,
Latin—*I pity you, who are a coward,*
Mĭsĕrĕt mē tŭī *quī* īgnāvŭs *sīs.*

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

---

(5) Note the idiom "ēst quī," "sūnt quī," &c., with Subjunctive, as—

There are some who cannot distinguish colours,
Sūnt *quī* cŏlōrēs dīnōscĕrĕ nōn *pōssĭnt.*

NOTE.—Certain Relative Adverbs can often be substituted, both in English or Latin, for the Cases of the Relative combined with Prepositions, as—

RELATIVE PRONOUN.		RELATIVE ADVERB.	
Latin.	English.	Latin.	English.
Lŏcūs ĭn quō,	Place *in* which.	Lŏcūs quā *or* ŭbĭ,	Place *where.*
„ ăd quem,	„ *to* which.	„ quō,	„ *whither.*
„ ā *or* ē quō,	„ *from* which.	„ ūndĕ,	„ *whence.*

These Relative Adverbs (quā, ŭbĭ, quō, ūndĕ) follow the Rules just given for the Relative Pronoun, as—

(1) Indicative—

The city, whence you came, is ancient,
Ūrbs, ēx quā vēnīstī, ēst āntīquă,
or Ūrbs, ūndĕ vēnīstī, ēst āntīquă.

(2) Subjunctive—

I will lead you to a place whence you may see the enemy,
= that from it you may see the enemy,
Tē ăd lŏcum dūcam ēx quō hōstēs vĭdērĕ *pōssīs,*
or ūndĕ hōstēs vĭdērĕ *pōssīs,* &c.

Quĭă, *because.* Indicative, as—

Many hate me, because I am your friend,
Mūltī mē ōdērūnt *quĭă* sum tĭbĭ ămīcūs.

Quin, *that* (after Verbs of "doubting," "denying," &c.). Subjunctive, as—

It cannot be denied that the sun is larger than the moon,
Nĕgārī nōn pŏtēst *quin* sōl quam lūnă mājŏr sīt.

Quō.

(1) *In order that* (with a Comparative following). Subjunctive, as—

Learn to obey, that you may command the better,
Pārērĕ dīscĕ *quō* mĕlĭŭs ĭmpĕrēs.

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

---

(2) *Whither.* See "**Quī,**" Note.

Quŏăd.

(1) *As long as.* } See "**Dōnĕc.**"
(2) *Until.* }

Quŏd, *because.* Indicative, as—

Because I am your friend, he hates me,
Quŏd tĭbĭ ămīcŭs sum, mē ōdĭt.

NOTE.—If "sim" were substituted for "sum," the sentence would bear a slightly different meaning: "because, as he supposes, I am your friend."

NOTE.—In the expressions "quŏd sĭ," "quŏd nĭsĭ," "quŏd ŭtĭnam," &c., "quŏd" is equivalent to *but* or *now*, and does not affect the Mood of the Verb.

Quōmĭnŭs, *that not,* lit. *by which the less* (often rendered in English by "*from*" with the Participle). Subjunctive, as—

Winter did not prevent the army from advancing,
Hĭēms nōn ōbstĭtĭt *quōmĭnŭs* ēxērcĭtŭs prōgrĕdĕrĕtŭr.
Lit. *Did not stand in the way so that the army should advance the less* (*should not advance*).

It is used after Verbs of "hindering," "preventing," "refusing," &c.

Quŏnĭam, *since.* Indicative, as—

Depart to your homes, Romans, since it is already night,
Vōs Quĭrĭtēs, *quŏnĭam* jam nōx ēst, ĭn vēstrā tēctā dĭscēdĭtĕ,

Quŏtiēs, *as often as.* Indicative, as—

As often as winter returns, we need fire,
Quŏtiēs brūmā rĕdĭt, īgnĕ ŏpŭs ēst.

Quum.

(1) *When.* As a general rule, the Mood used in Latin depends upon the Tense used in Latin.

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

(*a*) If the Tense used in Latin be Imperfect or Pluperfect, the Mood is Subjunctive.

(*b*) If the Tense used be Present, Future, Perfect, or, Future Perfect, the Mood is Indicative, as—

(*a*) *When I was a boy, I learnt much,*
Quum pŭĕr ēssem, mūltă dĭdĭcī.

(*b*) *He who does not prevent an injustice, when he is able to do so, acts unjustly,*
Ĭs quī īnjūrĭam nōn prōpūlsăt, *quum* pŏtēst, īnjūstē făcĭt.

NOTE.—"Quum" with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive in Latin corresponds to "*when*" with the Aorist, as well as with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative in English.

Clauses with "quum" may often be rendered by the English Present Participle, e.g.—

Quum Rōmam pĕrvēnĭssem, Cāēsărem vīdī,
On reaching Rome, I saw Cæsar.

"Quum" with the Perfect Indicative in Latin corresponds to "*when*" with the Perfect Indicative in English, and implies frequent repetition of the action.

(2) *Since.* Subjunctive, as—

I hate you, since you are a coward,
Tē ŏdī *quum* īgnāvŭs sīs.

(3) *Although.* Subjunctive, as—

Although he might have been rich, he preferred being poor,
Quum dīvĕs ēssĕ pŏssĕt, pāūpĕr ēssĕ mālŭĭt.

Sī, *if.* For Construction, see Conditional Sentences, p. 127.

Sĭmŭl,
Sĭmŭl āc,
Sĭmŭl ātquĕ, } *as soon as.* Indicative, as—

I went away as soon as he came,
Ăbĭī *sĭmŭl ātquĕ* vēnĭt.

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

Sĭquĭdem, *inasmuch as, since.* Indicative, as—

Since I must die, I will die as nobly as I may,
Sĭquĭdem mŏrĭēndum ēst, quam pŭlchērrĭmē mŏrĭăr.

NOTE.—"Sĭquĭdem" means properly *if indeed;* the sentence given above hardly differs from—

If I must indeed die, I will die as nobly as I may.

Tānquam, *as if.* Subjunctive, as—

You have sent money, as if I needed it,
Pĕcūnĭam mĭsīstī *tānquam* ējŭs ĭndĭgērem.

Tămētsī, *although, notwithstanding that.* Indicative, as—

Although I saw the king myself, I scarcely believed my eyes,
Tămētsī īpsĕ rēgem vīdī, ŏcŭlīs vix crēdĭdī.

Ŭbī.

(1) *Where,* Relative Adverb. Indicative.
(2) *Where?* Interrogative Adverb. Indicative.
(3) *When,* Relative Adverb. Indicative.
See "**Quī,**" Note.

Ūndĕ, *whence,* Relative or Interrogative Adverb. Indicative.
See "**Quī,**" Note.

Ŭt.

(1) *In order that,* introducing a Purpose. See Rule 41.
(2) *So that,* introducing a Consequence. See Rule 41.
(3) *Although, granting that.* Subjunctive, as—

Although the strength be wanting, yet the will is praiseworthy,
Ŭt dēsĭnt vīrēs tămĕn ēst laŭdāndă vŏlūntās.

(4) *When.* Indicative, as—

When he came, I went away,
Ut vēnĭt ăbĭī.

(5) *How.* See Rule 41 (Indirect Question).

Digitized by Google

Note.—In **Oratio Obliqua** (see p. 126), all the words in this list are followed by the **Subjunctive.** ("Dum" is sometimes an exception.) When a word introduces an **Indirect Question,** it is followed by the **Subjunctive.** (Rule 41.)

---

(6) *As.* Indicative, as—

Go on as you have begun,
Pĕrgĕ *ŭt* īnstĭtŭīstī.

(7) *Since* (of time). Indicative, as—

Since I have been in Pontus the Danube has thrice frozen,
Ŭt sŭmŭs in Pōntō tĕr frīgŏrĕ cōnstĭtĭt Īstĕr.

Vĕlŭt,
Vĕlŭtī,
Vĕlŭt sī, } *as if.* Subjunctive, as—

The fox is hastening as if dogs were pursuing,
Prŏpĕrăt vūlpēs *vĕlŭt sī* cănēs īnsĕquāntŭr.

Digitized by Google

LIST OF VERBS.

This List contains the Principal Verbs in common use, which are—

(1) *Irregular in their formation,*
(2) *Noteworthy in their construction.*

The figures refer to the Syntax Rules.

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
ābdĭcō	*abdicate*	ābdĭcārĕ	ābdĭcāvī	ābdĭcātum	*note*
ābdĭcō	*reject*	ābdĭcĕrĕ	ābdĭxī	ābdĭctum	6
ābdō	*remove* or *hide*	ābdĕrĕ	ābdĭdī	ābdĭtum	6
ăbĕō	*depart*	ăbīrĕ	ăbĭī *or* ăbīvī	ăbĭtum	*Intransitive*
ăbhŏrrĕō	*differ*	ăbhōrrērĕ	ăbhōrrŭī	—	*note*
ăblŭō	*wash*	āblŭĕrĕ	āblŭī	āblŭĭtum	6
ābnŭō	*refuse*	ābnŭĕrĕ	ābnŭī	ābnŭĭtum	6
ăbŏlĕō	*destroy*	ăbŏlērĕ	ăbŏlēvī	ăbŏlĭtum	6
ăbŏlĕscō	*decay*	ăbŏlēscĕrĕ	ăbŏlēvī	—	*Intransitive*
ābrŏgō	*repeal* or *deprive*	ābrŏgārĕ	ābrŏgāvī	ābrŏgātum	*note*
ābscīdō	*cut off*	ābscīdĕrĕ	ābscīdī	ābscīssum	6 *and* 13
ābsĭstō	*desist*	ābsĭstĕrĕ	ābstĭtī	—	33
ābsŏlvō	*absolve*	ābsŏlvĕrĕ	ābsŏlvī	ābsŏlūtum	11 *and note*
ābstĭnĕō	*restrain* or *abstain*	ābstĭnērĕ	ābstĭnŭī	ābstēntum	*note*
ābsum	*be absent* or *distant, be wanting*	ăbēssĕ	ăbfŭī	—	*note*
ăbūndō	*abound*	ăbūndārĕ	ăbūndāvī	ăbūndātum	27
ăbūtŏr	*abuse*	ăbūtī	ăbūsŭs sum	—	26
ăccēdō	*come*	āccēdĕrĕ	āccēssī	āccēssum	*note*
ăccĕlĕrō	*hasten*	āccĕlĕrārĕ	āccĕlĕrāvī	āccĕlĕrātum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
ăccēndō	*kindle*	āccēndĕrĕ	āccēndī	āccēnsum	6

Digitized by Google

NOTES ON THE VERBS.

ābdĭcō. Takes Accusative of the person abdicating an office, and Ablative of the office abdicated, as—

English—*I abdicate the consulship.*
Latin—*I remove myself from the consulship,*
Ābdĭcō mĕ cōnsŭlātū.

Also simply Accusative of the office abdicated, as—
Ābdĭcō cōnsŭlātum.

ăbhōrrĕō. Ablative with "ăb," as—
This plan differs greatly from that,
Hōc cōnsĭlĭum ăb īllō lōngē ăbhōrrĕt.

ābrŏgo.
(i) = "repeal" (6), as—
They repealed the law,
Lĕgem ābrŏgāvērūnt.

(ii) "deprive (of an office)," Accusative of the office and Dative of the person, as—
The Senate deprived my brother of his command,
Sĕnātŭs frātrī mĕō īmpĕrĭum ābrŏgāvĭt.

ābsōlvō. Also = "finish," and in this sense takes the Accusative.

ābstĭnĕō.
(i) Accusative and Ablative with or without "ăb," as—
I abstain from crime,
Mē scĕlĕrĕ ābstĭnĕō (i.e. *I restrain myself from crime*),
or Mē ā scĕlĕrĕ ābstĭnĕō.

(ii) Simply Ablative with or without "ăb," as—
I abstained from the rebellion,
Dēfēctĭōnĕ ābstĭnŭī,
or Ā dēfēctĭōnĕ ābstĭnŭī.

ābsum.
(i) = "am absent," takes the Ablative with "ăb," as—
He is absent from the city,
Ăb ūrbĕ ăbest.

(ii) = "am wanting to," takes the Dative, as—
That thing alone was wanting to me,
Ĕă rēs sōlă mĭhĭ ăbĕrăt.

āccēdō.
(i) = "come," Accusative with "ăd."
(ii) = "be added," either Acc. with "ăd," or Dat.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
ăccĭdō	*happen*	ăccĭdĕrĕ	ăccĭdī	—	*note*
ăccīdō	*cut*	ăccīdĕrĕ	ăccīdī	ăccīsum	6
ăccūmbō	*recline*	ăccūmbĕrĕ	ăccŭbŭī	ăccŭbĭtum	15 *or* *Intransitive*
ăccūsō	*accuse*	ăccūsārĕ	ăccūsāvī	ăccūsātum	6 *or* 11
ăcŭō	*whet*	ăcŭĕrĕ	ăcŭī	ăcūtum	6
ăddĭcō	*adjudge*	ăddĭcĕrĕ	ăddĭxī	ăddĭctum	13
ăddō	*add*	ăddĕrĕ	ăddĭdī	ăddĭtum	13
ădĕō	*approach*	ădīrĕ	ădĭī *or* ădīvī	ădĭtum	*Intransitive* *or* 6
ădhĭbĕō	*apply*	ădhĭbĕrĕ	ădhĭbŭī	ădhĭbĭtum	6
ădĭmō	*take away*	ădĭmĕrĕ	ădēmī	ădēmptum	13
ădĭpĭscŏr	*obtain*	ădĭpĭscī	ădēptŭs sum	—	6
ădjăcĕō	*lie near*	ădjăcērĕ	ădjăcŭī	—	15
ădjĭcĭō	*add*	ădjĭcĕrĕ	ădjēcī	ădjēctum	13
ădjūdĭcō	*award*	ădjūdĭcārĕ	ădjūdĭcāvī	ădjūdĭcātum	13
ădjŭvō	*help*	ădjŭvārĕ	ădjūvī	adjūtum	6
ădŏlĕō	*offer in sacrifice*	ădŏlērĕ	ădŏlŭī	ădŭltum	6
ădŏlēscō	*grow up*	ădŏlēscĕrĕ	ădŏlēvī	ădŭltum	*Intransitive*
ădŏrĭŏr	*attack*	ădŏrīrī	ădŏrtŭs sum	—	6
ădsum	*be present*	ădēssĕ	ādfŭī	—	14 *or* *Intransitive*
ădŭlŏr	*flatter*	ădŭlārī	ădŭlātŭs sum	—	6 *or* (*rarely*) 15
ădūrō	*burn*	ădūrĕrĕ	ădūssī	ădūstum	6
ădvĕnĭō	*approach*	ădvĕnīrĕ	ădvēnī	ădvēntum	6
ădvērsŏr	*oppose*	ădvērsārī	ădvērsātŭs sum	—	15
āēmŭlŏr	*rival*	āēmŭlārī	āēmŭlātŭs sum	—	6 *or* 15
āffĕrō	*bring to*	āffĕrrĕ	āttŭlī	āllātum	13
āffĭcĭō	*treat, visit,* or *affect*	āffĭcĕrĕ	āffēcī	āffectum	*note*
āfflĭgō	*dash against*	āfflĭgĕrĕ	āfflĭxī	āfflĭctum	13
āggĕrō	*heap up*	āggĕrārĕ	āggĕrāvī	āggĕrātum	6
āggĕrō	*bring*	āggĕrĕrĕ	āggēssī	āggēstum	6
āggrĕdĭŏr	*attack*	āggrĕdī	āggrēssŭs sum	—	6
āgnōscō	*recognize*	āgnōscĕrĕ	āgnōvī	āgnĭtum	6
āgō	*do*	ăgĕrĕ	ēgī	āctum	6
aīō	*say*	—	—	—	6 *or* 40
ālbĕō	*be white*	ālbērĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
ālgĕō	*be cold*	ālgērĕ	ālsī	—	*Intransitive*
ăllĭcĭō	*attract*	ăllĭcĕrĕ	ăllēxī	ăllēctum	6
ăllŏquŏr	*address*	ăllŏquī	ăllŏcūtŭs sum	—	6
ălō	*nourish*	ălĕrĕ	ălŭī	āltum	6
ămbĭō	*go round*	ămbīrĕ	āmbĭī and āmbīvī	āmbĭtum	6
ămĭcĭō	*clothe*	ămĭcīrĕ	—	ămīctum	6
ăngō	*vex*	ăngĕrĕ	—	—	6

Digitized by Google

āccĭdō. Is generally used of that which happens unfortunately.

(i) Dative, as—

A misfortune happened to me,
Călămĭtās mĭhĭ āccĭdĭt.

(ii) It is often used Impersonally, and then takes "ŭt" with Subjunctive, as—

It happened that I was away,
Āccĭdĭt ŭt ăbēssem.

The Verb is also used in its natural sense of "fall," and is then Intransitive.

āffĭcĭō. Takes Accusative of the person, Ablative of the thing, as—

He visits the boy with praise = he praises the boy,
Āffĭcĭt pŭĕrum lāūdĕ.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
ănĭmăd-vĕrtō	*perceive*	ănĭmăd-vĕrtĕrĕ	ănĭmādvĕrtī	ănĭmādvĕr-sum	*note*
ănnŭō	*assent* or *grant*	ănnŭĕrĕ	ănnŭĭ	ănnūtum	15 *or* 13
ăntĕĕō	*go before*	ăntĕīrĕ	ăntĕĭī *or* ăntĕīvī	—	6
ăntĕfĕrō	*prefer*	ăntĕfĕrrĕ	ăntĕtŭlī	ăntĕlātum	13
ăpĕrĭō	*open*	ăpĕrīrĕ	ăpĕrŭī	ăpĕrtum	6
ăppărĕō	*appear*	ăppărĕrĕ	ăppărŭī	ăppărĭtum	*Intransitive*
ăppĕllō	*call*	ăppĕllărĕ	ăppĕllāvī	ăppĕllātum	6
ăppĕllō	*bring towards*	ăppellĕrĕ	ăppŭlī	ăppŭlsum	13
ăpplĭcō	*bring near*	ăpplĭcārĕ	ăpplĭcāvī *and* ăpplĭcŭī	ăpplĭcātum	13
ăppōnō	*put to*	ăppōnĕrĕ	ăppŏsŭī	ăppŏsĭtum	13
ărcĕō	*keep off* or *keep off from*	ărcĕrĕ	ărcŭī	—	6 *or* 13
ărcĕssō	*summon*	ărcĕssĕrĕ	ărcĕssīvī	ărcĕssĭtum	6
ărdĕō	*burn*	ărdĕrĕ	ărsī	ărsum	*Intransitive*
ărgŭō	*convict*	ărgŭĕrĕ	ărgŭī	ărgūtum	11
ărrĭdĕō	*smile on* or *smile*	ărrīdĕrĕ	ărrĭsī	ărrĭsum	15 *or* *Intransitive*
ăscĕndō	*ascend* or *mount*	ăscĕndĕrĕ	ăscĕndī	ăscĕnsum	*Intransitive* *or* 6
ăscĭscō	*admit*	ăscĭscĕrĕ	ăscīvī	ăscĭtum	6
ăscrĭbō	*ascribe*	ăscrĭbĕrĕ	ăscrīpsī	ăscrīptum	13
ăspĕrnŏr	*disdain*	ăspĕrnārī	ăspĕrnātŭs sum	—	6
ăspĭcĭō	*see*	ăspĭcĕrĕ	ăspĕxī	ăspĕctum	6
ăssentĭŏr	*assent*	ăssĕntīrī	ăssĕnsŭs sum	—	15
ăssĕntŏr	*flatter*	ăssĕntārī	ăssĕntātŭs sum	—	15
ăssĕrō	*claim*	ăssĕrĕrĕ	ăssĕrŭī	ăssĕrtum	6
ăssĭdĕō	*sit by*	ăssĭdĕrĕ	ăssēdī	ăssēssum	15
ăssīstō	*stand by*	ăssīstĕrĕ	ăstĭtī	—	15 *or* *Intransitive*
ăssuēscō	*be wont*	ăssuēscĕrĕ	ăssuēvī	ăssuētum	33
ăssūrgō	*rise*	ăssūrgĕrĕ	ăssūrrēxī	ăssūrrēctum	*Intransitive*
ăttĕndō	*apply* or *attend*	ăttĕndĕrĕ	ăttĕndī	ăttĕntum	*note*
ăttĭngō	*reach*	ăttĭngĕrĕ	ăttĭgī	ăttăctum	6
āudĕō	*dare*	āudĕrĕ	āusŭs sum	—	33
āufĕrō	*take away*	āufĕrrĕ	ābstŭlī	ăblātum	6 *or* 13
āugĕō	*increase*	āugĕrĕ	āuxī	āuctum	6
āuxĭlĭŏr	*help*	āuxĭlĭārī	āuxĭlĭātŭs sum	—	15
ăvĕō	*desire*	ăvĕrĕ	—	—	6 *or* 33

Digitized by Google

ănĭmādvērtō.

(i) = "perceive." (6.)

(ii) = "inflict punishment," Accusative with "ĭn," as-

I will punish the robber,
Ănĭmādvērtam ĭn lătrōnem (*I will inflict punishment on the robber*).

āttēndō.

(i) = "apply" (6), as—

Apply your mind that you may understand,
Āttēndĕ ănĭmum ŭt īntĕllĭgās.

(ii) = "attend," Intransitive, as—

If you attend you will understand,
Sī āttēndēs īntĕllĭgēs.

(iii) = "attend to" (6), as—

Attend to the first line,
Prīmum vērsum āttēndĕ.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
ăvĕō	*be well*	ăvērĕ	—	—	*Intransitive see p.* 79
ăvērsŏr	*turn away from*	ăvērsārī	ăvērsātŭs sum	—	6
bĕnĕdĭcō	*bless*	bĕnĕdĭcĕrĕ	bĕnĕdĭxī	bĕnĕdĭctum	15
bĕnĕfĭcĭō	*benefit*	bĕnĕfĭcĕrĕ	bĕnĕfēcī	bĕnĕfăctum	15
bĭbō	*drink*	bĭbĕrĕ	bĭbī	*use* pōtum	6
blāndĭŏr	*flatter*	blāndīrī	blāndītŭs sum	—	15
cădō	*fall*	cădĕrĕ	cĕcĭdī	cāsum	*Intransitive*
cāēdō	*strike*	cāēdĕrĕ	cĕcīdī	cāēsum	6
cănō	*sing*	cănĕrĕ	cĕcĭnī	cāntum	*Intransitive or* 6
cāntō	*sing*	cāntārĕ	cāntāvī	cāntātum	*Intransitive or* 6
căpĕssō	*seize, go to, or undertake*	căpēssĕrĕ	căpēssīvī	căpēssītum	6
căpĭō	*take*	căpĕrĕ	cēpī	cāptum	6
cărĕō	*be without*	cărērĕ	cărŭī	cărĭtum	27
cārpō	*pluck*	cārpĕrĕ	cārpsī	cārptum	6
căvĕō	*beware of*	căvērĕ	cāvī	cāūtum	*note*
căvĭllŏr	*mock*	căvīllārī	căvīllātŭs sum	—	*Intransitive or* 6
cēdō	*yield*	cēdĕrĕ	cēssī	cēssum	15
cēlō	*keep in ignorance of or conceal*	cēlārĕ	cēlāvī	cēlātum	19 *or* 6
cēnō	*dine*	cēnārĕ	cēnāvī	cēnātum *note*	*Intransitive*
cēnsĕō	*think* (note)	cēnsērĕ	cēnsŭī	cēnsum	*note*
cērnō	*see*	cērnĕrĕ	—	—	6
cērtō	*strive*	cērtārĕ	cērtāvī	cērtātum	33 *or Intransitive*
cĭĕō	*rouse*	cĭĕrĕ	cīvī	cĭtum	6
cīngō	*surround*	cīngĕrĕ	cīnxī	cīnctum	6
cīrcūmdō	*surround*	cīrcūmdărĕ	cīrcūmdĕdī	cīrcūmdătum	*note*
cīrcūmĕō	*go round*	cīrcūmīrĕ	cīrcūmĭī *or* cīrcūmīvī	cīrcūĭtum	6
cīrcūmflŭō	*flow round*	cīrcūmflŭĕrĕ	cīrcūmflūxī	—	6
cīrcūmjĭcĭō	*throw round*	cīrcūmjĭcĕrĕ	cīrcūmjēcī	cīrcūmjēctum	13
cīrcūmscrĭbō	*enclose*	cīrcūmscrĭbĕrĕ	cīrcūmscrīpsī	cīrcūmscrīptum	6
cīrcūmsĕdĕō	*blockade*	cīrcūmsĕdērĕ	cīrcūmsēdī	cīrcūmsēssum	6
cīrcūmsīdō	*besiege*	cīrcūmsīdĕrĕ	—	—	6
cīrcūmsīstō	*stand round*	cīrcūmsīstĕrĕ	cīrcūmstĕtī	—	6 *or Intransitive*

Digitized by Google

căvĕō. Is followed

(i) by Accusative—

Beware of the dog,
Căvē cănēm.

(ii) By Ablative preceded by "ăb," as—

Beware of the dog,
Căvē ă cănĕ.

(iii) By "nē" with Subjunctive—

Beware of going,
or, *Beware lest you go,*
Căvē nē ĕās.

(iv) = "take care for" *or* "of" (15), as—

Have a care for the commonwealth,
Căvē rĕīpūblĭcāē.

cēnō has Perf. Part "cēnātŭs" used as Deponent = "having dined."

cēnsĕō.

(i) = "propose," Gerundive or "ŭt" with Subjunctive, as—

Cato proposed that Carthage should be destroyed,
Cātō Cārthāgĭnem dēlēndam ēssĕ cēnsŭĭt,
or, Cātō cēnsŭĭt ŭt Cārthāgō dēlērētŭr.

(ii) = "resolve." The same construction.

(iii) = "advise," Gerundive or Subjunctive without "ŭt," as—

He advised me to keep a horse,
Ĕquum mĭhĭ pāscēndum ēssĕ cēnsŭĭt.
I advise you to beware,
Cēnsĕō căvĕas.

(iv) = "think" or "suppose," Accusative and Infinitive, as—

Do you think that Cæsar was justly put to death?
Caēsărēmnĕ jūrĕ īntērfēctum ēssĕ cēnsēs?

cīrcūmdō.

(i) Accusative and Ablative, as—

I surround the city with a ditch,
Cīrcūmdō ūrbem fōssā.

(ii) Dative and Accusative—

English—*I surround the city with a ditch.*
Latin—*I put round the city a ditch,*
Cīrcūmdō ūrbī fōssam. (13.)

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
cīrcūm-spēctō	*lookroundor look round upon*	cīrcūm-spēctārĕ	cīrcūm-spēctāvī	cīrcūm-spēctātum	*Intransitive or* 6
cīrcūm-spĭcĭō	*look round, look round upon* or *consider*	cīrcūm-spĭcĕrĕ	cīrcūmspēxī	cīrcūm-spēctum	*Intransitive or* 6
cīrcūm-stō	*stand round*	cīrcūm-stārĕ	cīrcūmstĕtī	—	6 *or Intransitive*
cīrcūm-vĕhŏr	*ride around*	cīrcūm-vĕhī	cīrcūmvēc-tŭs sum	—	6
cīrcūm-vĕnĭō	*surround, distress,* or *defraud*	cīrcūm-vĕnīrĕ	cīrcūmvēnī	cīrcūmvēn-tum	6
clāūdō	*shut*	clāūdĕrĕ	clāūsī	clāūsum	6
cŏălēscō	*unite*	cŏălēscĕrĕ	cŏălŭī	cŏălĭtum	*Intransitive*
cŏĕō	*come together*	cŏīrĕ	cŏĭī *or* cŏīvī	cŏĭtum	*Intransitive*
cōēpī	*begin*	cōēpīssĕ	—	cōēptum	6 *and* 33
cŏērcĕō	*compel*	cŏērcērĕ	cŏērcŭī	cŏērcĭtum	6
cōgnōscō	*know*	cōgnōscĕrĕ	cōgnōvī	cōgnĭtum	6
cōgō	*force*	cōgĕrĕ	cŏēgī	cŏāctum	6 *note*
cŏhĭbĕō	*confine*	cŏhĭbērĕ	cŏhĭbŭī	cŏhĭbĭtum	6
cōllĭgō	*bind*	cōllĭgārĕ	cōllĭgāvī	cōllĭgātum	6
cōllĭgō	*collect*	cōllĭgĕrĕ	cōllēgī	cōllēctum	6
cōllŏquŏr	*parley*	cōllŏquī	cōllŏcūtŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
cŏlō	*till*	cŏlĕrĕ	cŏlŭī	cūltum	6
cōmmĭ-nīscŏr	*feign*	cōmmĭ-nīscī	cōmmēntŭs sum	—	6
cōmpēllō	*address*	cōmpēllārĕ	cōmpēllāvī	cōmpēllātum	6
cōmpēllō	*drive together*	cōmpēllĕrĕ	cōmpŭlī	cōmpūlsum	6
cōmpĕrĭō	*find out*	cōmpĕrīrĕ	cōmpĕrī	cōmpērtum	6
cōmpēscō	*check*	cōmpēscĕrĕ	cōmpēscŭī	—	6
cōm-plēctŏr	*embrace*	cōmplēctī	cōmplēxŭs sum	—	6
cōmplĕō	*fill*	cōmplērē	cōmplēvī	cōmplētum	6
cōmpōnō	*put together*	cōmpōnĕrĕ	cōmpŏsŭī	cōmpŏsĭtum	*note*
cōmprĕ-hēndō	*apprehend*	cōmprĕ-hēndĕrĕ	cōmprĕhēndī	cōmprĕhēn-sum	6
cōm-pūngō	*sting*	cōmpūn-gĕrĕ	cōmpūnxī	cōmpūnctum	6
cōncēdō	*yield*	cōncēdĕrĕ	cōncēssī	cōncēssum	*note*
cōncĭdō	*fall*	cōncĭdĕrĕ	cōncĭdī	—	*Intransitive*
cōncīdō	*cut to pieces*	cōncīdĕrĕ	cōncīdī	cōncīsum	6
cōncĭnō	*sing*	cōncĭnĕrĕ	cōncĭnŭī	—	6 *or Intransitive*
cōncūrrō	*run together*	cōncūrrĕrĕ	cōncūrrī	cōncūrsum	*Intransitive*
cōncŭtĭō	*shake*	cōncŭtĕrĕ	cōncūssī	cōncūssum	6

Digitized by Google

cōgō.

(i) = "force," Infinitive or "ŭt" with the Subjunctive, as—

He forced the Gauls to fight,
Cŏēgĭt Gāllōs pūgnārĕ (33),
or, Cŏēgĭt Gāllōs ŭt pūgnārēnt.

(ii) = "assemble." (6.)

He assembled the council,
Cōncĭlĭum cŏēgĭt.

cōmpōnō.

(i) = "put together" or "compose." (6.)

(ii) = "compare" (13.)

cōncēdō.

(i) = "yield," or "surrender oneself." (Intransitive or 15.)

(ii) = "yield" or "give." (6 or 13.)

(iii) = "withdraw oneself." (Intransitive.)

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
cōn-dĕmnō	*condemn*	cōndēm-nārĕ	cōndēmnāvĭ	cōndēm-nātum	6 *or* 11
cōndĭō	*season*	cōndīrĕ	cōndīvī *or* cōndĭī	cōndītum	6
cōndō	*build or hide*	cōndĕrĕ	cōndĭdī	cōndĭtum	6
cōndōnō	*pardon*	cōndōnārĕ	cōndōnāvī	cōndōnātum	13
cōnfĕrcĭō	*compress*	cōnfĕrcīrĕ	cōnfĕrsī	cōnfĕrtum	6
cōnfĕrō	*bring or compare*	cōnfĕrrĕ	cōntŭlī	cōllātum	6 *or* 13
cōnfĭdō	*trust*	cōnfīdĕrĕ	cōnfīsŭs sum	—	15 *or* 26 *or* 40
cōnfĭtĕŏr	*confess*	cōnfĭtērī	cōnfēssŭs sum	—	6
cōnflīgō	*combat*	cōnflīgĕrĕ	cōnflīxī	cōnflīctum	*Intransitive*
cōngrĕdĭŏr	*encounter*	cōngrĕdī	cōngrēssŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
cōngrŭō	*agree*	cōngrŭĕrĕ	cōngrŭī	—	15
cōnŏr	*try*	cōnārī	cōnātŭs sum	—	33
cōn-scēndō	*ascend, embark on, or embark*	cōnscēn-dĕrĕ	cōnscēndī	cōnscēnsum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
cōnscīscō	*to inflict*	cōnscīscĕrĕ	cōnscīvī	cōnscītum	13
cōnsēntĭō	*agree with*	cōnsēntīrĕ	cōnsēnsī	cōnsēnsum	15 *or* *Intransitive*
cōnsĕrō	*sow*	cōnsĕrĕrĕ	cōnsēvī	cōnsĭtum	6
cōnsĕrō	*join*	cōnsĕrĕrĕ	cōnsĕrŭī	cōnsĕrtum	6
cōnsīstō	*stand*	cōnsīstĕrĕ	cōnstĭtī	cōnstĭtum	*Intransitive*
cōnspĭcĭō	*see*	cōnspĭcĕrĕ	cōnspēxī	cōnspēctum	6
cōnspĭcŏr	*see*	cōnspĭcārī	cōnspĭcātŭs sum	—	6
cōn-stĕrnō	*affright*	cōn-stĕrnārĕ	cōnstĕrnāvī	cōnstĕr-nātum	6
cōn-stĕrnō	*bestrew*	cōn-stĕrnĕrĕ	cōnstrāvī	cōnstrātum	6
cōnstĭtŭō	*place* or *determine*	cōnstĭtŭĕrĕ	cōnstĭtŭī	cōnstĭtūtum	*note*
cōnstō	*be consistent*	cōnstārĕ	cōnstĭtī	cōnstātum	*note*
cōnsuēscō	*be wont*	cōnsuēs-cĕrĕ	cōnsuēvī	cōnsuētum	33
cōnsŭlō	*consult*	cōnsŭlĕrĕ	cōnsŭlŭī	cōnsŭltum	*note*
cōntĕndō	*strain* or *contend*	cōntĕndĕrĕ	cōntĕndī	contēntum	*note*

Digitized by Google

cōnstĭtŭō.

(i) = "place," "establish," or "settle." (6.)

(ii) = "resolve." (33.)

cōnstō.

(i) = "be consistent," Dative, or "cum" with Abl. as—

The speech is consistent with itself,
Ōrātĭō sĭbĭ (*or* sēcum) cōnstăt.

(ii) = "remain firm" (Intransitive), as—

I shall remain firm in this opinion,
Ĭn hāc sēntēntĭā cōnstābō.

(iii) Impersonal. "It is well known" (Intransitive), as—

It is well known to all that the war is being renewed,
Cōnstăt ăpŭd ōmnēs bĕllum rĕdīntĕgrārī.

(iv) Impersonal. "It is decided" (Dative).

I have decided to go away,
or, *I am determined to go away,*
Cōnstăt mĭhĭ ăbīrĕ.

The general is in doubt what he ought to do,
Dŭcī nōn cōnstăt quĭd făcĕrĕ dēbĕăt.

cōnsŭlō.

(i) = "consult for," "take thought for," "take care of" (15), as—

He took thought for the boy,
Cōnsŭlŭĭt pŭĕrō.

(ii) = "consult," "ask counsel of" (6), as—

He consulted his father,
Cōnsŭlŭĭt pătrem.

(iii) = "take measures against," Accus. with "ĭn," as—

He took strong measures against him,
Grăvĭtĕr ĭn ĕum cōnsŭlŭĭt.

cōntēndō.

(i) = "strain," as—

He strains his bow,
Ārcum cōntēndĭt.

(ii) = "contend," "cum" with Ablative, as—

He contends with the enemy,
Cōntēndĭt cum hŏstĕ.

(iii) = "ask," "ŭt" with Subjunctive, as—

I will ask him to defend me,
Cōntēndam ăb ĕō ŭt mē dēfēndăt.

(iv) = "endeavour" (33), as—

We were endeavouring to escape.
Effŭgĕrĕ cōntēndēbāmŭs.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
cōntĭngō	*touch*	cōntĭngĕrĕ	cōntĭgī	cōntāctum	*note*
cōntūndō	*crush*	cōntūndĕrĕ	cōntŭdī	cōntūsum	6
cōnvĕnĭō	*meet* or *agree*	cōnvĕnīrĕ	cōnvēnī	cōnvēntum	*note*
cŏquō	*cook*	cŏquĕrĕ	cōxī	cōctum	6
crēbrēscō	*increase*	crēbrēscĕrĕ	crēbrŭī	—	*Intransitive*
crēdō	*believe* or *entrust*	crēdĕrĕ	crēdĭdī	crēdĭtum	*note*
crĕpō	*rattle*	crĕpārĕ	crĕpŭī	crĕpĭtum	*Intransitive*
crēscō	*increase*	crēscĕrĕ	crēvī	crētum	*Intransitive*
cŭbō	*lie*	cŭbārĕ	cŭbŭī	cŭbĭtum	*Intransitive*
cŭpĭō	*desire*	cŭpĕrĕ	cŭpĭī *or* cŭpīvī	cŭpītum	6 *or* 33

Digitized by Google

cōntĭngō.

(i) = "touch." (6.)

(ii) = "reach" (poetical) (6), as—

I reached Crete,
Crētēn cōntĭgī.

(iii) = "befall" or "happen" (Dative, or Intransitive), as—

Many things befell me,
Mūltă mĭhĭ cōntĭgērūnt.
Many things happened favourably,
Mūltă bĕnĕ cōntĭgērūnt.

(iv) (Impersonal) = "it befalls" or "happens" (31), as—

It happened to me to go to Corinth,
Mĭhĭ Cŏrīnthum īrĕ cōntĭgĭt.

NOTE.—"Cōntĭngō" is generally used of that which happens favourably.

The Participle "cōntāctŭs" is sometimes used in the sense of "contaminated."

cōnvĕnĭō.

(i) = "come together" (Intransitive).

(ii) = "meet," "come to" (6), as—

The envoys met Cæsar,
Lēgātī Caēsărem cōnvēnērūnt.

(iii) = "be agreed upon" (Intransitive), as—

The signal which had been agreed upon was given,
Sīgnum, quŏd cōnvēnĕrăt, dătum ēst.

(iv) (Impersonal), "It is agreed" (Intransitive).

crēdō.

(i) = "entrust" (13), as—

I entrust a book to you,
or, *I entrust you with a book,*
Crēdō tĭbĭ lĭbrum.

(ii) = "I trust," or "believe" (15), as—

The soldiers trusted their general,
Mīlĭtēs dŭcī crēdĭdērūnt.
The Prætor believed the witness,
Prāētŏr tēstī crēdĭdĭt.

(iii) = "think" (40), as—

I think that Socrates was wise,
Sōcrătem săpĭēntem fŭĭssĕ crēdō.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
cūrō	*take care*	cūrārĕ	cūrāvī	cūrātum	*note*
cūrrō	*run*	cūrrĕrĕ	cŭcūrrī	cūrsum	*Intransitive* 18
dāmnō	*condemn*	dāmnārĕ	dāmnāvī	dāmnātum	11
dēbĕō	*owe* or *ought*	dēbērĕ	dēbŭī	dēbĭtum	6 *or* 33
dēcēdō	*depart*	dēcēdĕrĕ	dēcēsī	dēcēssum	*Intransitive*
dēcĕrnō	*decide*	dēcērnĕrĕ	dēcrēvī	dēcrētum	6 *or* 33
dēcĕō	*befit*	dēcērĕ	dēcŭī	—	*note*
dēcĭdō	*fall*	dēcĭdĕrĕ	dēcĭdī	—	*Intransitive*
dēcīdō	*cut down*	dēcīdĕrĕ	dēcīdī	dēcīsum	6
dēcĭpĭō	*deceive*	dēcĭpĕrĕ	dēcēpī	dēcēptum	6
dēcūrrō	*run down*	dēcūrrĕrĕ	dēcūrrī	dēcūrsum	*Intransitive*
dēcŭtĭō	*shake down*	dēcŭtĕrĕ	dēcūssī	dēcūssum	6
dēdō	*surrender*	dēdĕrĕ	dēdĭdī	dēdĭtum	13
dēfēndo	*defend*	dēfēndĕrĕ	dēfēndī	dēfēnsum	13
dēfĕrō	*bring down*	dēferrĕ	dētŭlī	dēlātum	13
dēfĕtīscŏr	*grow weary*	dēfĕtīscī	dēfessŭs sum	—	13
dēfĭcĭō	*fail*	dēfĭcĕrĕ	dēfēcī	dēfectum	*note*
dēgō	*spend*	dēgĕrĕ	dēgī	—	6
dēgrĕdĭŏr	*march down*	dēgrĕdī	dēgressŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
dējĭcĭō	*throw down*	dējĭcĕrĕ	dējēcī	dējēctum	6
dēlĕō	*blot out*	dēlērĕ	dēlēvī	dēlētum	6
dēlĭbĕrō	*consider*	dēlĭbĕrārĕ	dēlĭbĕrāvī	dēlĭbĕrātum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
dēlĭgō	*bind*	dēlĭgārĕ	dēlĭgāvī	dēlĭgātum	6
dēlĭgō	*select*	dēlĭgĕrĕ	dēlēgī	dēlēctum	6
dēlīnquō	*do wrong*	dēlīnquĕrĕ	dēlīquī	dēlīctum	*Intransitive*
dēmō	*take away*	dēmĕrĕ	dēmpsī	dēmptum	*note*
dēnsĕō	*thicken*	dēnsērĕ	—	dēnsētum	6
dēnsō	*thicken*	dēnsārĕ	dēnsāvī	dēnsātum	6
dēpĕllō	*drive away*	dēpĕllĕrĕ	dēpŭlī	dēpŭlsum	6
dērīdĕō	*mock*	dērīdērĕ	dērīsī	dērīsum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
dēscĭscō	*revolt*	dēscīscĕrĕ	dēscīvī *or* dēscĭī	dēscītum	*Intransitive*
dēsĕrō	*desert*	dēsĕrĕrĕ	dēsĕrŭī	dēsērtum	6
dēsĭnō	*cease*	dēsĭnĕrĕ	dēsĭī	dēsĭtum	*Intransitive* 6 *and* 33
dēsĭstō	*desist*	dēsīstĕrĕ	dēstĭtī	dēstĭtum	26 *or* 33
dēspĭcĭō	*despise*	dēspĭcĕrĕ	dēspēxī	dēspēctum	6
dēstĭtŭō	*desert*	dēstĭtŭĕrĕ	dēstĭtŭī	dēstĭtūtum	6
dēsum	*fail*	dēēssĕ	dēfŭī	—	14
dētrăhō	*draw off*	dētrăhĕrĕ	dētrāxī	dētrāctum	13
dētrēctō	*refuse* or *depreciate*	dētrēctārĕ	dētrēctāvī	dētrēctātum	6
dĭcō	*dedicate*	dĭcārĕ	dĭcāvī	dĭcātum	6
dĭcō	*say*	dīcĕrĕ	dīxī	dīctum	6

Digitized by Google

cūrō.

(i) = "take care of." (6.)

(ii) = "have (a thing done)," Gerundive, as—

He had a wall built,
Cūrāvĭt mūrum āēdĭfĭcāndum.

(iii) = "take care" (that) or "mind" (that), Subjunctive with or without "ŭt."

Take care that you keep in good health,
Cūrā ŭt vālĕās,
or, Cūrā vālĕās.

dĕcĕō.

(i) = "befit" (6), as—

A myrtle wreath befits you,
Mȳrtĕă sērtă tē dĕcēnt.

(ii) (Impersonal) = "it befits" (6) or (31), as—

It befits you to sing,
Tē cāntārĕ dĕcĕt.

NOTE.—In sense (i) the first and second persons are never used.

dēfĭcĭō.

(i) = "fail," "forsake" (6) or (15), as—

Words fail me,
Vērbă mē dēfĭcĭūnt,
or, mĭhĭ dēfĭcĭūnt.

(ii) = "fail," "be wanting" (Intransitive), as—

The supply of corn is failing,
Frūmēntī cōpĭă dēfĭcĭt.

dēmō, "take away."

(i) (Usually) Accusative and "dē" or "ăb" with Ablative, as—

I take this away from you,
Hōc ā tē dēmō.

(ii) Accusative and Dative.

(iii) (6.)

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
dĭffĕrō	*put off*	dĭffĕrrĕ	dĭstŭlī	dĭlātum	6
dĭgnŏr	*deem worthy*	dĭgnārī	dĭgnātŭs sum	—	*note*
dĭgrĕdĭŏr	*depart*	dĭgrĕdī	dĭgrĕssŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
dĭlĭgō	*love*	dĭlĭgĕrĕ	dĭlēxī	dĭlēctum	6
dĭlūcēscō	*grow light*	dĭlūcēscĕrĕ	dĭlūxī	—	*Intransitive*
dĭmĭcō	*fight*	dĭmĭcārĕ	dĭmĭcāvī *and* dĭmĭcŭī	dĭmĭcātum	*Intransitive*
dĭrĭmō	*interrupt* or *settle*	dĭrĭmĕrĕ	dĭrēmī	dĭrēmptum	6
dĭscernō	*distinguish*	dĭscernĕrĕ	dĭscrēvī	dĭscrētum	6
dĭscō	*learn*	dĭscĕrĕ	dĭdĭcī	—	6
dĭscrĕpō	*differ*	dĭscrĕpārĕ	dĭscrĕpŭī	—	*Intransitive*
dĭscūrrō	*run about*	dĭscūrrĕrĕ	dĭscūrrī *and* dĭscŭcūrrī	dĭscūrsum	*Intransitive*
dĭspĕrtĭō	*distribute*	dĭspĕrtīrĕ	dĭspĕrtīvī *and* dĭspĕrtĭī	dĭspĕrtītum	6
dĭssēntĭō	*disagree*	dĭssēntīrĕ	dĭssēnsī	dĭssēnsum	*Intransitive*
dĭssĕrō	*sow*	dĭssĕrĕrĕ	dĭssēvī	dĭssĭtum	6
dĭssĕrō	*discourse* or *discourse of*	dĭssĕrĕrĕ	dĭssĕrŭī	dĭssĕrtum	*Intransitive* or 6
dĭssĭdĕō	*disagree*	dĭssĭdĕrĕ	dĭssēdī	dĭssēssum	*Intransitive*
dĭstĭnguō	*distinguish*	dĭstinguĕrĕ	dĭstĭnxī	dĭstĭnctum	6
dĭstō	*differ*	dĭstārĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
dĭvĭdō	*divide*	dĭvĭdĕrĕ	dĭvīsī	dĭvīsum	6
dō	*give*	dărĕ	dĕdī	dătum	13
dŏcĕō	*teach*	dŏcĕrĕ	dŏcŭī	dŏctum	19
dŏmĭnŏr	*rule*	dŏmĭnārī	dŏmĭnātŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
dŏmō	*subdue*	dŏmārĕ	dŏmŭī	dŏmĭtum	6
dōnō	*present*	dōnārĕ	dōnāvī	dōnātum	*note*
dŏtō	*dower*	dōtārĕ	dōtāvī	dōtātum	6
dŭbĭtō	*doubt*	dŭbĭtārĕ	dŭbĭtāvī	dŭbĭtātum	*note*
dūrēscō	*become hard*	dūrēscĕrĕ	dūrŭī	—	*Intransitive*
ēdĭssĕrō	*relate*	ēdĭssĕrĕrĕ	ēdĭssĕrŭī	ēdĭssĕrtum	6
ĕdō	*eat*	ĕdĕrĕ	ēdī	ēsum	6, *see pp.* 64, 65
ēdō	*give forth*	ēdĕrĕ	ēdĭdī	ēdĭtum	6
ēdŭcō	*educate*	ēdŭcārĕ	ēdŭcāvī	ēdŭcātum	6
ēdŭcō	*lead forth*	ēdŭcĕrĕ	ēdūxī	ēdūctum	6
ēfferō	*carry forth*	ēfferrĕ	ēxtŭlī	ēlātum	6
ēfferō	*make savage*	ēfferārĕ	ēfferāvī	ēfferātum	6
ēfficĭō	*make*	ēfficĕrĕ	ēffēcī	ēffectum	*note*
ĕgĕō	*need*	ĕgĕrĕ	ĕgŭī	—	26
ēgrĕdĭŏr	*go forth*	ēgrĕdī	ēgrēssŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
ēlĭcĭō	*draw forth*	ēlĭcĕrĕ	ēlĭcŭī	ēlĭcĭtum	6

Digitized by Google

dīgnŏr.

(i) = "deem worthy," Accusative and Ablative, as—

I deem Cæsar worthy of praise,
Caēsărem lāudĕ dīgnŏr.

(ii) = "deign." (33.)

dōnō, "present." Either

(i) (13.)

or (ii) Accusative and Ablative, as—

I present my brother with a sword,
(i) Dōnō ēnsem frātrī,
(ii) Dōnō frātrem ēnsĕ.

dŭbĭtō.

(i) = "doubt" (Intransitive); for such phrases as "I doubt whether . . .," "I do not doubt that . . .," see "**Whether**" and "**That,**" in List of English Prepositions, &c.

(ii) = "hesitate" (33), as—

I do not hesitate to go,
Nōn dŭbĭtō īrĕ.

ēffĭcĭo.

(i) = "make" (6) or (20), as—

The carpenter made a ladder,
Făbĕr tīgnārĭŭs ēffēcĭt scālās.
His fellow citizens made Cicero consul,
Cīvēs Cĭcĕrōnem cōnsŭlem ēffēcērūnt.

(ii) = "cause," "bring to pass," Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," as—

Antonius caused Cicero to be put to death,
Āntōnĭus ēffēcĭt ŭt Cĭcĕrō īntērfĭcĕrētŭr.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
ēlĭdō	*crush*	ēlīdĕrĕ	ēlīsī	ēlīsum	6
ēlĭgō	*choose*	ēlĭgĕrĕ	ēlēgī	ēlēctum	6
ĕmō	*buy*	ĕmĕrĕ	ēmī	ēmptum	6
ēnĕcō	*destroy*	ēnĕcāre	ēnĕcŭī	ēnĕctum	6
ĕō	*go*	īrĕ	ĭī *or* īvī	ĭtum	*Intransitive* 18 *note*
ēvĕnĭō	*happen*	ēvĕnīrĕ	ēvēnī	ēvēntum	*note*
ēxcēdō	*depart*	ēxcēdĕrĕ	ēxcēssī	ēxcēssum	*Intransitive*
ēxcēllō	*excel*	ēxcēllĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive* or 15
ēxcĭdō	*fall out*	ēxcĭdĕrĕ	ēxcĭdī	—	*Intransitive*
ēxcīdō	*cut down*	ēxcīdĕrĕ	ēxcīdī	ēxcīsum	6
ēxcĭō	*call forth*	ēxcīrĕ	ēxcīvī *or* ēxcĭī	ēxcĭtum	6
ēxcūrrō	*run forth*	ēxcūrrĕrĕ	ēxcŭcūrrī	ēxcūrsum	*Intransitive*
ēxcŭtĭō	*shake off*	ēxcŭtĕrĕ	ēxcūssī	ēxcūssum	6
ēxĕō	*go forth*	ēxīrĕ	ēxĭī *or* ēxīvī	ēxĭtum	*Intransitive*
ēxērcĕō	*practise*	ēxērcĕrĕ	ēxērcŭī	ēxērcĭtum	6
ēxhĭbĕō	*show*	ēxhĭbērĕ	ēxhĭbŭī	ēxhĭbĭtum	6
ēxĭmō	*take away*	ēxĭmĕrĕ	ēxēmī	ēxēmptum	6
ēxŏrdĭŏr	*begin*	ēxōrdīrī	ēxōrsŭs sum	—	6 *or* 33
ēxŏrĭŏr	*arise*	ēxŏrīrī	ēxōrtŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
ēxpĕdĭō	*extricate*	ēxpĕdīrĕ	ēxpĕdīvī *or* ēxpĕdĭī	ēxpĕdĭtum	6
ēxpēllō	*expel*	ēxpēllĕrĕ	ēxpŭlī	ēxpūlsum	6
ēxpĕrgīscŏr	*awake*	ēxpĕrgīscī	ēxpĕrrēctŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
ēxpĕrĭŏr	*try*	ēxpĕrīrī	ēxpĕrtŭs sum	—	6
ēxplēō	*fill or satisfy*	ēxplērĕ	ēxplēvī	ēxplētum	6
ēxplĭcō	*unfold*	ēxplĭcārĕ	ēxplĭcāvī, *or* ēxplĭcŭī	ēxplĭcātum, ēxplĭcĭtum	6
ēxpōscō	*implore*	ēxpōscĕrĕ	ēxpŏpōscī	—	6 *or* 19
ēxsĕrō	*thrust out*	ēxsĕrĕrĕ	ēxsĕrŭī	ēxsērtum	6
ēxsĭstō	*be*	ēxsīstĕrĕ	ēxstĭtī	ēxstĭtum	*Intransitive*
ēxstīnguō	*quench*	ēxstīnguĕrĕ	ēxstīnxī	ēxstīnctum	6
ēxstō	*exist*	ēxstārĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
ēxtēndō	*spread*	ēxtēndĕrĕ	ēxtēndī	ēxtēntum	6
ēxtūndō	*beat out*	ēxtūndĕrĕ	ēxtŭdī	ēxtūsum	6
ēxŭō	*put off*	ēxŭĕrĕ	ēxŭī	ēxūtum	*note*
făcēssō	*execute* or *depart*	făcēssĕrĕ	făcēssī	făcēssītum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
făcĭō	*do*	făcĕrĕ	fēcī	fāctum	*note*
fallō	*deceive*	fallĕrĕ	fĕfēllī	—	6
fārcĭō	*cram*	fārcīrĕ	fārsī	fārtum	6
fātĕŏr	*confess*	fātērī	fāssŭs sum	—	6
fātĭscō	*crack* or *faint*	fātĭscĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
făvĕō	*favour*	făvērĕ	fāvī	fāūtum	15

Digitized by Google

ēvĕnĭō, "happen."

(i) Intransitive, as—

Many things of this sort have happened before,
Mūltă hūjūsmŏdī āntĕā ēvēnērūnt.

(ii) With Dative—

Many things happened to the army unexpectedly,
Mūltă ēxērcĭtŭī īmprōvīsō ēvēnērūnt.

(iii) Impersonal. Subjunctive with "ŭt," as Subject, as—

It happened that I returned into Italy,
Ēvēnĭt ŭt ĭn Ĭtălĭam rĕdīrem.

ēxŭō.

(i) = "strip off from" (13), as—

He strips off his garment (strips off his garment from himself),
Ēxŭĭt sĭbĭ vēstem.

(ii) = "bare of," "strip off," Accusative and Ablative, as—

He strips off his garment (strips himself of his garment),
Ēxŭĭt sē vēstĕ.

făcĭō.

(i) = "make." (6) or (20).

(ii) = "cause," Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," as—

We caused him to go away,
Fēcĭmŭs ŭt ăbīrĕt.

Note the phrase "făc vĕnĭās," &c., "be sure you come," &c.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
fĕrĭō	*strike*	fĕrīrĕ	*use* pĕrcūssī	*use* pĕrcūssum *or* ĭctum	6
fĕrĭŏr	*keep holiday*	fĕrĭārī	fĕrĭātŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
fĕrō	*bear*	fĕrrĕ	tŭlī	lātum	6
fĕrvĕō	*boil* or *rage*	fĕrvēre	fĕrbŭī, fĕrvī	—	*Intransitive*
fĭdō	*trust*	fīdĕrĕ	fĭsŭs sum	fĭsum	15
fĭgō	*fix*	fĭgĕrĕ	fĭxī	fĭxum	6
fĭndō	*split*	fĭndĕrĕ	fĭdī	fĭssum	6
fĭngō	*form*	fĭngĕrĕ	fĭnxī	fĭctum	*note*
fĭō	*become*	fĭĕrī	factŭs sum	—	7
flĕctō	*bend*	flĕctĕrĕ	flĕxī	flĕxum	6
flĕō	*weep*	flĕrĕ	flĕvī	flĕtum	*Intransitive*
flŭō	*flow*	flŭĕrĕ	flūxī	flūxum	*Intransitive*
fŏdĭō	*dig*	fŏdĕrĕ	fōdī	fŏssum	6
fŏvĕō	*cherish*	fŏvēre	fōvī	fōtum	6
frăngō	*break*	frăngĕrĕ	frēgī	frāctum	6
frĕmō	*murmur*	frĕmĕrĕ	frĕmŭī	frĕmĭtum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
frēndō	*gnash the teeth*	frēndĕrĕ	—	frēsum *or* frēssum	*Intransitive*
frĭcō	*chafe*	frĭcārĕ	frĭctŭī	frĭctum *or* frĭcātum	6
frīgēscō	*grow cold*	frīgēscĕrĕ	frīxī	—	*Intransitive*
frĭgō	*roast*	frĭgĕrĕ	—	frĭctum	6
frŭŏr	*enjoy*	frŭī	*use* ūsŭs sum	—	26
fŭgĭō	*fly from*	fŭgĕrĕ	fŭgī	fŭgĭtum	*note*
fŭlcĭō	*prop*	fŭlcīre	fŭlsī	fŭltum	6
fŭlgĕō	*shine*	fŭlgērĕ	fŭlsī	—	*Intransitive*
fŭndō	*found*	fŭndārĕ	fŭndāvī	fŭndātum	6
fŭndō	*pour*	fŭndĕrĕ	fūdī	fūsum	6
fŭngŏr	*perform*	fŭngī	fūnctŭs sum	—	26
fūrō	*rave*	fūrĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
fūrŏr	*steal*	fūrārī	fūrātŭs sum	—	6
gāudĕō	*rejoice*	gāudērĕ	gāvīsŭs sum	—	*note*
gĕmō	*groan*	gĕmĕrĕ	gĕmŭī	gĕmĭtum	*Intransitive*
gĕrō	*carry, carry on*	gĕrĕrĕ	gēssī	gēstum	6
gīgnō	*produce*	gīgnĕrĕ	gĕnŭī	gĕnĭtum	6
glōrĭŏr	*boast*	glōrĭārī	glōrĭātŭs sum	—	*note*
grădĭŏr	*go*	grădī	grēssŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
grātŏr	*congratulate*	grātārī	grātātŭs sum	—	*Intransitive* *or* 15
grātŭlŏr	*congratulate*	grātŭlārī	grātŭlātŭs sum	—	15
hăbĕō	*have*	hăbērĕ	hăbŭī	hăbĭtum	*note*
hāērĕō	*stick*	hāērēre	hāēsī	hāēsum	*Intransitive* *or* 15
haurĭō	*drain*	hāurīrĕ	hāūsī	hāūstum	6

Digitized by Google

fīngō.

(i) = "form." (6) or (20).

(ii) = "suppose" (6) or (40), as—

Suppose this to be so,
Fīngĕ hōc ĭtă ĕssĕ.

fŭgĭō.

(i) = "fly from." (6.)

(ii) = "flee" (Intransitive).

(iii) = "forbear" (33), as—

Forbear to inquire,
Fŭgĕ quāērĕrĕ.

(iv) = "escape the notice of," as—

The matter escaped Lycurgus' notice,
Rēs Lȳcūrgum fŭgĭt.

gāudĕō, "rejoice."

(i) with Ablative, as—

He delights in warfare,
Mīlĭtĭă gāudĕt.

(ii) (40), as—

I rejoice that you have returned,
Gāudĕō tē rĕdĭīssĕ.

(iii) (33.)

glōrĭŏr, "boast" (Intransitive, or (40), or Ablative with or without "dē" or "ĭn").

hăbĕō.

(i) = "have." (6.)

(ii) = "consider." (20.)

Note the phrase "Rēs ĭtă sē hăbĕt," *the matter stands thus.*

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
hĭscō	*mutter*	hĭscĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive or (rarely)* 6
hŏrrĕscō	*bristle* or *tremble*	hŏrrĕscĕrĕ	hŏrrŭī	—	*Intransitive*
ĭcō	*strike*	*use* fĕrīrĕ *or* pĕrcŭtĕrĕ	*use* pĕrcŭssī	īctum	6
ignōscō	*pardon*	ignōscĕrĕ	ignōvī	ignōtum	15
illĭcĭō	*entice*	illĭcĕrĕ	illĕxī	illĕctum	6
illĭnō	*smear*	illĭnĕrĕ	illēvī	illĭtum	6
ĭmbŭō	*moisten, imbue*	ĭmbŭĕrĕ	ĭmbŭī	ĭmbūtum	6
ĭmmĭnĕō	*overhang, menace*	ĭmmĭnērĕ	—	—	15
ĭmpĕdĭō	*hinder*	ĭmpĕdīrĕ	ĭmpĕdīvī *or* ĭmpĕdĭī	ĭmpĕdītum	6
ĭmpĕllō	*urge on*	ĭmpĕllĕrĕ	ĭmpŭlī	ĭmpŭlsum	*note*
ĭmpĕndō	*expend*	ĭmpĕndĕrĕ	ĭmpĕndī	ĭmpĕnsum	6
ĭmpĕrĭtō	*rule*	ĭmpĕrĭtārĕ	ĭmpĕrĭtāvī	ĭmpĕrĭtātum	15
ĭmpĕrō	*rule*	ĭmpĕrārĕ	ĭmpĕrāvī	ĭmpĕrātum	*note*
ĭmpĕrtĭō	*share with*	ĭmpĕrtīrĕ	ĭmpĕrtīvī *or* ĭmpĕrtĭī	ĭmpĕrtītum	13
ĭmpĭngō	*dash against*	ĭmpĭngĕrĕ	ĭmpĕgī	ĭmpāctum	13
ĭmplĕō	*fill*	ĭmplērĕ	ĭmplēvī	ĭmplētum	6
ĭmplĭcō	*infold*	ĭmplĭcārĕ	ĭmplĭcāvī *or* ĭmplĭcŭī	ĭmplĭcātum *or* ĭmplĭcĭtum	6
ĭmpōnō	*place on*	ĭmpōnĕrĕ	ĭmpŏsŭī	ĭmpŏsĭtum	13
ĭmpūgnō	*attack*	ĭmpūgnārĕ	ĭmpūgnāvī	ĭmpūgnātum	6
ĭncēndō	*inflame*	ĭncēndĕrĕ	ĭncēndī	ĭncēnsum	6
ĭncĭdō	*fall on*	ĭncĭdĕrĕ	ĭncĭdī	—	*Intransitive or* 15
ĭncīdo	*cut*	ĭncīdĕrĕ	ĭncīdī	ĭncīsum	6
ĭncĭpĭō	*begin*	ĭncĭpĕrĕ	ĭncēpī	ĭncēptum	6 *or* 33
ĭncrĕpĭtō	*upbraid*	ĭncrĕpĭtārĕ	ĭncrĕpĭtāvī	ĭncrĕpĭtātum	6
ĭncrĕpō	*reprove*	ĭncrĕpārĕ	ĭncrĕpŭī	ĭncrĕpĭtum	6
ĭncŭmbō	*lie upon* or *be devoted to*	ĭncŭmbĕrĕ	ĭncŭbŭī	ĭncŭbĭtum	*Intransitive or* 15
ĭncŭrrō	*rush in*	ĭncŭrrĕrĕ	ĭncŭrrī *and* ĭncŭcŭrrī	ĭncŭrsum	*note*
ĭncūsō	*accuse*	ĭncūsārĕ	ĭncūsāvī	ĭncūsātum	11
ĭncŭtĭō	*inflict*	ĭncŭtĕrĕ	ĭncūssī	ĭncūssum	13
ĭndĭcō	*point out*	ĭndĭcārĕ	ĭndĭcāvī	ĭndĭcātum	6
ĭndĭcō	*proclaim* or *declare (war) against*	ĭndĭcĕrĕ	ĭndĭxī	ĭndĭctum	6 *or* 13
ĭndĭgĕō	*need*	ĭndĭgērĕ	ĭndĭgŭī	—	27
ĭndō	*name*	ĭndĕrĕ	ĭndĭdī	ĭndĭtum	6

Digitized by Google

īmpĕllō, "urge on."

(i) (6.)

(ii) (6) and "ŭt" with Subjunctive, as—

Hunger urged the citizens to surrender their city,
Fămēs īmpŭlĭt cīvēs ŭt ūrbem dēdĕrēnt.

īmpĕrō.

(i) (15), as—

He rules others,
Īmpĕrăt ălĭīs.

(ii) = "order," Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē."

Cæsar ordered that the cavalry should start,
Cāēsăr īmpĕrāvĭt ŭt ĕquĭtātŭs prŏfĭcīscĕrētŭr.

(iii) = "requisition" (13), as—

The general requisitioned corn from the province.
Dūx frūmēntum prōvĭnclāē īmpĕrāvĭt.

īncūrrō.

(i) = "rush in." (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "fall" (into). (Intransitive.)

(iii) = "befall." (Intransitive.)

NOTE.—In all these senses "īncūrrō" is generally followed by "ĭn" with the Accusative.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
Indŭlgĕō	*indulge*	īndŭlgērĕ	īndŭlsī	īndŭltum	13 *or* 15
Indŭō	*put on*	īndŭĕrĕ	īndŭī	īndūtum	*note*
Ĭnĕō	*enter*	ĭnīrĕ	ĭnĭī *or* ĭnīvī	ĭnĭtum	6
Īnfĕrō	*bring in*	īnfĕrrĕ	īntŭlī	īllātum	*note*
Īnfĭcĭō	*stain*	īnfĭcĕrĕ	īnfēcī	īnfectum	6
Īnflīgō	*inflict*	īnflīgĕrĕ	īnflīxī	īnflīctum	6 *or* 13
Īngrĕdĭŏr	*enter*	īngrĕdī	{īngrēssŭs sum}	—	6
Īngrŭō	*assail*	īngrŭĕrĕ	īngrŭī	—	*Intransitive*
Ĭnhĭbĕō	*check*	ĭnhĭbērĕ	ĭnhĭbŭī	ĭnhĭbĭtum	6
Īnsĭdĕō	{*sit on*, or *occupy*}	īnsĭdērĕ	īnsēdī	īnsēssum	15 *or* 6
Īnsĭdĭŏr	{*lie in wait for*}	īnsĭdĭārī	{īnsĭdĭātŭs sum}	—	15
Īnsĭlĭō	*leap upon*	īnsĭlīrĕ	īnsĭlŭī	—	{*Intransitive* 6 *or* 15}
Īnsĭmŭlō	*accuse*	īnsĭmŭlārĕ	īnsĭmŭlāvī	īnsĭmŭlātum	11
Īnsīstō	*press upon*	īnsīstĕrĕ	īnstĭtī	—	{15 *or* *Intransitive*}
Īnspĭcĭō	*examine*	īnspĭcĕrĕ	īnspēxī	īnspēctum	6
Īnstĭtŭō	*institute*	īnstĭtŭĕrĕ	īnstĭtŭī	īnstĭtūtum	*note*
Īnstō	*pursue*	īnstārĕ	īnstĭtī	īnstātum	*note*
Īnstrŭō	{*draw up* or *furnish*}	īnstrŭĕrĕ	īnstrūxī	īnstrūctum	6
Īnsum	*be in*	ĭnēssĕ	—	—	{14 *or* *Intransitive*}
Īntĕrcēdō	*intervene*	īntĕrcēdĕrĕ	īntĕrcēssī	īntĕrcēssum	*note*
Īntĕrcĭdō	*perish*	īntĕrcĭdĕrĕ	īntĕrcĭdī	—	*Intransitive*
Īntĕrcīdō	*cut*	īntĕrcīdĕrĕ	īntĕrcīdī	īntĕrcīsum	6
Īntĕrdĭcō	*forbid*	īntĕrdĭcĕrĕ	īntĕrdīxī	īntĕrdĭctum	*note*
Īntĕrĕō	*perish*	īntĕrīrĕ	īntĕrĭī	īntĕrĭtum	*Intransitive*
Īntĕr-fĭcĭō	*kill*	īntĕrfĭcĕrĕ	īntĕrfēcī	īntĕrfectum	6
Īntĕrĭmō	*kill*	īntĕrĭmĕrĕ	īntĕrēmī	īntĕrēmptum	6
Īntĕrpĕllō	*interrupt*	{īntĕrpēl-lārĕ}	īntĕrpēllāvī	{īntĕrpēl-lātum}	6

Digitized by Google

īndŭō.

(i) = "put on" (13), as—

I put a robe on my body,
Īndŭō vēstem cōrpŏrī.

(ii) = "clothe," Accusative and Ablative—

I clothe my body with a robe,
Īndŭō cōrpŭs vēstĕ.

NOTE.—In the Passive, an Accusative of the thing "put on" may be used, as—

Maidens clothed in long robes,
Vīrgĭnēs lōngās vēstēs īndūtāē.

īnfĕrō.

(i) = "introduce." (6) or (13).

(ii) = "advance" (standards) or "wage" (war) (13), as—

Cæsar waged war against Britain,
Cāēsăr Brĭtānnĭāē bellum īntŭlĭt.

īnstĭtŭō.

(i) = "institute" or "construct." (6.)

(ii) = "begin" or "determine." (33.)

(iii) = "educate" (6) or (poetical) (33).

īnstō.

(i) = "impend." (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "press upon." (15.)

īntĕrcēdō.

(i) = "intervene," Intransitive, as—

There was a marsh intervening,
Pălūs īntĕrcēdēbăt.

A year had intervened,
Ānnūs īntĕrcēssĕrăt.

(ii) = "interpose a veto against," Dative, as—

The tribunes will veto the bill,
Trĭbūnī plēbĭs rŏgātĭōnī īntĕrcēdēnt.

īntĕrdĭcō.

(i) = "forbid," Dative and Ablative, as—

He forbade Catilina the city,
Cătĭlīnāē ūrbĕ īntĕrdīxĭt.

(ii) Subjunctive with "nē," as—

He forbade anyone to enter the house.
Īntĕrdīxĭt nē quĭs ĭn dŏmum ĭnīrĕt.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
Intĕrsum	*be among*	īntĕrēssĕ	īntĕrfŭī	—	*note*
Intĕr-vĕnĭō	*interrupt*	{īntĕrvĕ-nīrĕ}	īntĕrvēnī	īntĕrvēntum	15
Intrŏĕō	*enter*	īntrŏīrĕ	{īntrŏĭī *or* īntrŏīvī}	īntrŏĭtum	{*Intransitive or* 6}
Invādō	*attack*	īnvādĕrĕ	īnvāsī	īnvāsum	*note*
Invĕnĭō	*find*	īnvĕnīrĕ	īnvēnī	īnvēntum	6
Invĭdĕō	*envy*	īnvĭdērĕ	īnvīdī	īnvīsum	15
Invĭgĭlō	{*keep watch over*}	īnvĭgĭlārĕ	īnvĭgĭlāvī	īnvĭgĭlātum	15
Īrāscŏr	*be angry with*	īrāscī	īrātŭs sum	—	{15 *or* *Intransitive*}
Īrrĭdĕō	*mock*	īrrīdērĕ	īrrīsī	īrrīsum	{6 *or* *Intransitive*}
jăcĕō	*lie*	jăcērĕ	jăcŭī	—	*Intransitive*
jăcĭō	*throw*	jăcĕrĕ	jēcī	jāctum	6
jŭbĕō	*order*	jŭbērĕ	jūssī	jūssum	*note*
jūngō	*join*	jūngĕrĕ	jūnxī	jūnctum	*note*
jūrō	*swear*	jūrārĕ	jūrāvī	jūrātum *note*	{*Intransitive or* 40}

Digitized by Google

īntērsum.

(i) = "be among" (14), as—

Ajax was among the Greeks,
Ājāx īntĕrĕrăt Grāēcīs.

(ii) = "be a difference," "īntĕr" with Accusative, as—

There is this chief difference between man and brute,
Īntĕr hŏmĭnem ĕt bēlŭam hōc măxĭmē īntĕrēst.

(iii) Impersonal. "It concerns," Genitive, as—

It concerns all,
Ōmnĭum īntĕrēst.

NOTE.—Instead of

"mĕī," "tŭī," "sŭī," "nōstrī," "vēstrī;"
"mĕā," "tŭā," "sŭā," "nōstrā," "vēstrā,"

are used, as—

It concerns me,
Mĕā īntĕrēst.

īnvādō.

(i) = "attack." (6.)
(ii) = "make an attack." (Intransitive.)

jŭbĕō, "order," usually takes the Accusative and Infinitive, as—

We ordered him to come,
Jūssĭmŭs ĕum vĕnīrĕ.

jūngō (1) = "unite" (6), as—

Venus joined the lovers,
Vĕnŭs jūnxĭt ămāntēs.

(2) = "join to" (13), as—

Nero joined his troops to the army of Livius,
Nĕrō sŭās cōpĭās Līvĭī ēxĕrcĭtŭī jūnxĭt.

(3) Notice particularly that such English sentences as—

Cæsar joined Pompey

must be rendered in Latin either by (13), as—

Cāēsăr Pōmpēiō sē jūnxĭt.
(*lit.*) *Cæsar joined himself to Pompey,*

or by a passive verb, as—

Cāēsăr Pōmpēiō jūnctŭs ēst.

jūrō has Perfect Participle "jūrātŭs" used as deponent = "having sworn."

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
jŭvō	*delight*	jŭvārĕ	jūvī	jūtum	*note*
lăbĕfăcĭō	*shake*	lăbĕfăcĕrĕ	lăbĕfēcī	lăbĕfactum	6
lăbō	*totter* or *waver*	lăbārĕ	lăbāvī	lăbātum	*Intransitive*
lăbŏr	*glide*	lābī	lāpsŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
lăcēssō	*assail*	lăcēssĕrĕ	lăcēssīvī	lăcēssītum	6
lāēdō	*hurt*	lāēdĕrĕ	lāēsī	lāēsum	6
lāētŏr	*rejoice*	lāētārī	lāētātŭs sum	—	*note*
lămbō	*lick*	lămbĕrĕ	lămbī	—	6
lăn-gūēscō	*become faint*	lăngūēs-cĕrĕ	lăngŭī	—	*Intransitive*
lărgĭŏr	*bestow*	lărgīrī	lărgītŭs sum	—	6
lăscīvĭō	*frisk*	lăscīvīrĕ	lăscīvĭī	lăscīvītum	*Intransitive*
lăvō	*wash*	lăvārĕ *or* lăvĕrĕ	lāvī	lăvātum, lāūtum *or* lōtum	6
lĕgō	*choose* or *read*	lĕgĕrĕ	lēgī	lēctum	6
lēgō	*depute*	lēgārĕ	lēgāvī	lēgātum	6
lĭbĕt	*it pleases*	lĭbĕrĕ	lĭbŭĭt *or* lĭbĭtum ēst	—	*Intransitive* *or* 15. *See* 31
lĭcĕŏr	*bid* or *bid for*	lĭcērī	lĭcĭtŭs sum	—	*Intransitive* *or* 6
lĭcĕt	*it is lawful*	lĭcērĕ	lĭcŭĭt *or* lĭcĭtŭm ēst	—	*note*
lĭnō	*smear*	lĭnĕrĕ	lēvī *or* līvī	lĭtum	6
lĭnquō	*leave*	lĭnquĕrĕ	lĭquī	—	6
lĭquĕ-făcĭō	*melt*	lĭquĕfă-cĕrĕ	lĭquĕfēcī	lĭquĕfactum	6
lĭquēscō	*melt*	lĭquēscĕrĕ	lĭcŭī	—	*Intransitive*
lĭquō	*filter*	lĭquārĕ	lĭquāvī	lĭquātum	6
lŏquŏr	*speak*	lŏquī	lŏcūtŭs sum	—	6 *or* *Intransitive*
lūcĕō	*shine*	lūcērĕ	lūxī	—	*Intransitive*
lūdō	*play*	lūdĕrĕ	lūsī	lūsum	*Intransitive* 18
lūgĕō	*mourn*	lūgērĕ	lūxī	lūctum	*Intransitive* *or* 6
lŭō	*expiate*	lŭĕrĕ	lŭī	—	*note*
māērĕō	*mourn*	māērērĕ	—	—	*Intransitive* *or* 6
mălĕdĭcō	*abuse*	mălĕdĭcĕrĕ	mălĕdīxī	mălĕdĭctum	15
mālō	*prefer*	māllĕ	mālŭī	—	*note*

Digitized by Google

jŭvō.

(i) = "help." (6.)

(ii) = "delight." (6.)

(iii) Impersonal. "Delight" (31), as—

It delights me to remember,
Mĕmĭnĭssĕ mē jŭvăt.

lāētŏr.

(i) Ablative, as—

I rejoice at your success.
Lāētŏr prōspĕrĭtātĕ tŭā.

(ii) Intransitive.

(iii) (40), as—

I rejoice that you are well,
Lāētŏr tē vălērĕ.

lĭcĕt, "it is allowed."

(i) Dative, as—

It is allowed to me,
Lĭcĕt mĭhĭ.

(ii) Infinitive as Subject, as—

I am allowed to be at leisure,
Lĭcĕt mĭhĭ ēssĕ ōtĭōsō.

(iii) Subjunctive with or without "ŭt," as Subject, as—

I am allowed to be at leisure,
Lĭcĕt mĭhĭ ŭt sim ōtĭōsŭs.

lŭō.

(i) = "expiate" (6), as—

I expiate my crime,
Lŭō scĕlŭs.

(ii) = "suffer" (6), as—

I suffer the penalty,
Lŭō pōēnās.

mālō, "prefer."

(i) (33), as—

I prefer to be a slave rather than to fight,
Sērvīrĕ quam pūgnārĕ mālō.

(ii) (6), as—

I should prefer this.
Hōc māllem.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
māndō	*enjoin*	māndārĕ	māndāvī	māndātum	*note*
māndō	*chew*	māndĕrĕ	māndī	mānsum	6
mănĕō	*remain* or *await*	mănērĕ	mānsī	mānsum	*Intransitive* or 6
mānō	*flow*	mānārĕ	mānāvī	mānātum	*Intransitive*
mātūrēscō	*ripen*	mātūrēscĕrĕ	mātūrŭī	—	*Intransitive*
mĕdĕŏr	*cure*	mĕdērī	—	—	15
mĕmĭnī	*remember*	mĕmĭnīssĕ	—	—	*note*
mēntĭŏr	*tell lies*	mēntīrī	mēntītŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
mĕrĕō **mĕrĕŏr**	*deserve*	mĕrērĕ mĕrērī	mĕrŭī mĕrĭtŭs sum	mĕrĭtum —	*note*
mĕrgō	*plunge*	mĕrgĕrĕ	mĕrsī	mĕrsum	6
mĕtĭŏr	*measure*	mĕtīrī	mēnsŭs sum	—	6
mĕtō	*reap*	mĕtĕrĕ	mēssŭī	mēssum	6
mĕtŏr	*measure*	mĕtārī	mĕtātŭs sum	—	6
mĕtŭō	*fear*	mĕtŭĕrĕ	mĕtŭī	—	*note*
mĭcō	*quiver* or *flash*	mĭcārĕ	mĭcŭī	—	*Intransitive*
mĭnŏr	*threaten*	mĭnārī	mĭnātŭs sum	—	*note*

Digitized by Google

māndō.

(i) = "order" (15), and Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," as—

Cæsar ordered Labienus to remain in Gaul,
Cāesăr Lăbĭēnō māndāvĭt ŭt ĭn Gāllĭā mānērĕt.

(ii) = "entrust" or "commit," as—

We commit seed to the ground,
Sēmĕn tērrāē māndāmŭs.

mĕmĭnī, "remember" (12) or (6) or (40), e.g.—

I remember the tune,
Mĕmĭnī nūmĕrōrum, *or* nūmĕrōs.
I remember that the sun was eclipsed,
Mĕmĭnī sōlem dēfĭcĕrĕ.

mĕrĕō.

(i) = "deserve," Accusative or Subjunctive with "ŭt," as—

I deserve praise,
Mĕrĕō lāudem,
or Mĕrĕō ŭt lāudĕr.

(ii) = "earn" (pay). (6.)

(iii) = "earn pay" or "serve in the army." (Intransitive.)

(iv) "Mĕrĕŏr" (Deponent) with Adverbs "bĕnĕ," "mălĕ," &c., and followed by Ablative with "dē," means "deserve well or ill, &c., of," as—

A citizen who has deserved very well of the state,
Cīvĭs dē rēpūblĭcā ōptĭmē mĕrĭtŭs.

NOTE.—"Mĕrĕŏr" is also used in the senses (i) and (ii).

mĕtŭō, "fear."

(i) (6.)

(ii) Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," according as the Dependent Clause in English is Negative or Positive, as—

I fear he will not come,
Mĕtŭō ŭt vĕnĭăt.
I fear he will come,
Mĕtŭō nē vĕnĭăt.

mĭnŏr, "threaten" (13), as—

English—*I threaten him with death,*
Latin—*I threaten death to him,*
Mĭnŏr mōrtem ĕī.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
mĭnŭō	*diminish*	mĭnŭĕrĕ	mĭnŭī	mĭnūtum	6
mĭscĕō	*mix*	mĭscĕrĕ	mĭscŭī	mĭxtum	6
mĭsĕrĕŏr	*pity*	mĭsĕrĕrī	{mĭsĕrĭtŭs sum}	—	12
mĭsĕrĕt	*it pities*	mĭsĕrĕrĕ	—	—	10
mĭttō	*send*	mĭttĕrĕ	mĭsī	mĭssum	6
mōlĭŏr	*attempt*	mōlĭrī	mōlĭtŭs sum	—	*note*
mŏlō	*grind*	mŏlĕrĕ	mŏlŭī	mŏlĭtum	6
mŏnĕō	{*advise* or *warn*}	mŏnĕrĕ	mŏnŭī	mŏnĭtum	*note*
mŏrdĕō	*bite*	mŏrdĕrĕ	mŏmŏrdī	mŏrsum	6
mŏrĭŏr	*die*	mŏrī	mŏrtŭŭs sum	*note*	*Intransitive*
mŏrŏr	*delay*	mŏrārī	mŏrātŭs sum	—	*note*
mŏvĕō	*move*	mŏvĕrĕ	mŏvī	mŏtum	6, *note*
mŭlcĕō	*soothe*	mŭlcĕrĕ	mŭlsī	mŭlsum	6
mŭtō	*change*	mŭtārĕ	mŭtāvī	mŭtātum	*note*
nāncĭscŏr	*obtain*	nāncĭscī	nāctŭs sum	—	6
nāscŏr	*be born*	nāscī	nātŭs sum	—	*note*

Digitized by Google

mōlĭŏr.

(i) = "work at," or "work," as—

We work the ground,
Mōlīmŭr tērram.

(ii) = "strive to do" (or "produce") (6), as—

He strives to produce a revolt,
Mōlītŭr dēfēctĭōnem.

mŏnĕō.

(i) of a fact. Accusative of Person, followed by Accusative and Infinitive, as—

I warned him that the house was on fire,
Mŏnŭī ĕum āēdēs ārdērĕ.

NOTE.—Instead of the Accusative and Infinitive, a Neuter Pronoun is sometimes found, as—

I will do as you advise me,
Quŏd mē mŏnēs, făcĭam.

(ii) of a purpose. Accusative and "ŭt" or "nē" with Subjunctive, as—

I advised him not to go to Rome,
Mŏnŭī ĕum nē Rōmam īrĕt.

mŏrĭŏr has Future Participle "mŏrĭtūrŭs."

mŏrŏr.

(i) = "delay." (6.)

(ii) = "loiter," "tarry." (Intransitive.)

mŏvĕō, "move." (6.)

NOTE.—"Move" in English is often Intransitive, and must then be rendered by "mŏvĕŏr" or "mē mŏvĕō."

mūtō.

(i) = "change." (6.)

(ii) = "exchange," Accusative and Ablative, or Ablative and Accusative, as—

I exchange a sword for a helmet,
Mūtō ēnsem cāssĭdē,
or, Mūtō cāssĭdem ēnsē.

nāscŏr.

(i) = "am born." (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "am born of," Ablative with or without "ēx" or "dē."

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
nĕcō	*kill*	nĕcārĕ	nĕcāvī	nĕcātum	6
nĕglĕgō	*neglect*	nĕglĭgĕrĕ	nĕglēxī	nĕglēctum	6
nĕō	*spin*	nĕrĕ	nēvī	—	6
nĕquĕō	*be unable*	nĕquīrĕ	nĕquīī *or* nĕquīvī	—	33, *see pp.* 74, 75
nescĭō	*am ignorant*	nēscīrĕ	nēscīī *or* nēscīvī	—	*note*
nĭngĭt	*it snows*	nĭngĕrĕ	nĭnxĭt	—	*Intransitive*
nĭtŏr	*strive* or *lean*	nĭtī	nĭxŭs sum *or* nĭsŭs sūm	—	*note*
nŏcĕō	*hurt*	nŏcērĕ	nŏcŭī	nŏcĭtum	15
nōlō	*am unwilling*	nōllĕ	nōlŭī	—	33
nōscō	*learn*	nōscĕrĕ	nōvī	nōtum	*note*
nūbō	*marry (a man)*	nūbĕrĕ	nūpsī	nūptum	15
ŏbdō	*close*	ōbdĕrĕ	ōbdĭdī	ōbdĭtum	6
ŏbĕō	*perform*	ŏbīrĕ	ŏbīī *or* ŏbīvī	ŏbĭtum	*note*
ŏblĭnō	*smear*	ōblĭnĕrĕ	ōblēvī	ōblĭtum	6
ŏblīvīscŏr	*forget*	ōblīvīscī	ōblītŭs sum	—	12
ŏbōēdĭō	*obey*	ŏbōēdĭrĕ	ŏbōēdīī *or* ŏbōēdīvī	ŏbōēdītum	15
ŏbrĕpō	*steal upon*	ōbrĕpĕrĕ	ōbrĕpsī	ōbrĕptum	*Intransitive or* 15
ŏbrŭō	*overwhelm*	ōbrŭĕrĕ	ōbrŭī	ōbrŭtum	6
ŏbsĕquŏr	*obey*	ōbsĕquī	ōbsĕcūtŭs sum	—	15
ŏbsĕrō	*fasten*	ōbsĕrārĕ	ōbsĕrāvī	ōbsĕrātum	6
ŏbsĕrō	*cover*	ōbsĕrĕrĕ	ōbsēvī	ōbsĭtum	6
ŏbsĭdĕō	*beset*	ōbsĭdērĕ	ōbsēdī	ōbsēssum	6
ŏbsĭstō	*oppose*	ōbsīstĕrĕ	ōbstĭtī	ōbstĭtum	*note*
ŏbstō	*oppose*	ōbstārĕ	ōbstĭtī	—	*note*
ŏbstrĕpō	*roar*	ōbstrĕpĕrĕ	ōbstrĕpŭī	ōbstrĕpĭtum	*Intransitive*
ŏbsum	*injure*	ŏbēssĕ	ōbfŭī	—	14
ŏbtĭnĕō	*hold*	ōbtĭnērĕ	ōbtĭnŭī	ōbtēntum	6
ŏbtĭngō	*befall*	ōbtĭngĕrĕ	ōbtĭgī	—	15
ŏbtūndō	*weaken*	ōbtūndĕrĕ	ōbtŭdī	ōbtūsum *or* ōbtūnsum	6
ŏbvĕnĭō	*befall*	ōbvĕnīrĕ	ōbvēnī	ōbvēntum	15
ŏbvĕrtō	*turn*	ōbvērtĕrĕ	ōbvērtī	ōbvērsum	6
ŏccĭdō	*fall* or *perish*	ōccĭdĕrĕ	ōccĭdī	ōccāsum	*Intransitive*
ŏccīdō	*kill*	ōccīdĕrĕ	ōccīdī	ōccīsum	6
ŏccŭlō	*hide*	ōccŭlĕrĕ	ōccŭlŭī	ōccŭltum	6
ŏccŭmbō	*die*	ōccŭmbĕrĕ	ōccŭbŭī	ōccŭbĭtum	*Intransitive*
ŏccŭrrō	*meet* or *occur*	ōccŭrrĕrĕ	ōccŭrrī	ōccŭrsum	15
ŏdī	*hate*	ōdīssĕ	—	—	6
ŏffĕndō	*meet with, shock*	ōffĕndĕrĕ	ōffĕndī	ōffĕnsum	6
ŏffĕrō	*expose, offer*	ōffĕrrĕ	ōbtŭlī	ōblātum	6

Digitized by Google

nēscĭŏ. "Know not." (6.)

Note the expression "nēscĭŏ quĭs," *I know not who,* "*somebody,*" "*some,*" which is used as a Substantive or Adjective, as—

I saw some one,
Nēscĭŏ quem vīdī.

Some trader met me,
Nēscĭŏ quĭs mērcātŏr mē cōnvēnĭt.

nĭtŏr.

(i) = "lean upon" (26), as—

He leans on his spear,
Nĭtĭtŭr hāstā.

(ii) = "endeavour," Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē.

nōscō, "learn," "acquire a knowledge of." (6.)

NOTE.—The Perfect "nōvī" is also used as a Present tense in the sense "I know;" "nōvĕram" being used as the Imperfect.

ŏbĕō.

(i) = "engage in" or "perform." (6.)
(ii) = "die." (Intransitive.)

ōbsĭstō.

(i) = "resist." (15.)
(ii) Subjunctive with "nē."

ōbstō. "Oppose."

(i) "quōmĭnŭs" with Subjunctive, as—

He did not oppose my going away,
Nōn ōbstĭtĭt quōmĭnŭs ăbīrem.

(ii) (15.)

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
ŏfflĭcĭō	*obstruct*	ŏfflĭcĕrĕ	ŏffēcī	ŏffectum	15
ŏmĭttō	*neglect*	ŏmĭttĕrĕ	ŏmīsī	ŏmīssum	6
ŏpĕrĭō	*cover*	ŏpĕrīrĕ	ŏpĕrŭī	ŏpĕrtum	6
ŏpŏrtĕt	*it behoves*	ŏpŏrtĕrĕ	ŏpŏrtŭĭt	—	*note*
ŏppĕrĭŏr	*wait* or *await*	ŏppĕrīrī	ŏpĕrtŭs *or* ŏppĕrĭtŭs sum	—	*Intransitive or* 6
ŏppŏnō	*place before, expose*	ŏppōnĕrĕ	ŏppŏsŭī	ŏppŏsĭtum	13
ŏppūgnō	*attack*	ŏppūgnārĕ	ŏppūgnāvī	ŏppūgnātum	6
ŏrdĭŏr	*begin*	ŏrdīrī	ŏrsŭs sum	—	6 *or* 33
ŏrĭŏr	*arise*	ŏrīrī	ŏrtŭs sum	*note*	*Intransitive*
ŏstēndō	*show*	ŏstēndĕrĕ	ŏstēndī	ŏstēntum *or* ŏstēnsum	6
păcĭscŏr	*covenant*	păcĭscī	păctŭs sum *or use* pĕpĭgī	—	*Intransitive or* 6
pănĭtĕt	*it repents*	pănĭtĕrĕ	pănĭtŭĭt	—	10
pāndō	*unfold*	pāndĕrĕ	pāndī	pāssum	6
pāngō	*compose*	pāngĕrĕ	pĕpĭgī	pactum	*note*
pārcō	*spare*	pārcĕrĕ	pĕpĕrcī	—	15
pārĕō	*obey*	pārērĕ	pārŭī	pārĭtum	15
pārĭō	*bring forth*	pārĕrĕ	pĕpĕrī	pārtum (*note*)	6
pārtĭŏr	*divide*	pārtīrī	pārtĭtŭs sum	—	6
pāscō	*feed*	pāscĕrĕ	pāvī	pāstum	6
pătĕfăcĭō	*disclose*	pătĕfăcĕrĕ	pătĕfēcī	pătĕfactum	6
pătĕō	*lie open*	pătērĕ	pătŭī	—	*Intransitive*
pătĭŏr	*suffer*	pătī	pāssŭs sum	—	6 *or* 33
păvĕō	*fear*	păvērĕ	pāvī	—	6 *or Intransitive*
pĕctō	*comb*	pĕctĕrĕ	pĕxī	pĕxum	6
pĕllĭcĭō	*entice*	pĕllĭcĕrĕ	pĕllēxī	pĕllĕctum	6
pĕllō	*drive*	pĕllĕrĕ	pĕpŭlī	pŭlsum	6
pĕndĕō	*hang*	pĕndērĕ	pĕpĕndī	—	*Intransitive*
pĕndō	*hang*	pĕndĕrĕ	pĕpĕndī	pĕnsum	6
pĕrăgō	*perform*	pĕrăgĕrĕ	pĕrēgī	pĕrāctum	6
pĕrcēllō	*strike down*	pĕrcēllĕrĕ	pĕrcŭlī	pĕrcŭlsum	6
pĕrcŭrrō	*run over*	pĕrcŭrrĕrĕ	pĕrcŭrrī *or* pĕrcŭcŭrrī	pĕrcŭrsum	6
pĕrcŭtĭō	*strike*	pĕrcŭtĕrĕ	pĕrcŭsī	pĕrcŭssum	6
pĕrdō	*lose* or *destroy*	pĕrdĕrĕ	pĕrdĭdī	pĕrdĭtum	6
pĕrĕō	*perish*	pĕrīrĕ	pĕrĭī *or* pĕrĭvī	pĕrĭtum	*Intransitive*
pĕrfĕrō	*endure*	pĕrfĕrrĕ	pĕrtŭlī	pĕrlātum	6
pĕrgō	*go on*	pĕrgĕrĕ	pĕrrēxī	pĕrrĕctum	*note*
pĕrhĭbĕō	*say* or *call*	pĕrhĭbērĕ	pĕrhĭbŭī	pĕrhĭbĭtum	6
pĕrmĭttō	*allow*	pĕrmittĕrĕ	pĕrmīsī	pĕrmīssum	*note*
pĕrōdī	*hate*	pĕrōdĭssĕ	—	*note*	6

Digitized by Google

ŏpōrtĕt, "it behoves."

(i) (31) Clause as Subject.

It behoves a citizen to love his country,
Ŏpōrtĕt cīvem pătrĭam ămārĕ.

(ii) (31) Subjunctive without "ŭt" as Subject, as—

It behoves a citizen to love his country,
Ŏpōrtĕt cīvĭs pătrĭam ămĕt.

(iii) Intransitive, as—

The citizen, as it behoved, loved his country,
Cīvĭs, ŭt ŏpōrtŭĭt, pătrĭam ămăvĭt.

ŏrĭŏr. Has the 2nd Sing. Pres. Ind. "ŏrĕrĭs," 3rd Sing. "ŏrĭtŭr," 1st Plur. "ŏrĭmŭr;" Imperf. Subj. "ŏrĕrĕr" or "ŏrĭrĕr," &c.; Future Participle, "ŏrĭtūrŭs."

pāngō, also = "conclude" (a treaty, &c.), as—

Cæsar concluded an armistice,
Caēsăr īndŭcĭās pĕpĭgĭt.

NOTE.—The Perfect and tenses formed from it are alone used in this sense.

părĭō. Has Future Participle "părĭtūrŭs."

pērgō.

(i) = "continue" or "proceed" (33), as—

Cæsar continued to march on Rome,
Caēsăr Rōmam īrĕ pērrēxĭt.

(ii) = "go on" (Intransitive), as—

We went on by the same road,
Ēādem vĭā pērrēxĭmŭs.

pērmittō.

(i) = "commit," "give" (13), as—

Cæsar gave Labienus command of the cavalry,
Caēsăr Lăbĭēnō ĕquĭtātūs īmpĕrĭum pērmīsĭt.

(ii) = "allow," Dative and Infinitive, or Dative and Subjunctive with "ŭt," as—

I allow you to reply,
Tĭbĭ rēspōndērĕ pērmittō,
or, Tĭbĭ ŭt rēspōndēās pērmittō.

pĕrōdi. Has Past Participle with Active meaning; "pĕrōsŭs," *hating.*

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
pĕrpĕllō	*constrain*	pĕrpĕllĕrĕ	pĕrpŭlī	pĕrpŭlsum	*note*
pĕrsŏnō	*resound* or *make to resound*	pĕrsŏnārĕ	pĕrsŏnŭī	pĕrsŏnĭtum	*Intransitive or* 6
pĕrspĭcĭō	*examine*	pĕrspĭcĕrĕ	pĕrspēxī	pĕrspēctum	6
pĕrstō	*persevere*	pĕrstārĕ	pĕrstĭtī	pĕrstātum	*Intransitive*
pĕr-suādĕō	*persuade*	pĕrsuādērĕ	pĕrsuāsī	pĕrsuāsum	*note*
pĕrtĭnĕō	*extend*	pĕrtĭnērĕ	pĕrtĭnŭī	—	*note*
pĕrvādō	*pass through*	pĕrvādĕrĕ	pĕrvāsī	pĕrvāsum	6 *or Intransitive*
pĕrvĕnĭō	*arrive*	pĕrvĕnīrĕ	pĕrvēnī	pĕrvēntum	*Intransitive*
pĕtō	*seek*	pĕtĕrĕ	pĕtĭī *or* pĕtīvī	pĕtītum	*note*
pĭgĕt	*it troubles*	pĭgērĕ	pĭgŭĭt *or* pĭgĭtum ēst	—	31
pĭngō	*print*	pĭngĕrĕ	pĭnxī	pĭctum	6
plăcĕō	*please*	plăcērĕ	plăcŭī	plăcĭtum	15
plăcō	*appease*	plăcārĕ	plăcāvī	plăcātum	6
plāngō	*strike* or *bewail*	plāngĕrĕ	plānxī	plānctum	6
plāudō	*applaud*	plāudĕrĕ	plāūsī	plāūsum	*Intransitive or* 15
plĕctō	*punish*	plĕctĕrĕ	—	—	*note*
plĭcō	*fold*	plĭcārĕ	—	plĭcātum	6
plŭō	*rain*	plŭĕrĕ	plŭī	—	*note*
pŏllĭcĕŏr	*promise*	pŏllĭcērī	pŏllĭcĭtŭs sūm	—	*note*
pŏllŭō	*pollute*	pŏllŭĕrĕ	pŏllŭī	pŏllūtum	6
pŏnō	*place*	pŏnĕrĕ	pŏsŭī	pŏsĭtum	6
pŏrrĭgō	*offer*	pŏrrĭgĕrĕ	pŏrrēxī	pŏrrēctum	6
pŏrtēndō	*predict*	pŏrtēndĕrĕ	pŏrtēndī	pŏrtēntum	6

Digitized by Google

pērpēllō, "constrain."

(i) (6.)

(ii) Subjunctive with "ŭt."

pērsuādĕō, "persuade."

(i) expressing a fact. Accusative and Infinitive with Dative, as—

Socrates persuades us that souls do not die,
Sōcrătēs nōbīs ănĭmās nōn īntĕrīrĕ pērsuādĕt.

NOTE.—Instead of the Accusative and Infinitive, a Neuter Pronoun is sometimes found, as—

I will do as you persuade me,
Quŏd mĭhĭ pērsuādēs făcĭam.

(ii) expressing a purpose. Dative and Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," as—

Cæsar persuaded Cicero to return,
Cāēsăr Cĭcĕrōnī ŭt rĕdīrĕt pērsuāsĭt.

pērtĭnĕō.

(i) = "extend" (Intransitive), as—

The territory of the Gauls extends to the sea,
Gāllōrum fīnēs ăd mārĕ pērtĭnēnt.

(ii) = "tend," "lead" (to), Intransitive, as—

I know not whither this folly is tending,
Hāēc stūltĭtĭă quō pērtĭnĕăt nēscĭŏ.

pĕtō.

(i) = "attack." (6.)

(ii) = "ask," Accusative and Ablative with "ăb," as—

I ask you for bread,
Pānem ā tē pĕtō.

plēctō. Is used only in the Passive.

plŭō (Impersonally), "it rains," Intransitive. See (31). It is sometimes used with Cognate Accusative (18), as—

It is raining stones,
Lăpĭdēs plŭĭt.

For this Accusative we sometimes find an Ablative, as—

Lăpĭdĭbŭs plŭĭt.

pōllĭcĕŏr, "promise."

(i) (6.)

(ii) Accusative and Future Infinitive, as—

Cæsar promised to help the allies,
Cāēsăr sē sŏcĭīs āūxĭlĭātūrum ēssĕ pōllĭcĭtŭs ēst.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
pōscō	*demand*	pōscĕrĕ	pŏpōscī	—	*note*
pōssĭdĕō	*possess*	pōssĭdērĕ	pōssēdī	pōssēssum	6
pōssum	*am able*	pōssĕ	pŏtŭī	—	33
pōsthăbĕō	*neglect* or *put second to*	pōsthăbērĕ	pōsthăbŭī	pōsthăbĭtum	6 *or* 13
pŏtĭŏr	*gain*	pŏtīrī	pŏtītŭs sum	—	*note*
pōtō	*drink*	pōtārĕ	pōtāvī	pōtum *or* pōtātum	6
prāēbĕō	*afford*	prāēbērĕ	prāēbŭī	prāēbĭtum	6
prāēcēdō	*go before*	prāēcēdĕrĕ	prāēcēssī	prāēcēssum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
prāēcĕllō	*excel*	prāēcēllĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
prāēcīdō	*cut off*	prāēcīdĕrĕ	prāēcīdī	prāēcīsum	6
prāēcĭnō	*foretell*	prāēcĭnĕrĕ	prāēcĭnŭī	prāēcēntum	6
prāēcūrrō	*run before, anticipate*	prāēcūrrĕrĕ	prāēcūcūrrī *or* prāēcūrrī	prāēcūrsum	*Intransitive* or 6
prāēdĭcō	*state*	prāēdĭcārĕ	prāēdĭcāvī	prāēdĭcātum	6
prāēdĭcō	*foretell*	prāēdĭcĕrĕ	prāēdixī	prāēdictum	6
prāēĕō	*go before*	prāēīrĕ	prāēĭī, prāēīvī	prāēĭtum	*note*
prāēfĕrō	*prefer*	prāēfĕrrĕ	prāētŭlī	prāēlātum	13
prāēfĭcĭō	*put over*	prāēfĭcĕrĕ	prāēfēcī	prāēfectum	13
prāēgrĕdĭŏr	*precede* or *pass by*	prāēgrĕdī	prāēgrēssŭs sum	—	6
prāēpĕdĭō	*prevent*	prāēpĕdīrĕ	prāēpĕdĭī *and* prāēpĕdīvī	prāēpĕdītum	6
prāēpōnō	*put over* or *prefer*	prāēpōnĕrĕ	prāēpŏsŭī	prāēpŏsĭtum	13
prāēsĭdĕō	*preside over*	prāēsĭdērĕ	prāēsēdī	—	15
prāēstō	*excel* or *fulfil*	prāēstārĕ	prāēstĭtī	prāēstātum *or* prāēstĭtum	*note*
prāēsum	*be over*	prāēssē	prāēfŭī	—	14
prāētēndō	*place before,* or *allege against*	prāētēndĕrĕ	prāētēndī	prāētēntum	13
prāētĕrĕō	*pass by*	prāētĕrīrĕ	prāētĕrĭī *or* prāētĕrīvī	prāētĕrĭtum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
prāētĕrgrĕdĭŏr	*march by*	prāētĕrgrĕdī	prāētĕrgrēssŭs sum	—	6
prāētĕrmittō	*omit*	prāētĕrmittĕrĕ	prāētĕrmīsī	prāētĕrmissum	6
prāētĕrvĕhŏr	*be carried past*	prāētĕrvĕhī	prāētĕrvēctŭs sum	—	*Intransitive* or 6
prāētĕxō	*pretend* or *conceal*	prāētĕxĕrĕ	prāētĕxŭī	prāētĕxtum	6
prāēvălĕō	*prevail*	prāēvălērĕ	prāēvălŭī	—	*Intransitive*

Digitized by Google

pōscō, "demand."

(i) (6), as—

I demand bread,
Pānem pōscō.

(ii) Accusative and Ablative with "ăb," or double Accusative (19), as—

I demand bread from my master,
Pōscō pānem ā dŏmĭnō,
or, Pōscō pānem dŏmĭnum.

pŏtĭŏr, "gain" (get possession of) or "possess," Genitive or Ablative, as—

I get possession of the farm,
Pŏtĭŏr fūndī, *or* fūndō.

NOTE.—"Pŏtĭŏr" has 3rd Sing. Pres. Ind. "pŏtĭtŭr," and 1st Plur. "pŏtĭmŭr"; Imperf. Subj. "pŏtĭrĕr," or "pŏtĕrĕr," &c.

prăĕĕō.

(i) = "go in front." (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "dictate" (an oath, &c.). (6.)

The priest was dictating the oath,
Pōntĭfĕx vĕrbă prăĕĭbăt.

prāēstō.

(i) = "excel" (*a*). (15.)
(*b*) (6.)
(*c*) (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "it is better" (impersonal), Infinitive, as Subject.

(iii) = "fulfil" (6), as—

I will fulfil my promise,
Fĭdem prāēstābō.

(iv) = "show" (oneself) (20), as—

Cæsar showed himself a merciful general.
Cāēsăr sē dŭcem clēmēntem prāēstĭtĭt.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
prāē-vĕnĭō	*anticipate*	prāēvĕnīrĕ	prāēvēnī	prāēvēntum	6 *or* *Intransitive*
prāēvĕrtō	*precede*	prāēvĕr-tĕrĕ	prāēvĕrtī	—	*note*
prāndĕō	*breakfast*	prāndĕrĕ	prāndī	prānsum (*note*)	*Intransitive*
prĕcŏr	*pray*	prĕcārī	prĕcātŭs sum	—	*note*
prĕhēndō	*grasp*	prĕhēndĕrĕ	prĕhēndī	prĕhēnsum	6
prĕmō	*press*	prĕmĕrĕ	prēssī	prēssum	6
prīvō	*deprive* or *deliver*	prīvārĕ	prīvāvī	prīvātum	6 *and* 27
prŏcēdō	*advance*	prŏcēdĕrĕ	prŏcēssī	prŏcēssum	*note*
prŏcĭdō	*fall*	prŏcĭdĕrĕ	prŏcĭdī	—	*Intransitive*
prŏcūdō	*forge*	prŏcūdĕrĕ	prŏcūdī	prŏcūsum	6
prŏcūmbō	*fall*	prŏcūm-bĕrĕ	prŏcŭbŭī	prŏcŭbĭtum	*Intransitive*
prŏdĕō	*come forth*	prŏdīrĕ	prŏdĭī	prŏdĭtum	*Intransitive*
prŏdō	*betray*	prŏdĕrĕ	prŏdĭdī	prŏdĭtum	6
prŏfĕrō	*bring forward* or *extend*	prŏfĕrrĕ	prŏtŭlī	prŏlātum	6
prŏfĭcĭō	*make progress*	prŏfĭcĕrĕ	prŏfēcī	prŏfēctum	*note*
prŏfĭ-cĭscŏr	*set out*	prŏfĭcĭscī	prŏfēctŭs sum	—	*Intransitive*
prŏfĭtĕŏr	*profess*	prŏfĭtērī	prŏfēssŭs sum	—	*note*
prŏflīgō	*overthrow* or *nearly finish*	prŏflīgārĕ	prŏflīgāvī	prŏflīgātum	6

Digitized by Google

prāēvērtō, "outstrip" or "anticipate." (6.) The deponent "prāēvērtŏr" is used in the same way.

prāndĕō has Deponent Perfect Participle "prānsŭs" = "having breakfasted."

prĕcŏr.

(i) = "pray to" (6), as—

We are wont to pray to the gods,
Dĕōs prĕcārī sŏlēmŭs.

(ii) = "pray for" (6), as—

I pray for death,
Mŏrtem prĕcŏr.

(iii) = "pray to . . . for" (19), or Ablative with "ăb" and Accusative—

I pray to the gods for pardon,
Dĕōs vĕnĭam prĕcŏr,
or, Ăb dĭis vĕnĭam prĕcŏr.

(iv) = "pray" (that), Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," as—

I pray that I may be spared,
Prĕcŏr ŭt mĭhĭ pārcātŭr.

prōcēdō.

(i) = "advance." (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "pass" (of time). (Intransitive.)

(iii) = "turn out" (Intransitive), as—

The thing turned out well,
Rēs bĕnĕ prōcēssĭt.

prōfĭcĭō.

(i) = "make progress," as—

We have made some progress in philosophy,
Ĭn phĭlŏsŏphĭā ălĭquĭd prōfēcĭmŭs.

(ii) = "to be serviceable" (15), as—

To be very serviceable to the Commonwealth,
Plūrĭmum prōfĭcĭārĕ rēĭpūblĭcāē.

prŏfĭtĕŏr.

(i) = "profess." (6) or (20).

(ii) = "promise." (6.)

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
prōhĭbĕō	*forbid*	prōhĭbērĕ	prōhĭbŭī	prōhĭbĭtum	*note*
prōmittō	*promise*	prōmittĕrĕ	prōmīsī	prōmīssum	*note*
prōmō	*bring forth*	prōmĕrĕ	prōmpsī	prōmptum	6
prōpĕllō	*drive forward*	prōpēllĕrĕ	prōpŭlī	prōpŭlsum	6
prōpōnō	*propose*	prōpōnĕrĕ	prōpŏsŭī	prōpŏsĭtum	6
prōrŏgō	*extend*	prōrŏgārĕ	prōrŏgāvī	prōrŏgātum	6
prōrŭō	*overthrow*	prōrŭĕrĕ	prōrŭī	prōrŭtum	6
prōspĭcĭō	*look forth* or *look forth upon*	prōspĭcĕrĕ	prōspēxī	prōspēctum	*Intransitive or* 6
prōsum	*profit*	prōdēssĕ	prōfŭī	—	14
prōtēndō	*extend*	prōtēndĕrĕ	prōtēndī	prōtēntum *and* prōtēnsum	6
pŭdĕt	*it shames*	pŭdērĕ	pŭdŭĭt	—	10
pūgnō	*fight*	pūgnārĕ	pūgnāvī	pūgnātum	*note*
pūngō	*prick* or *vex*	pūngĕrĕ	pŭpŭgī	pūnotum	6
quāērō	*seek*	quāērĕrĕ	quāēsīvī	quāēsītum	6
quătĭō	*shake*	quătĕrĕ	—	quāssum	6
quĕō	*be able*	—	quīvī	—	33
quĕrŏr	*lament*	quĕrī	quēstŭs sum	—	6 *or* *Intransitive*
quĭēscō	*rest*	quĭēscĕrĕ	quĭēvī	quĭētum	*Intransitive*
rădō	*scrape* or *graze*	rādĕrĕ	rāsī	rāsum	6
răpĭō	*seize*	răpĕrĕ	răpŭī	răptum	6
rĕcēdō	*retire*	rĕcēdĕrĕ	rĕcēssī	rĕcēssum	*Intransitive*
rĕcĭdō	*fall back*	rĕcĭdĕrĕ	rĕcĭdī	rĕcāsum	*Intransitive*
rĕcĭdō	*cut*	rĕcīdĕrĕ	rĕcīdī	rĕcīsum	6
rĕcŏgnōscō	*recognize* or *certify*	rĕcōgnōscĕrĕ	rĕcōgnōvī	rĕcōgnĭtum	6
rĕcordŏr	*remember*	rĕcordārī	rĕcordātŭs sum	—	6
rĕcŭmbō	*lie down*	rĕcŭmbĕrĕ	rĕcŭbŭī	—	*Intransitive*
rĕcŭrrō	*run back* or *return*	rĕcŭrrĕrĕ	rĕcŭrrī	—	*Intransitive*
rĕcūsō	*refuse*	rĕcūsārĕ	rĕcūsāvī	rĕcūsātum	*note*
rĕddō	*give back*	rĕddĕrĕ	rĕddĭdī	rĕddĭtum	*note*
rĕdĕō	*return*	rĕdīrĕ	rĕdĭī *and* rĕdīvī	rĕdĭtum	*Intransitive*
rĕdĭmĭō	*encircle*	rĕdĭmīrĕ	rĕdĭmĭī	rĕdĭmĭtum	6
rĕdĭmō	*buy back*	rĕdĭmĕrĕ	rĕdēmī	rĕdēmptum	6
rĕdŏlĕō	*smell* or *smell of*	rĕdŏlērĕ	rĕdŏlŭī	—	*Intransitive or* 18
rĕfēllō	*refute*	rĕfēllĕrĕ	rĕfēllī	—	6
rĕfĕrcĭō	*fill*	rĕfĕrcīrĕ	rĕfĕrsī	rĕfĕrtum	6
rĕfĕrō	*bring back*	rĕfĕrrĕ	rĕttŭlī	rĕlātum	*note*

Digitized by Google

prŏhĭbĕō.

(i) = "keep off" or "forbid." (6.)

(ii) = "forbid," (*a*) Infinitive, (*b*) "nē" or "quōmĭnŭs" with Subjunctive, as—

He forbade me to go away,
Prŏhĭbŭĭt mē ăbīrĕ,
or, Prŏhĭbŭĭt nē ăbīrem,
or, quōmĭnŭs ăbīrem.

prōmittō, "promise."

(i) (6.)

(ii) Accusative and Future Infinitive, as—

I promise to come, or *I promise that I will come,*
Prōmittō mē vēntūrum ēssĕ.

pūgnō, "fight." (Intransitive.)

NOTE.—"Pūgnō" sometimes takes a Cognate Accusative (18).

rĕcūsō.

(i) (6), as—

I refused the gifts,
Dōnă rĕcūsāvī.

(ii) Subjunctive with "nē," as—

I refused to speak,
Rĕcūsāvī nē lŏquĕrĕr.

(iii) In Negative Sentences (*a*) Subjunctive with "quīn" or "quōmĭnŭs," (*b*) Infinitive, as—

I did not refuse to yield,
(*a*) Quīn cēdĕrem nōn rĕcūsāvī,
or (*b*) Cēdĕrĕ nōn rĕcūsāvī.

rēddō.

(i) = "give back" or "pay." (6) or (13).

(ii) = "render" (i.e., make something good bad, &c.).

Snow made the journey dangerous,
Nīx ĭtĕr pĕrīcŭlōsum rēddĭdĭt.

NOTE.—The Passive "rēddŏr" is not used in this latter sense.

rĕfĕrō.

(i) = "bring back." (6.)

(ii) = "say in answer." (6) or (13).

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
rĕfĕrt	*it concerns*	rĕfĕrrĕ	rĕtŭlĭt	—	*note*
rĕfĭcĭŏ	*repair, refresh*	rĕfĭcĕrĕ	rĕfēcī	rĕfēctum	6
rĕfĭgŏ	*unfix*	rĕfĭgĕrĕ	rĕfīxī	rĕfīxum	6
rĕfrĭgēscŏ	*grow cool, or flag*	rĕfrĭgēscĕrĕ	rĕfrīxī	—	*Intransitive*
rĕlĕgŏ	*banish*	rĕlēgārĕ	rĕlēgāvī	rĕlēgātum	6
rĕlĕgŏ	*traverse again*	rĕlĭgĕrĕ	rĕlēgī	rĕlēctum	6
rĕlĭnquŏ	*leave*	rĕlĭnquĕrĕ	rĕlĭquī	rĕlĭctum	6
rĕmĭnĭscŏr	*recollect*	rĕmĭnĭscī	—	—	12
rĕnŭŏ	*refuse*	rĕnŭĕrĕ	rĕnŭī	—	*Intransitive or* 6
rĕŏr	*think*	rĕrī	rātŭs sum	—	*note*
rĕpĕllŏ	*repulse*	rĕpēllĕrĕ	rĕppŭlī	rĕpŭlsum	6
rĕpĕrĭŏ	*find, ascertain*	rĕpĕrīrĕ	rĕppĕrī	rĕpĕrtum	6
rĕplĕŏ	*fill*	rĕplĕrĕ	rĕplēvī	rĕplētum	6
rĕpŏ	*creep*	rĕpĕrĕ	rĕpsī	rĕptum	*Intransitive*
rĕquĭrŏ	*seek for, need*	rĕquĭrĕrĕ	rĕquīsīvī	rĕquīsītum	6
rĕscĭscŏ	*find out*	rĕscĭscĕrĕ	rĕscīvī *and* rĕsclī	rĕscītum	6
rĕsĭpĭscŏ	*regain one's senses*	rĕsĭpĭscĕrĕ	rĕsĭpŭĭ *and* rĕsĭpīvī	—	*Intransitive*
rĕsĭstŏ	*halt* or *oppose*	rĕsĭstĕrĕ	rĕstĭtī	—	*Intransitive*, *also* 15
rĕsŏnŏ	*re-echo*	rĕsŏnārĕ	—	—	*Intransitive or* 6 *or* 18
rĕspĭcĭŏ	*look back* or *look back upon*	rĕspĭcĕrĕ	rĕspēxī	rĕspēctum	*Intransitive or* 6
rĕspŏndĕŏ	*reply*	rĕspŏndĕrĕ	rĕspŏndī	rĕspŏnsum	*note*
rĕspŭŏ	*reject*	rĕspŭĕrĕ	rĕspŭī	—	6
rĕstĭnguŏ	*quench*	rĕstĭnguĕrĕ	rĕstĭnxī	rĕstĭnctum	6
rĕstĭtŭŏ	*restore*	rĕstĭtŭĕrĕ	rĕstĭtŭī	rĕstĭtūtum	6
rĕstŏ	*resist* or *remain*	rĕstārĕ	rĕstĭtī	—	*note*
rĕtŭndŏ	*blunt* or *deaden*	rĕtŭndĕrĕ	rĕtŭndī	rĕtūsum *or* rĕtūnsum	6
rĕvĕrĕŏr	*stand in awe of*	rĕvĕrĕrī	rĕvĕrĭtŭs sum	—	6
rĭdĕŏ	*laugh or laugh at*	rĭdĕrĕ	rīsī	rīsum	*Intransitive or* 6
rŏdŏ	*gnaw*	rŏdĕrĕ	rŏsī	rŏsum	6
rŏgŏ	*ask*	rŏgārĕ	rŏgāvī	rŏgātum	*note*
rŭdŏ	*bray* or *roar*	rŭdĕrĕ	rŭdīvī	—	*Intransitive*
rŭmpŏ	*burst*	rŭmpĕrĕ	rŭpī	rŭptum	6
rŭŏ	*rush* (note)	rŭĕrĕ	rŭī	rŭtum (*note*)	*note*

Digitized by Google

rēfērt, "it concerns," Genitive.

The subject is generally expressed by a Neuter Pronoun, an Infinitive, or a Relative Clause, as—

It concerns all Englishmen that the Queen should be well,
Ōmnĭum Ānglōrum rēfērt Rēgīnam vălērĕ.

NOTE.—Instead of

"mĕī," "tŭī," "sŭī," "nōstrī," "vōstrī;"
"mĕā," "tŭā," "sŭā," "nōstrā," "vēstrā,"

are used, as—

It concerns me,
Mĕā rēfērt.

rĕŏr. The Past Participle has a Passive sense, "fixed," "determined," as well as the Active sense "thinking."

rēspōndĕō.

(i) = "answer." (13) or (15).
(ii) = "agree with." (15.)

rēstō.

(i) = "remain." (Intransitive.)
(ii) Impersonal, "rēstăt ŭt," it remains that . . ., as—

It remains that I should say this,
Rēstăt ŭt hōc dīcam.

rŏgō.

(i) (19.)
(ii) "ŭt" with Subjunctive, as—

He asked me to come,
Rŏgāvīt mē ŭt vĕnīrem.

rŭō.

(i) = "rush" or "fall down." (Intransitive.)
(ii) = "throw down." (6.)
(iii) = "throw up." (6.)

NOTE.—"Rŭō" has Future Participle "rŭĭtūrŭs."

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
sāēpĭō	*hedge in*	sāēpīrĕ	sāēpsī	sāēptum	6
sălĭō	*leap*	sălīrĕ	sălŭī	—	*Intransitive*
sănctĭō	*ratify*	sănctīrĕ	sănxī	sănctum	6
săpĭō	*be wise*	săpĕrĕ	{*săpīvī or* *săpŭī*}	—	*Intransitive*
sărcĭō	*patch, repair*	sărcīrĕ	sărsī	sărtum	6
scălpō	*carve*	scălpĕrĕ	scălpsī	scălptum	6
scăndō	*climb*	scăndĕrĕ	scăndī	scănsum	6
scătĕō	*bubble*	scătĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
scĭndō	*rend*	scĭndĕrĕ	scĭdī	scĭssum	6
scĭō	*know*	scīrĕ	scīvī	scītum	*note*
scĭscō	*decree*	scīscĕrĕ	scīvī	scītum	6
scrĭbō	*write*	scrĭbĕrĕ	scrīpsī	scrīptum	6
scŭlpō	*sculpture*	scŭlpĕrĕ	scŭlpsī	scŭlptum	6
sĕcērnō	*divide*	sĕcērnĕrĕ	sĕcrēvī	sĕcrētum	6
sĕcō	*cut*	sĕcārĕ	sĕcŭī	sĕctum	6
sĕdĕō	*sit*	sĕdērĕ	sĕdī	sĕssum	*Intransitive*
sēdō	*lull, assuage*	sēdārĕ	sēdāvī	sēdātum	6
sējūngō	*sever*	sējūngĕrĕ	sējūnxī	sējūnctum	6
sĕnēscō	*grow old*	sĕnēscĕrĕ	sĕnŭī	—	*Intransitive*
sēntĭō	*feel*	sēntīrĕ	sēnsī	sēnsum	6
sĕpĕlĭō	*bury*	sĕpĕlīrĕ	sĕpĕlīvī	sĕpūltum	6
sĕquŏr	*follow*	sĕquī	sĕcūtŭs sum	—	{6 *or* *Intransitive*}
sĕrō	*sow*	sĕrĕrĕ	sēvī	sătum	6
sĕrō	*interweave*	sĕrĕrĕ	—	sertum	*note*
sērpō	*creep*	sērpĕrĕ	sērpsī	sērptum	*Intransitive*
sērvĭō	*serve*	sērvīrĕ	{sērvīī *or* sērvīvī}	sērvītum	{*Intransitive* *or* 15 *or* 18}
sērvō	*preserve*	sērvārĕ	sērvāvī	sērvātum	6
sĭnō	*permit*	sĭnĕrĕ	sīvī	sĭtum	*note*
sĭstō	{*place* or *stand*}	sīstĕrĕ	stĭtī	stātum	{6 *or* *Intransitive*}
sŏlĕō	*be wont*	sŏlērĕ	sŏlĭtŭs sum	—	33
sŏlvō	*loose*	sŏlvĕrĕ	sŏlvī	sŏlūtum	6
sŏnō	{*sound* or *tell of*}	sŏnārĕ	sŏnŭī	sŏnĭtum	*note*
sōrbĕō	*suck down*	sōrbērĕ	sōrbŭī	—	6
spārgō	{*scatter* or *sprinkle*}	spārgĕrĕ	spārsī	spārsum	6
spērnō	*despise*	spērnĕrĕ	sprēvī	sprētum	6
spŏrō	*hope*	spērārĕ	spērāvī	spērātum	*note*
spŏlĭō	*spoil*	spŏlĭārĕ	spŏlĭāvī	spŏlĭātum	*note*

Digitized by Google

scĭŏ.

(i) = "know." (6.)

(ii) = "know how" (33), as—

Let the soldier know how to obey his general,
Mīlĕs dŭcī pārērĕ scĭăt.

sĕrō, "interweave," is only used in this sense in the Perfect Participle Passive. It sometimes means to "discuss."

sĭnō, "allow."

(i) Infinitive, as—

I will allow you to speak,
Tē lŏquī sĭnam.

(ii) Subjunctive without "ŭt," as—

Allow me to speak,
Sĭnĕ lŏquăr.

NOTE.—This construction is only used when "allow" is Imperative.

(iii) (6.)

NOTE.—The Participle "sĭtŭs" means "situated."

sŏnō.

(i) = "sound." (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "tell of." (6.)

NOTE.—The Future Participle is "sŏnātūrŭs."

spērō, "hope."

(i) (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "hope for" (6), as—

I hope for better things,
Spērō mĕlĭōră.

(iii) Accusative and Future Infinitive, as—

I hope that my brother will return,
Spērō frātrem rĕdĭtūrum ēssĕ.

spŏlĭō.

(i) (6.)

(ii)

I rob the general of his sword,
Spŏlĭō dŭcem ēnsĕ.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
rĕfĕrt	*it concerns*	rēfĕrrĕ	rĕtŭlĭt	—	*note*
rĕfĭcĭō	*repair, refresh*	rĕfĭcĕrĕ	rĕfēcī	rĕfēctum	6
rĕfĭgō	*unfix*	rĕfīgĕrĕ	rĕfīxī	rĕfīxum	6
rĕfrĭgēscō	*grow cool, or flag*	rĕfrīgēscĕrĕ	rĕfrīxī	—	*Intransitive*
rĕlēgō	*banish*	rĕlēgārĕ	rĕlēgāvī	rĕlēgātum	6
rĕlĕgō	*traverse again*	rĕlĭgĕrĕ	rĕlēgī	rĕlēctum	6
rĕlĭnquō	*leave*	rĕlĭnquĕrĕ	rĕlīquī	rĕlĭctum	6
rĕmĭnĭscŏr	*recollect*	rĕmĭnĭscī	—	—	12
rĕnŭō	*refuse*	rĕnŭĕrĕ	rĕnŭī	—	*Intransitive or* 6
rĕŏr	*think*	rĕrī	rătŭs sum	—	*note*
rĕpĕllō	*repulse*	rĕpēllĕrĕ	rĕppŭlī	rĕpŭlsum	6
rĕpĕrĭō	*find, ascertain*	rĕpĕrīrĕ	rĕppĕrī	rĕpĕrtum	6
rĕplĕō	*fill*	rĕplērĕ	rĕplēvī	rĕplētum	6
rĕpō	*creep*	rĕpĕrĕ	rĕpsī	rĕptum	*Intransitive*
rĕquĭrō	*seek for, need*	rĕquīrĕrĕ	rĕquīsīvī	rĕquīsītum	6
rĕscĭscō	*find out*	rĕscīscĕrĕ	rĕscīvī *and* rĕscĭī	rĕscītum	6
rĕsĭpĭscō	*regain one's senses*	rĕsĭpĭscĕrĕ	rĕsĭpŭĭ *and* rĕsĭpīvī	—	*Intransitive*
rĕsĭstō	*halt* or *oppose*	rĕsīstĕrĕ	rĕstĭtī	—	*Intransitive also* 15
rĕsŏnō	*re-echo*	rĕsŏnārĕ	—	—	*Intransitive or* 6 *or* 18
rĕspĭcĭō	*look back* or *look back upon*	rĕspĭcĕrĕ	rĕspēxī	rĕspēctum	*Intransitive or* 6
rĕspōndĕō	*reply*	rĕspōndĕrĕ	rĕspōndī	rĕspōnsum	*note*
rĕspŭō	*reject*	rĕspŭĕrĕ	rĕspŭī	—	6
rĕstĭnguō	*quench*	rĕstĭnguĕrĕ	rĕstĭnxī	rĕstĭnctum	6
rĕstĭtŭō	*restore*	rĕstĭtŭĕrĕ	rĕstĭtŭī	rĕstĭtūtum	6
rĕstō	*resist* or *remain*	rĕstārĕ	rĕstĭtī	—	*note*
rĕtūndō	*blunt* or *deaden*	rĕtūndĕrĕ	rĕtūndī	rĕtūsum *or* rĕtūnsum	6
rĕvĕrĕŏr	*stand in awe of*	rĕvĕrĕrī	rĕvĕrĭtŭs sum	—	6
rīdĕō	*laugh or laugh at*	rīdĕrĕ	rīsī	rīsum	*Intransitive or* 6
rōdō	*gnaw*	rōdĕrĕ	rōsī	rōsum	6
rŏgō	*ask*	rŏgārĕ	rŏgāvī	rŏgātum	*note*
rŭdō	*bray* or *roar*	rŭdĕrĕ	rŭdīvī	—	*Intransitive*
rŭmpō	*burst*	rŭmpĕrĕ	rŭpī	rŭptum	6
rŭō	*rush* (note)	rŭĕrĕ	rŭī	rŭtum (*note*)	*note*

Digitized by Google

[illegible]

[illegible]

The subject is [illegible]

an Indicative, or [illegible]

[illegible]

Note.—[illegible]

[illegible]

are used as—

[illegible]

Note. [illegible]

"determined" [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
spōndĕō	*promise*	spōndērĕ	spŏpōndī	spōnsum	*note*
stātŭō	*place* or *determine*	stātŭĕrĕ	stātŭī	stātūtum	*note*
stērnō	*strew* or *throw down*	stērnĕrĕ	strāvī	strātum	6
stĕrnŭō	*sneeze*	stĕrnŭĕrĕ	stĕrnŭī	—	*Intransitive* or 6
stertō	*snore*	stertĕrĕ	stertŭī	—	*Intransitive*
stō	*stand*	stārĕ	stĕtī	stātum	*Intransitive*
strĕpō	*roar, resound*	strĕpĕrĕ	strĕpŭī	—	*Intransitive*
strīdĕō **strīdō**	*creak, rattle*	strīdērĕ	strīdī	—	*Intransitive*
strĭngō	*graze, strip*	strĭngĕrĕ	strīnxī	strĭctum	6
strŭō	*pile up, contrive*	strŭĕrĕ	strūxī	strūctum	6
stŭdĕō	*pursue, favour*, or *wish*	stŭdērĕ	stŭdŭī	—	*note*
suādĕō	*persuade*	suādērĕ	suāsī	suāsum	*note*
sūbdō	*put under*	sūbdĕrĕ	sūbdĭdī	sūbdĭtum	13
sŭbĕō	*draw near*	sŭbīrĕ	sŭbĭī *or* sŭbīvī	sŭbĭtum	*note*

Digitized by Google

spōndĕō.

(i) = "promise." (6.)

(ii) = "promise," Accusative and Future Infinitive, as—

I promise that I will never fail you,
Spōndĕō mē tĭbĭ nūnquam dēfŏrĕ.

(iii) = "betroth." (13.)

stătŭō.

(i) = "place." (6.)

(ii) = "determine," Infinitive, as—

I determine to go hence,
Stătŭō hīnc ăbīrĕ.

stŭdĕō.

(i) = "pursue" or "apply oneself to." (15.)

(ii) = "favour." (15.)

(iii) = "desire." (33.)

suādĕō.

(i) = "persuade," of a fact. Accusative and Infinitive with Dative, as—

Socrates persuades us that souls do not die,
Sōcrătēs nōbīs ănĭmās nōn īntĕrīrĕ suādĕt.

NOTE.—Instead of the Accusative and Infinitive, a Neuter Pronoun is sometimes found, as—

I will do as you persuade me,
Quŏd mĭhĭ suādēs făcĭam.

(ii) = "persuade" or "advise," of a purpose. Dative and Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," as—

Cæsar persuaded Cicero to return,
Cāēsăr Cĭcĕrōnī ŭt rĕdīrĕt suāsĭt.

(iii) = "recommend" (6), as—

Cato recommended war,
Cătō bēllum suāsĭt.

sŭbĕō.

(i) = "draw near." (Intransitive.)

(ii) = "approach." (6.)

(iii) = "undergo." (6.)

(iv) = "occur," "present oneself" (to the mind). (Intransitive.)

The form of my father presented itself to my mind,
Sŭbĭĭt gĕnĭtōrĭs ĭmāgō, *or* Sŭbĭĭt mĭhĭ gĕnĭtōrĭs ĭmāgō.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
sŭbĭgō	*subdue*	sŭbĭgĕrĕ	sŭbēgī	sŭbāctum	6
sūbsĭstō	*stop*	sūbsĭstĕrĕ	sūbstĭtī	—	*Intransitive*
sūbsum	*be near* or *underneath*	sūbēssĕ	—	—	*Intransitive* or 14
sŭbvĕnĭō	*help*	sūbvĕnīrĕ	sūbvēnī	sūbvēntum	15
sŭccēdō	*follow, succeed*	sūccēdĕrĕ	sūccēssī	sūccēssum	*note*
sŭccēndō	*kindle*	sūccēndĕrĕ	sūccēndī	sūccēnsum	6
sŭccēnsĕō	*be angry*	sūccēnsērĕ	sūccēnsŭī	sūccēnsum	15 *or* *Intransitive*
sŭccūmbō	*yield*	sūccūmbĕrĕ	sūccŭbŭī	sūccŭbĭtum	15 *or* *Intransitive*
sŭccūrrō	*help*	sūccūrrĕrĕ	sūccūrrī	sūccūrsum	*note*
sŭēscō	*be accustomed*	sūēscĕrĕ	sūēvī	sūētum	*note*
sŭffĕrō	*suffer*	sūffĕrrĕ	sūstŭlī	sūblātum	6
sŭffĭcĭō	*substitute,* or *suffice*	sūffĭcĕrĕ	sūffēcī	sūffectum	*note*
sŭmmĭttō	*lower, moderate*	sūmmĭttĕrĕ	sūmmīsī	sūmmīssum	6
sūmō	*take*	sūmĕrĕ	sūmpsī	sūmptum	6
sŭō	*sew*	sūĕrĕ	sŭī	sūtum	6
sŭpĕrsĕdĕō	*desist from, refrain from*	sūpĕrsĕdĕrĕ	sūpĕrsēdī	sūpĕrsēssum	26 *or* 33
sŭpĕrsum	*remain, survive*	sūpĕrēssĕ	sūpĕrfŭī	—	*Intransitive* or 14
sŭppĕtō	*be at hand,* or *suffice for*	sūppĕtĕrĕ	sūppĕtĭī *or* sūppĕtīvī	sūppĕtītum	*Intransitive* or 15
sŭpplĕō	*complete*	sūpplērĕ	sūpplēvī	sūpplētum	6
sŭrgō	*rise*	sūrgĕrĕ	sūrrēxī	sūrrēctum	*Intransitive*
sŭrrĭgō	*raise*	sūrrĭgĕrĕ	sūrrēxī	sūrrēctum	6
sŭspĭcĭō	*look up at* or *admire*	sūspĭcĕrĕ	sūspēxī	sūspēctum	*note*
sŭspĭcŏr	*suspect*	sūspĭcārī	sūspĭcātŭs sum	—	*note*
sŭstĭnĕō	*endure*	sūstĭnērĕ	sūstĭnŭī	sūstēntum	*note*
tābēscō	*melt* or *decay*	tābēscĕrĕ	tābŭī	—	*Intransitive*
tăcĕō	*be silent* or *be silent about*	tăcērĕ	tăcŭī	tăcĭtum	*Intransitive* and 6
tāēdĕt	*it wearies*	tāēdērĕ	*use* pertāēsum est	—	10
tăngō	*touch*	tăngĕrĕ	tĕtĭgī	tāctum	6
tĕgō	*cover*	tĕgĕrĕ	tēxī	tēctum	6

Digitized by Google

sūccēdō.

(i) = "follow." (Intransitive or Dative.)

(ii) = "advance." (Intransitive.)

(iii) = "prosper." (Intransitive.)

sūccūrrō.

(i) = "help." (15.)

(ii) = "occur" (to the mind). (Intransitive or Dative.)

sūēscō, "be accustomed." (Dative.)

NOTE.—This Verb should not be used in the Present or Imperfect Indicative or Subjunctive, nor in the Future Indicative nor in the Imperative. It is rare in the Perfect and Tenses thence formed. It has a Participle "sūētŭs," meaning "accustomed."

sūffĭcĭō.

(i) = "substitute." (6.)

(ii) = "avail for," "suffice for." (Dative.)

(iii) = "suffice." (Intransitive.)

sūspĭcĭō.

(i) = "look up at." (6 or Intransitive.)

(ii) = "admire." (6.)

NOTE.—The Participle is used in the sense "mistrusted" or "suspected."

sūspĭcŏr, "mistrust" or "conjecture."

(i) Accusative.

(ii) Accusative and Infinitive. (Rule 40.)

sūstĭnĕō.

(i) = "support" or "uphold." (6.)

(ii) = "endure," Accusative, as—

He endured great labours,
Māgnōs lăbōrēs sūstĭnŭĭt.

(iii) = "have the heart" (33), as—

He had the heart to betray his country,
Pătrĭam prōdĕrĕ sūstĭnŭĭt.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
tĕndō	*stretch, tend,* or *encamp*	tĕndĕrĕ	tĕtĕndī	tēntum	6 *and Intransitive*
tĕnĕō	*hold* or *continue*	tĕnērĕ	tĕnŭī	tēntum	6 *or Intransitive*
tĕrgĕō tŏrgō	*wipe*	tĕrgērĕ tĕrgĕrĕ	tērsī	tērsum	6
tĕrō	*rub, spend (of time)*	tĕrĕrĕ	trīvī	trītum	6
tĕxō	*weave*	tĕxĕrĕ	tēxŭī	tēxtum	6
tĭmĕō	*fear*	tĭmērĕ	tĭmŭī	—	*note*
tĭngō	*wet* or *dye*	tĭngĕrĕ	tĭnxī	tĭnctum	6
tŏllō	*raise* or *take away*	tŏllĕrĕ	*use* sūstŭlī	*use* sūblātum	6
tŏndĕō	*shear* or *crop*	tŏndĕrĕ	tŏtŏndī	tōnsum	6
tŏnō	*thunder*	tŏnārĕ	tŏnŭī	—	*Intransitive*
tŏrquĕō	*twist, hurl,* or *torture*	tŏrquērĕ	tŏrsī	tŏrtum	6
tŏrrĕō	*parch*	tŏrrērĕ	tŏrrŭī	tōstum	6
trādō	*hand over* or *down,* or *betray*	trādĕrĕ	trādĭdī	trādĭtum	6 *or* 13
trăhō	*draw*	trăhĕrĕ	trāxī	trāctum	6
trāns-cūrrō	*go over* or *by*	trānscūrrĕrĕ	trānscūrrī *or* trānscucūrrī	trānscūrsum	*Intransitive or* 6
trānsĕō	*cross* or *pass over*	trānsīrĕ	trānsĭī	trānsĭtum	6 *or Intransitive*
trānsfĕrō	*transfer*	trānsfĕrrĕ	trānstŭlī	trānslātum	6
trānsgrĕdĭŏr	*cross*	trānsgrĕdī	trānsgrĕssŭs sum	—	6 *or Intransitive*
trāns-mittō	*cross*	trānsmĭttĕrĕ	trānsmīsī	trānsmīssum	*note*
trĕmō	*tremble* or *tremble at*	trĕmĕrĕ	trĕmŭī	—	*Intransitive or* 6
trĭbŭō	*give*	trĭbŭĕrĕ	trĭbŭī	trĭbūtum	6
trūdō	*push*	trūdĕrĕ	trūsī	trūsum	6
tŭĕŏr	*see* or *defend*	tŭērī	—	—	6
tūrgĕō	*swell*	tūrgērĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
ūlcĭscŏr	*punish* or *avenge*	ūlcĭscī	ūltŭs sum	—	6
ūrgĕō	*urge* or *ply*	ūrgērĕ	ūrsī	—	6
ūrō	*burn, nip,* or *harass*	ūrĕrĕ	ūssī	ūstum	6
ūtŏr	*use*	ūtī	ūsŭs sum	—	26
văcō	*be without,* or *have leisure (for)*	văcārĕ	văcāvī	văcātum	27, *Intransitive or* 15

Digitized by Google

tĭmĕō, "fear."

(i) (6.)

(ii) (Intransitive.)

(iii) Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē" according as the Dependent Clause in English is Negative or Positive, as—

I fear he will not come,
Tĭmĕō ŭt vĕnĭăt.
I fear he will come (lest he come),
Tĭmĕō nē vĕnĭăt.

trānsmittō.

(i) = "send across" (6), as—

Cæsar sent an army across into Gaul,
Cāesăr ēxērcĭtum ĭn Gāllĭam trānsmīsĭt.

(ii) = "cross" (6), as—

The Gauls have crossed the Tiber,
Tĭbĕrim trānsmīsērūnt Gāllī.

(iii) = "cross" (Intransitive), as—

The Gauls have crossed into Italy,
Gāllī ĭn Ĭtălĭam trānsmīsērūnt.

Digitized by Google

Verb.	Meaning.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.	Construction.
vādō	*go*	vādĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
vādŏr	*hold to bail*	vādārī	vādātŭs sum	—	6
vălĕō	*be well*	vălērĕ	vălŭī	vălĭtum	*note*
vĕhō	*carry*	vĕhĕrĕ	vēxī	vēctum	6
vĕllō	*pluck*	vĕllĕrĕ	vūlsī	vūlsum	6
vĕlō	*veil*	vēlārĕ	vēlāvī	vēlātum	6
vĕndō	*sell*	vēndĕrĕ	vēndĭdī	vēndĭtum	6
vĕnĕō	*am sold*	vēnīrĕ	{vēnĭī *or* vēnīvī}	—	*Intransitive*
vĕnĭō	*come*	vĕnīrĕ	vēnī	vēnṭum	*Intransitive*
vĕrĕŏr	*fear*	vĕrērī	vĕrĭtŭs sum	—	*note*
vērgō	*incline*	vērgĕrĕ	—	—	*Intransitive*
vĕrrō	*sweep*	vĕrrĕrĕ	—	—	6
vĕrtō	*turn*	vĕrtĕrĕ	vĕrtī	vĕrsum	*note*
vĕtō	*forbid*	vĕtārĕ	vĕtŭī	vĕtĭtum	*note*
vĭdĕō	*see*	vĭdērĕ	vīdī	vīsum	*note*
vĭncĭō	*bind*	vĭncīrĕ	vīnxī	vīnctum	6
vĭncō	*conquer*	vĭncĕrĕ	vīcī	vīctum	6
vĭsō	*visit*	vĭsĕrĕ	vĭsī	vĭsum	6
vĭvō	*live*	vĭvĕrĕ	vĭxī	vĭctum	*Intransitive*
vŏlō	*fly*	vŏlārĕ	vŏlāvī	vŏlātum	*Intransitive*
vŏlŏ	*wish*	vĕllĕ	vŏlŭī	—	*note*
vŏlvō	*roll*	vŏlvĕrĕ	vŏlvī	vŏlūtum	6, *note*
vŏmō	*vomit*	vŏmĕrĕ	vŏmŭī	vŏmĭtum	{*Intransitive or* 6}
vŏvĕō	*vow*	vŏvērĕ	vŏvī	vŏtum	6

Digitized by Google

vălĕō.

(i) = "be well." (Intransitive.)
(ii) = "have power." (Intransitive.)
(iii) = "be able." (33.)

NOTE.—The usage (iii) is chiefly found in the poets.

vĕrĕŏr, "fear."

(i) (6.)
(ii) Subjunctive with "ŭt" or "nē," according as the Dependent Clause in English is Negative or Positive, as—

I fear he will not come,
Vĕrĕŏr ŭt vĕnĭăt.

I fear he will come (lest he come),
Vĕrĕŏr nē vĕnĭăt.

(iii) = "shrink from," Infinitive, as—

I shrink from praising your virtue in your presence,
Vĕrĕŏr tŭam vīrtūtem cōram tē laūdārĕ.

vērtō.

(i) = "turn." (6.)
(ii) Deponent "vērtŏr," *turn* or *change.* (Intransitive.)

vĕtō, "forbid."

(i) (6.)
(ii) Infinitive, as—

I forbid you to go,
Vĕtō tē īrĕ.

NOTE.—"Vĕtō" is sometimes followed by the Subjunctive with or without "nē," but this construction is only used by poets.

vĭdĕō.

(i) = "see." (6.)
(ii) = "beware," "take care," "ŭt" or "nē" with Subjunctive, as—

Take care that you carry out the general's commands,
Vĭdē ŭt dŭcĭs jūssă ĕxsĕqūarĭs.

NOTE.—"Vĭdĕŏr" (Deponent) means *I seem,* and is a Link Verb. (7.)

vŏlŏ.

(i) = "wish for." (6.)
(ii) = "wish" (33), as—

I wish to depart,
Vŏlŏ ăbīrĕ.

vōlvō, "roll." (6.)

NOTE.—"Roll" in English is often Intransitive, and must then be rendered by "vōlvŏr" or "mē vōlvō."

Digitized by Google

List of English Prepositions and Conjunctions in common use, with the way to render them in Latin.

☞ This list includes a few Adverbs and other parts of speech which present difficulties to a beginner.

A.

The Indefinite Article in English is used either "generally" (referring to a class of persons or things) or "particularly" (referring to some one person or thing).

When used "generally," it is not translated into Latin, as—

> **A** *man is mortal* (i.e. *every man*),
> Hŏmŏ mōrtālĭs ēst.
>
> **A** *friend will keep his word* (i.e. *every friend*),
> Ămīcŭs fĭdem prāēstābĭt.

When used "particularly," it is usually translated in Latin, as—

> **A** *friend told me this* (i.e. *a certain friend*),
> Hōc mĭhĭ dīxĭt ămīcŭs *quīdam.*
>
> *Quintus Varus,* **a** *Spaniard, accused Scaurus,*
> Quīntŭs Vārŭs, *vĭr* Hīspānŭs, Scāūrum rĕum fēcĭt.

About.

Preposition:

(1) = "around," cīrcum (acc.), cīrcā (acc.), as—

> *He traced a rampart* **about** *the city,*
> Vāllum cīrcum ūrbem dūxĭt.

It is often compounded with the Verb, as—cīrcūmdūcō, cīrcūmdō. (See Rule 13 and List of Verbs.)

(2) = "concerning," "touching," "with regard to," dē (abl.), as—

> *I received a letter* **about** *the death of Cæsar,*
> Lĭttĕrās dē Cāēsărĭs mōrtĕ ăccēpī.
>
> *Ambassadors were sent* **about** *making peace,*
> Lēgātī dē pācĕ făcĭēndā mĭssī sūnt.

Digitized by Google

Adverb: fĕrē, fērmē, cīrcĭtĕr (of time or number), as—

About *five hundred men were taken,*
Quĭngēntī fĕrē cāptī sūnt.

In **about** *fifteen days,*
Quĭndĕcim cīrcĭtĕr dĭēbŭs.

NOTE.

What are you **about?** (i.e. *What are you doing?*)
Quĭd ăgĭs?

To set **about** *a thing,*
Āggrĕdĭŏr, or tēntō (with acc.).

NOTE.—*About* followed by an Infinitive *Active* is rendered by the Future Participle, as—

About *to love,* ămātūrŭs.

But if it is followed by an Infinitive *Passive*, it must be rendered either by the Future Indicative with an Adverb of Time, as—

He is **about** *to be killed,*
Mŏx ŏccĭdētŭr,

or by the phrase: "in ĕō ēst ŭt ŏccĭdātŭr," which means, *he is on the point of being killed.*

Above.

Preposition:

(1) = "of position," or "degree," sŭpĕr (acc. rarely abl.) sŭprā (acc.), as—

Above *the earth is the sky,*
Sŭpĕr tĕrram ēst cāēlum.

Above *measure,*
Sŭprā mŏdum.

(2) = "of degree," "beyond," or "in excess of," āntĕ (acc.); prāē (abl.), as—

Beautiful **above** *all others,*
Pūlchrā āntĕ ōmnēs ălĭās
or prāē ălĭīs ōmnĭbŭs.

NOTE.

He is **above** *doing it,*
Nōn ēst *ĭs quī* ĭd făcĭăt.
lit. *He is not the man who would do it.*

He is **above** *forty years old,*
Ānnōs plūs quādrāgīntā nātŭs ēst.

Abroad.

Adverb: fŏrās (after a verb of motion), pĕrĕgrē, as—

He went **abroad,**
Fŏrās prŏfēctŭs ēst.

He lived **abroad,**
Pĕrĕgrē hăbĭtāvĭt.

Digitized by Google

It is sometimes expressed by "dĭs-" compounded with the Verb, as—

To spread **abroad,**
or *to scatter* **abroad,**
Dīspĕrgō.

According to.

Preposition: sĕcūndum (acc.), ēx (abl.), prō (abl.), as—

According to *the laws,*
Sĕcūndum lēgēs
or *ēx* lēgĭbŭs.

According to *circumstances,*
Prō rē, *or* Prō tēmpŏrĕ.

Accordingly.

Adverb: ĭtăquĕ. See "**Therefore.**"

Account.

Preposition: "on account of." (See "**on**" (9).)

Across.

Preposition: trāns (acc.), as—

He led his army **across** *the Rhone,*
Trāns Rhŏdănum ēxĕrcĭtum dūxĭt.

It is often compounded with the Verb, as—

Ēxĕrcĭtum Rhŏdănum trājĕcĭt.

So trānsdūcō, trānsmittō, trānsĕō, trānscūrrō, &c.

NOTE the phrase—

He built a bridge **across** *the Rhine,*
Pōntem **in** flūmĭnĕ Rhēnō făcĭēndum cūrāvĭt.

Afoot.

Adverb: rendered in Latin by an Adjective—pĕdĕs, Gen. pĕdĭtĭs, as—

He went **afoot,** *pĕdĕs* ĭbăt.

After.

Preposition: post (acc.), as—

After *the battle of Cannæ,*
Pōst prāēlĭum Cānnēnsĕ.

In some phrases, dē (abl.), ā (abl.), as—

Day **after** *day,*
Dĭem *dē* dĭē.

Immediately **after** *the battle he returned,*
Cōnfĕstim *ā* prāēlĭo rĕdĭit.

Digitized by Google

After *the manner of Cicero,*
Dē mōrĕ Cĭcĕrōnĭs (*or* ād mōrem Cĭcĕrōnĭs
or mōrĕ Cĭcĕrōnĭs).

NOTE.—*After all* (1) = "at length," tāndem, dēnĭquĕ, as—

After all *he gave way,*
Tāndem cōncēssĭt.

(2) = "nevertheless," vērūmtămĕn, as—

After all *I shall not be present,*
Ĕgŏ *vērūmtămĕn* nōn ădĕrō.

NOTE.—*After* is often included in the Verb, as—

To follow **after**, sĕquōr.
To send **after** (= *to summon*), ārcēssō.

Conjunction: pōstquam, quum.

"Pōstquam" (except in "Obliqua Oratio") is followed by the Indicative Mood, and (generally) the Aorist, as—

After *he had returned, he became consul,*
Pōstquam rĕdĭĭt, cōnsŭl făctŭs ĕst.

"Quum" is generally followed by the Subjunctive Mood, as—

Quum rĕdĭissĕt, cōnsŭl făctŭs ĕst.

Observe that the above sentence would often be written in English—

After having returned,
or *After returning,* he became consul.

which will guide you to the way in which such sentences should be turned into Latin.

(See "**When**" and "**Quum**" in List of Latin Conjunctions.)

NOTE.

The day after *I had left you,*
Pōstrīdĭē quam ā vōbīs dĭscēssī.

The year after *Cæsar died,*
Pōstĕrō ānnō quam Cāēsăr mōrtŭŭs ĕst.

After may often be rendered by Abl. Abs., as—

After *conquering the enemy he returned home,*
Vĭctīs hōstĭbŭs dŏmum rĕdĭĭt.

Afterwards.

Adverb: pōstĕā, pōst.

Digitized by Google

Distinguish carefully—pōst, pōstĕā, "after," or "afterwards" (Adverb), from pōstquam, "after," or "after that" (Conjunction), as—

After *he had left Italy he lived in Greece,*
Pōstquam ēx Ĭtălĭā ēxcēssĭt, īn Grāēcĭā hăbĭtābăt.

He left Italy, but **afterwards** *lived in Greece,*
Ex Ĭtălĭā ēxcēssĭt, *pōstĕā* aūtem īn Grāēcĭā hăbĭtābăt.

Again.

Adverb: rūrsŭs, ĭtĕrum (lit. "a second time"), as—

The Romans were **again** *defeated,*
Rūrsŭs Rōmānī vīctī sūnt.

He was made Consul **again** (i.e. *a second time*),
Ĭtĕrum Cōnsŭl fāctŭs ēst.

It is often rendered by "rĕ-" compounded with the Verb, as—

Catiline **began** *his plots* **again,**
Cătĭlīnă cōnsĭlĭă *rĕnŏvāvĭt.*

So rĕsūrgō, rĕfĭcĭō, rĕdūcō, &c.

NOTE.

As big **again,**
Ăltĕrō măjŏr (lit. *bigger by another*).

Against

Preposition: ădvērsŭs (acc.), ĭn (acc.), cōntrā (acc.), as—

Hannibal made war **against** *the Romans,*
Hănnĭbăl ĭn Rōmānōs bĕllum gēssĭt.

It is often compounded with the Verb, as—

Hănnĭbăl Rōmānīs bĕllum ĭntŭlĭt.

He leant **against** *the wall,*
Mūrō *ĭnnīsŭs* ēst. (Rule 13.)

NOTE.

To act **against** *the law,* lēgem *vĭŏlārĕ.*
He *did it* **against his will,** *ĭnvĭtŭs* fēcĭt.

The speech **against** *Socrates,*
Ōrātĭō *cōntrā* Sōcrătem *hăbĭtă.*

The war **against** *the Persians,*
Bĕllum *ĭn* Pērsās *gēstum.*

Observe in these two sentences the addition of the Participle in Latin.

Digitized by Google

Ago.

Adverb: ăbhīnc, as—

Three years **ago,**
Abhīnc trēs ānnōs.

"Long ago" = prīdem, or jam prīdem, as—

He died **long ago,**
Jam prīdem mōrtŭŭs ēst.

NOTE.

A few days **ago,**
His paucīs diēbŭs.

Albeit.

Conjunction: = "**although,**" q.v.

All.

Adjective:

(1) ōmnĭs. It may be used in the Plural without a Substantive, as—ōmnēs, "all men," ōmnĭă, "all things"; in the Singular always with a Substantive, as—

All *Gaul is divided into three parts,*
Gāllĭă ōmnĭs dīvīsă ēst ĭn trēs pārtēs.

(2) ūnĭvērsŭs, cūnctŭs (only used in the Singular with Nouns of multitude), as—

All *the state,*
Ūnĭvērsă cīvĭtās.

All *the senate,*
Cūnctŭs sĕnātŭs.

In the plural, "All taken together," as—

We **all** *pray you for peace,*
Ūnĭvērsī *or* cūnctī tē pācem ōrāmŭs.

(3) = "the entire," tōtŭs, ūnĭvērsŭs, as—

All *the universe,*
Tōtŭs mūndŭs.

(4) nēmō nōn, nūllŭs nōn, as—

All *see this,*
Nēmō hōc nōn vĭdĕt (lit. "no one does not see this.")
All *lions are savage,*
Nūllŭs lĕō nōn fĕrŭs ēst.

NOTE.—Nēmō nōn, "all;" nōn nēmō, "some."

(5) with Superlatives, quīsquĕ, as—

All *the best men desire this,*
Ōptĭmŭs quīsquĕ hōc cŭpĭt.

Digitized by Google

(6) NOTE the phrases—

Not at **all**, Ōmnīnō nōn. *Never at* **all**, Ōmnīnō nūnquam. *Nowhere at* **all**, Ōmnīnō nūsquam.

At **all** *times*, Sēmpĕr. *At* **all** *events*, Cērtē.

All *is over with the army*, Āctum ēst dē ēxērcĭtū.
It is agreed on **all** *sides*, Cōnstăt ĭntĕr ōmnēs.

Almost.

Adverb: prŏpĕ, pāēnĕ, fĕrē, fĕrmē, as—

Almost *all are of this opinion*, Ōmnēs fĕrē hōc sēntĭūnt.

NOTE the phrase—

I **almost** *believe*, Prŏpĕ ăbēst quīn crēdam
or Tāntum nōn crēdō.

Along.

Preposition: sĕcūndum (acc.), prāētĕr (acc.), as—

Along *the shore*, Sĕcūndum lĭtŭs, Prāētĕr ōram.

Sometimes pĕr (acc.); as—

Along *the road*, Pĕr vĭam.

Also.

Adverb: ĕtĭam, quŏquĕ (never stands first), ĕt, as—

Answer me this **also**, Hōc quŏquĕ mĭhĭ rĕspōndē.

Although.

Conjunction:

Quāmquam, ētsī, ĕtĭāmsī, lĭcĕt, ŭt, quum, quāmvīs. (See List of Latin Conjunctions.)

"Quāmvīs" is also used with Adjectives, the Verb being omitted, as—

Although *unwilling, he went away*, Quāmvīs ĭnvĭtŭs, dĭscēssĭt.

Clauses beginning with "although" may sometimes be rendered by the Ablative Absolute.

Digitized by Google

Altogether.

Adverb: = "**quite,**" q.v.

Always.

Adverb: sēmpĕr, ūsquĕ (generally poetical).

Sēmpĕr = "**at all times.**"

Ūsquĕ = "**continually,**" "**without intermission,**" as—

He **always** *did this,*
Sēmpĕr hōc fēcĭt,
or *Nūnquam* hōc *nōn* fēcĭt. (See "**all**" (4).)
One would **always** *linger,*
Jŭvăt *ūsquĕ* mŏrārī.

Am.

Verb: in such phrases as—*I am to advance, He asked what he was to do,* is equivalent to "must," or "ought to." (See "**be,**" "**must,**" "**ought.**")

Amidst.

Preposition: ĭntĕr (acc.), as—

Amidst *the enemies, ĭntĕr* hōstēs.

NOTE.

Amidst *this tumult, mĕdĭō* hōc tŭmūltū.

Among.

Preposition: ĭn (abl.), ĭntĕr (acc.), ăpŭd (acc.), as—

Among *all nations,*
Ăpŭd ōmnēs gēntēs.
I reckon this **among** *good things,*
Hōc ĭn bŏnīs nūmĕrō.

NOTE.—"From among," ē (abl.), ex (abl.), as—

I choose you **from among** *all,*
Tē ē cūnctīs dēlĭgō.

And.

Conjunction: ĕt, -quĕ (never first), ātquĕ, āc (not before vowels), nēcnōn, as—

My king **and** *I,* ĕgŏ ĕt rēx mĕŭs.

But in many sentences it is best to get rid of the "and" by using one of the following constructions—

(1) A Relative Clause, as—

A messenger came **and** *said,*
Vēnĭt nūntĭŭs, *quī dīxĭt.*

Digitized by Google

(2) A Deponent Participle, as—

He came forward **and** *spoke as follows,*
In mĕdĭum prōgrēssŭs hāēc lŏcūtŭs ēst.

(3) The Ablative Absolute, as—

Scipio conquered Hannibal **and** *finished the war,*
Scīpĭō, vĭctō Hănnĭbălĕ, bēllum cōnfēcĭt.

(4) A Clause introduced by quum or postquam, as—

Scīpĭō, quum Hănnĭbălem vĭcĭssĕt, bēllum cōnfēcĭt.

When a Clause beginning with "and" contains a Negative, the Negative usually stands first in the Clause. Therefore—

instead of "ĕt nōn" write "nĕc" or "nĕquĕ."
instead of "ĕt nēmō" write "nĕquĕ quĭsquam."
instead of "ĕt nūnquam" write "nĕquĕ ūnquam," &c.

as—

He went away **and** *did* **not** *keep his word,*
Ăbĭit *nĕquĕ* fĭdem prāēstĭtĭt.

This is a new thing, **and** *you can bring forward* **no** *precedent,*
Hŏc nŏvum quĭddam ēst, nĕqŭe ūllum ēxēmplum prōfĕrrĕ pŏtēs.

Anew.

Adverb: "**again,**" q.v.

Another.

Adjective: ălĭŭs, ăltĕr = "the second" out of two, dĭvērsŭs (of a different kind).

You will generally use *ălĭŭs* to translate "another"; *ăltĕr* to translate "the other."

NOTE.

They look at **one another** *in astonishment,*
Ălĭŭs ălĭum mīrābūndī ĭntŭēntŭr.
They love **one another,**
Ĭntĕr sē ămānt.

NOTE the Adverbs—

At another time, ălĭās. *To another place,* ălĭō.
In another way, ălĭtĕr. *In another place,* ălĭbī.
One after another, dĕĭncĕps.

Any.

Pronoun: is generally used in conjunction with another word, as—"anyone," "anybody," "anything," and is translated by a pronoun.

Digitized by Google

But it is used in English, either—

(1) "affirmatively," i.e. including everyone, or

(2) "negatively," i.e. excluding everyone.

(1) *I say that anyone can do this* = I say that everyone can do this. (Affirmative.)

(2) *I deny that anyone can do this* = I say that no one can do this. (Negative.)

Anyone } In an Affirmative Sentence "quĭvīs,"
Anything } "quĭlĭbĕt."
Anyone } In a Negative Sentence quĭsquam, as—
Anything }

I say that **anyone** *can do this,*
Aĭō hōc *quēmvīs* făcĕrĕ pŏssĕ.

I deny that **anyone** *can do this,*
Nĕgō hōc *quēmquam* făcĕrĕ pŏssĕ.

The same rule holds good in Interrogative sentences. When the question expects the answer "Yes," use "quĭvīs." When the question expects the answer "No," use "quĭsquam."

Observe, however, that "any" is translated by "quĭs" after sĭ, nĭsĭ, nē (lest), num, quō, quāntō, as—

If **anyone** *thinks otherwise, he is wrong,*
Sĭ quĭs ălĭtĕr sēntĭt, ĕrrăt.

I will do this, unless **anyone** *forbids,*
Hōc făcĭam, nĭsĭ quĭs vĕtābĭt.

Adjective: is translated in Negative Sentences by ūllŭs, as—

I deny that **any** *race ought to be the slave of another,*
Nĕgō ūllam gēntem ăltĕrī sĕrvīrĕ dēbērĕ.

In Affirmative Sentences by "quĭvīs" or "quāntŭsvīs," as—

I am willing to attack **any** *number of Gauls,*
Quāntăsvīs cōpĭās Găllōrum ăggrĕdī vŏlŏ.

But it is translated by "quĭs" after sĭ, nĭsĭ, nē, nūm, quō, as—

If **any** *Gaul challenges me I will fight,*
Sĭ quĭs Găllŭs mē prŏvŏcābĭt, pūgnābō.

Digitized by Google

Anyhow.

Adverb:

(1) = "in any way," "somehow or other," "quācūmquĕ rătĭōnĕ," "quōquō mŏdō," as—

What can be cured I will cure **anyhow,**
Quāē sānārī pŏtĕrūnt quācūmquĕ rătĭōnĕ sānābō.

But in Negative sentences, "nūllā rătĭōnĕ," "nūllō mŏdō," as—

I cannot do this **anyhow,**
Nūllō mŏdō hōc făcĕrĕ pōssum.

(2) = "at any rate," "sāltem," "cērtē," "ŭtĭquĕ," as—

Take away this sorrow from me, or **anyhow** *lessen it,*
Ērĭpĕ mĭhĭ hūnc dŏlōrem āūt mĭnŭĕ sāltem.

Anywhere.

Adverb: ūsquam (Negative),
ŭbĭvīs, ŭbĭquĕ, ălĭcŭbĭ (Affirmative).

Apart.

Adverb: render by "sē-" or "dĭs-," compounded with the Verb, as—

To keep **apart,** sēcērnō, *or* dīvĭdō.

NOTE.

Beams two feet **apart,**
Trăbēs *dīstāntēs ĭntĕr sē* bīnōs pĕdēs.
Apart from, prŏcŭl ăb.

Apiece.

Is translated by using Distributive Numeral, as—

Two acres **apiece** *were allotted to* **each** *citizen,*
Bīnă jūgĕrā *sīngŭlīs* cīvĭbŭs ăssīgnātā sūnt.

Around.

Preposition: cīrcā (acc.), cīrcum (acc.) as—

The cities **around** *Capua,*
Ūrbēs cīrcā Căpŭam sĭtāē.

Adverb: cīrcā, cīrcum, often ūndĭquĕ, as—

Marshes extend **around,**
Ūndĭquĕ tēndūntŭr pălūdēs.

It is often compounded with the Verb, as—

To look **around,** cīrcūmspĭcĭō, &c.

As.

A Particle of Comparison: as—

Such	**as,**
Tālĭs	quālĭs.

Digitized by Google

So many or *as many* **as**,
Tŏt quŏt.
So great (or *much*) } **as**,
or *As great* (or *much*) }
Tāntŭs quāntŭs.
He is such **as** *he always has been*,
Tālĭs ēst quālĭs sēmpĕr fŭĭt.

In such sentences, "tālĭs," "tŏt," "tāntŭs," may sometimes be omitted, as—

I am not such **as** *I was*,
Nōn sum quālĭs ĕram.

"Quālĭs," "quāntŭs," "quŏt," "quŏtĭēs," and their compounds must never be omitted.

They follow, when declinable, the ordinary rules of the Relative Pronoun. (Rule 39.)

"The same as." (See "**same**.")

(2) "So—as," or "as—as," with Adjectives or Adverbs, tam—quam, or nōn mĭnŭs—quam, as—

Pompey is not {**so** / **as**} *fortunate* **as** *Cæsar*,
Pōmpēĭŭs nōn ēst *tam* fēlīx *quam* Cāēsăr.
The Gauls fought **as** *bravely* **as** *the Romans*,
Gāllī *nōn mĭnŭs* fōrtĭtĕr *quam* Rōmānī pūgnābānt.

Be very careful to avoid confusion between,

"Such—as," } "as" = a Relative Pronoun or
"So—as," &c., } Adverb.
and "Such—that," } "that" = "ŭt" (with Subj. Mood).
"So—that," &c., }

NOTE.

He was **so** *cowardly* **as** *to run away*,
= *He was* **so** *cowardly* **that** *he ran away*,
Ăděō ĕrăt īgnāvŭs, *ŭt* fŭgĕrĕt.

(3) "As if," tānquam, vĕlŭtī, nōn ălĭtĕr quam sī, all with Subjunctive, as—

You act **as if** *you feared some danger*,
Nōn ălĭtĕr ăgĭs *quam* sī pĕrīcŭlum ălĭquŏd tĭmĕās.

When used ironically, "as if forsooth," quăsĭ, as—

As if *I should betray my country*,
Quăsĭ ĕgŏ pătrĭam prŏdĭtūrŭs ēssem.

(4) A particle of Time = "when," quum, dum, ŭbĭ, as—

As *I was saying this, Cæsar came in*,
Quāe *dum* lŏquŏr, Cāesăr īngrēssŭs ēst.

Digitized by Google

(5) A particle of Cause,

= "since," quŏnĭam (with Ind.), quum (with Subj.), as—

As *this is so, I will depart,*
Quāē *quum* ĭtă sīnt, ĕgŏ dĭscēdam.

= "because," quŏd, quĭă, quum (with Subj.), often "quī" (with Subj.). (See List of Latin Conjunctions.)

(6) Observe the following phrases (noting when "as" is omitted in Latin)—

Cæsar **as** *dictator made many changes,*
Cāēsăr dĭctātŏr mūltă mūtāvĭt ("as" omitted).

Plato is **as** *good* **as** *all of them,*
Plătō ēst īnstăr ōmnĭum.

He is looked upon **as** *a very just man,*
Jūstĭssĭmŭs vĭr hăbētŭr ("as" omitted).

As *far* **as** *I know,*
Quŏd scĭam.

As *to the book I agree with you,*
Quŏd ăd lĭbrum ăttĭnĕt, tĭbĭ āssēntĭŏr.
or dē lĭbrō.

As *often* **as**, quŏtĭēs.
As *long* **as**, quāmdĭū.
As *soon* **as**, sĭmŭl ātquĕ, sĭmŭl, *or* quum.
As *much* **as**, } nōn mĭnŭs quam.
As *well* **as**, }
As *well* } = "**besides**," q. v.
As *well* **as** }
Twice **as** *big*, ālterō mājŏr.

Aside.

Adverb: usually rendered by a Verb compounded with "sē-" or "ā," as—sēvŏcō, sēgrĕgō, sēpōnō, āvērtō, ābdūcō—

I put it **aside**,
Hōc sēpŏsŭī.

He turned the blow **aside**,
Āvērtĭt īctum.

Note the phrase—

He said it **aside** *to me,*
Hōc mĭhĭ ĭn āūrem dīxĭt (lit. *into my ear*).

At.

Preposition:

(1) Of place, as "at Rome," "at Carthage," &c. Such phrases are expressed in Latin by the Locative Case, a Case which in form is the same as the Genitive or the Ablative.

Digitized by Google

RULE.—Singular names of towns in the First or Second Declension are put in the Genitive: all others in the Ablative, as—

Rōmāē, "at Rome" (Nom. Rōmă, 1st Decl.).

Tărēntī, "at Tarentum" (Nom. Tărēntum, 2nd Decl.).

Cārthāgĭnĕ, "at Carthage" (Nom. Cārthāgō, 3rd Decl.).

Sārdĭbŭs, "at Sardes" (Nom. pl. Sārdēs, no Sing., 3rd Decl.).

Ăthēnīs, "at Athens" (Nom. pl. Ăthēnāē, no Sing., 1st Decl.).

Observe "at home," dŏmī (*not* dŏmūs).

When "at" means "near a place," but not actually in it, use "ăd" or "ăpŭd," e.g. in the case of battles—

The battle fought **at** *Cannæ,*

Prāēlĭum {ăd / ăpŭd} Cănnās cōmmĭssum (*not* Cănnīs).

(2) Of time: ăd (acc.), or the Ablative Case, as—

They assembled **at** *the day fixed,*
Ăd dĭem cōnvēnērūnt,
He came **at** *the right time,*
Tĕmpŏrĕ vēnĭt.

NOTICE the phrase—

At *nightfall,* sŭb nōctem.

(3) Of price: "at a high price," &c.
Render by Ablative Case, as—"māgnō prĕtĭō."

The victory was gained **at** *the price of much bloodshed,*
Vĭctōrĭă mūltō sānguĭnĕ stĕtĭt.

A few words expressing price are put in the Genitive (omitting prĕtĭī), as—

Māgnī, "at a great price."
Mĭnōrĭs, "at a less price."
Pārvī, "at a small price."
Quāntī? "at what price?" (See Rule 9.)

(4) Observe the phrases—

He is **at** *hand,* ădēst.

The safety of all is **at** *stake,*
Ăgĭtŭr ūnĭvērsă ōmnĭum sălūs.

I will do it **at once**, i.e. *immediately,*
Hōc *stătim* făcĭam.

Digitized by Google

You cannot do both **at once**, i.e. *together*.
Ŭtrūmquĕ *sĭmŭl* făcĕrĕ nōn pŏtĕs.
This **at least** *I can do*,
Hōc *sāltem* făcĕrĕ pōssum.
At *first*, prīmum.
At *length*, } tāndem *or* dēnĭquĕ.
At *last*, }
He aimed **at** *the boy with a stone*,
Pŭĕrum sāxō pĕtĭīt ("at" omitted because included in the Verb).
The gods laughed **at** *Vulcan*,
Dĭī Vūlcānum īrrīdēbānt ("at" omitted because compounded with the Verb).

At *his mother's bidding*,
Mātrĕ jŭbēntĕ.
At *Cæsar's advice*,
Āuctōrĕ Cāēsārĕ.

Away.

Adverb: render by Verb compounded with "ā" or "āb," as—

Āufĕrŏ, *I take* **away**.
Ăbĕō, *I go* **away**, &c.

Back.
Backwards.

Adverb: rĕtrō, rĕtrōrsum, as—

I follow the footsteps **back**,
Vēstīgĭă rĕtrō sĕquŏr.

Often expressed by "rĕ-" compounded with the Verb, as—

Rĕdĕō, *I come* **back**.
Rēddō, *I give* **back**.
Rĕdūcō, *I lead* **back**, &c.

NOTE the phrase—

Backwards *and forwards*, ūltrō cĭtrōquĕ.
To go **back**, i.e. *to become worse*, dētĕrĭŏr fĭĕrī.

Be.

Verb:

(1) Auxiliary Verb, Active and Passive, as—

He was living, vīvēbăt. *He was killed*, ŏccīsŭs ēst.

(2) When the Verb "to be" is followed by another Verb in the Infinitive Mood (in English), you will put the Gerundive (not the Infinitive) in Latin, as—

Parents **are to be loved**,
Amāndī sūnt pārēntēs.

Digitized by Google

Laws **are to be obeyed,**
Pārēndum ēst lēgĭbŭs.

It is to be hoped *that he will come,*
Spērāndum ēst ŏum ēssĕ vēntūrum.

NOTE the phrase—

It **is** *better to go away,*
Prāēstăt ăbīrĕ.

Because.

Conjunction: quŏd, quĭă, both usually with Indicative (Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua), as—

I do this **because** *you bid me,*
Hōc făcĭō quŏd mē jŭbēs.

"Because" can sometimes be rendered by a Participle, as—

Cæsar, **because** *he thought the enemy was at hand, drew up his men,*
Caēsăr, rătŭs hōstem ădēssĕ, sŭōs īnstrūxĭt.

Or by the Ablative Absolute, as—

Cæsar, **because** *the enemy was in sight, advanced,*
Caēsăr vīsō hōstĕ prōgrēssŭs ēst;

Or often by "quum" or "quī" with Subjunctive, as in the sentence above—

Caēsăr, quum hōstem vĭdērĕt, prōgrēssŭs ēst.

Preposition: "because of" = "on account of," prōptĕr (acc.), ŏb (acc.), prāē (used only of a preventing cause—abl.), dē (abl.), as—

Because *of the number of missiles you will not see the sun,*
Sōlem prāē jăcŭlōrum mūltĭtūdĭnĕ nōn vĭdēbĭtĭs.

To weep **because** *of his son's death,*
Flērĕ prōptĕr mōrtem
or ŏb mōrtem
or dē mōrtĕ } fīlĭī.

Before.

Adverb: āntĕ, āntĕā, as—

I never saw you **before,**
Nūnquam tē vīdī āntĕā.

Long **before,**
Mūltō āntĕ.

It is often compounded with the Verb, as—

Āntĕēō *or* prāēēō, *to go* **before.**
Āntĕpōnō *or* prāēpōnō, *to put* **before.**

Digitized by Google

Preposition:

(1) Of position, āntĕ (acc.), prāē (abl.), prō (abl.), as—

The enemy was **before** *the walls,*
Hōstīs ĕrăt *āntĕ* mūrōs.
He carries the spoils **before** *him.*
Spŏlĭă *prāē* sē fĕrt.
Before *the door lies the dog,*
Prō fŏrĭbŭs jăcĕt cănĭs.

(2) = "in presence of," āntĕ (acc.), ăpŭd (acc.), cōram (abl.), as—

Before *the praetor,* { āntĕ prāētōrem, / ăpŭd prāētōrem, / cōrām prāētōrĕ. }

(3) = "in preference to," āntĕ (acc.);
= "in comparison with," prāē (abl.).

Often by Compound Verb, as—

Cicero is put **before** *Hortensius,*
Cĭcĕrō Hōrtēnsĭō prāēfĕrtŭr.

(4) = "of time," āntĕ (acc.).

Conjunction: āntĕquam, prĭūsquam.

Be very careful to distinguish the Conjunction from the Adverb, as—

I never saw you **before,**
Nūnquam tē vīdī *āntĕā.* (Adverb.)

I never saw you **before** *I came to Rome,*
Nūnquam tē vīdī *āntĕquam* Rōmām vēnī. (Conjunction.)

"Āntĕquam" and "prĭūsquam" take the Indicative, when the fact referred to has already taken place: otherwise the Subjunctive. Always Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua. (See List of Latin Conjunctions.)

Where we have the Pluperfect in English, it is usually the Aorist in Latin, as—

Before *day had dawned, Cæsar set out,*
Āntĕquam dīlūxĭt, Cāēsăr prŏfēctŭs ēst.

NOTICE that such a phrase can be rendered by Abl. Abs., as—

Nōndum sōlĕ ōrtō Cāēsăr prŏfēctŭs ēst.

NOTE the phrase—

Before *he was six years old he died.*
Nōndum sēx ānnōs nātŭs, dĭscēssĭt.
lit. *Not yet six years old.*

Digitized by Google

Beforehand.

Adverb: Usually rendered by "prāē" compounded with the Verb, as—

To be **beforehand** *with,* prāēvērtō.

Behind.

Adverb: pōst, pōnĕ, ā tērgō, as—

Before or **behind,**
Āntĕ āūt pōst.

Go before: I will follow **behind,**
Ī prāē: pōnĕ sĕquăr.

They attacked the enemy **behind** (or *from behind*),
Hōstem ā tērgō ădōrtī sūnt.

It is often rendered by "rĕ-," compounded with the Verb, as—

Rēspĭcĭō, *to look* **behind.**
Rĕlĭnquō, *to leave* **behind.**

Preposition: pōst (acc.), pōnĕ (acc.), as—

Behind *the rider sits black Care,*
Pōst ĕquĭtem sĕdĕt ātrā Cūrā.

NOTE the phrase—

Behind *hand.* **Behind** *time.*
Sērūs *or* tārdūs.

Being.

Participle:

(1) The Present Participle of the Verb "to be" is not used in Latin. When it occurs in English, you must either omit it in Latin, or use another part of the Verb, as—

You **being** *our leader, we fear nothing,*
Tē dūcĕ nĭhĭl tĭmēmūs.

This **being** *so, I will depart,*
Quāē *quum* ĭtă *sĭnt,* dĭscēdam.

The Gauls, **being** *very courageous, fought bravely,*
Gāllī, gēns fŏrtĭssĭmă, ăcrĭtĕr pūgnāvērūnt.
or Gallī, *quum ĕssĕnt* fŏrtĭssĭmī vĭrī, ăcrĭtĕr pūgnāvērūnt.

(2) When "being," in an English sentence, is joined to a Past Participle, it must be rendered in Latin by the Past Participle Passive, as—

The enemy **being** *routed fled,*
Fūsī hōstēs fūgērūnt.

Cæsar **being** *made consul changed the laws,*
Cāēsăr fāctūs cōnsŭl lēgēs mūtāvĭt.

Digitized by Google

Cæsar **being** *made consul the laws were changed,*
Caēsărĕ fāctō cōnsūlĕ mūtātāē sūnt lēgēs.

Below.
Beneath.

Adverb: Īnfrā, sūbtĕr, as—

Above and **below,** sŭprā ĕt sūbtĕr.

Preposition: Īnfrā (acc.), sūbtĕr (acc., rarely abl.), sŭb (acc. or abl.), as—

Below *the town,* Īnfrā ŏppĭdum.
Beneath *the wall,* Sūbtĕr mūrum.

To go **beneath** *the gallows,*
Sŭb *fūrcam* īrĕ. (Acc. with verb of "motion.")

To stand **beneath** *the gallows,*
Sŭb *fūrcā* stārĕ. (Abl. with verb of "rest.")

Beside.

Preposition: = "near," prŏpĕ (acc.), ăd (acc.), jūxtā (acc.) often rendered by "ăd," compounded with Verb, as

He sits **beside** *the king,*
Rēgī āssĭdĕt.

NOTE the phrases—

It is **beside** *my purpose* (i.e. *foreign to my purpose*),
Ālĭēnum ēst ā cōnsĭlĭō mĕō.
Beside *the point* (i.e. *unconnected with the matter in hand*),
Nĭhĭl ăd rem.
He is **beside** *himself = he is mad,*
Īnsānĭt *or* īnsānŭs ēst.

Besides.

Adverb: "as well," prāētĕrĕā, īnsŭpĕr (poetical), ūltrō, sŭpĕr (poetical), as—

Add these misfortunes **besides,**
Āddĕ hōs prāētĕrĕā cāsūs.

Often = "also," ĕtĭam, quŏquĕ, ĕt.

Preposition: "as well as," prāētĕr (acc.), ăd (acc.), as—

They brought ten each **besides** *themselves,*
Prāētĕr sē dēnōs ăddūxērūnt.

It may sometimes be rendered by "nōn mĭnŭs quam," as—

Besides *Pyrrhus, Hannibal invaded Italy,*
Hānnĭbăl *nōn mĭnŭs quam* Pȳrrhŭs Ītălĭam īnvāsĭt.

NOTE the phrase—

Besides *timber the land produces corn,*
Rĕgĭō *quum* mātĕrĭam *tum ĕtĭam* frūmĕntum gīgnĭt.

Digitized by Google

Better.

In the phrases "you had better be *silent*," &c. (see "**had**" (3).)

Between.

Adverb: render by "Intĕr," compounded with the Verb, as—

I come **between,**
Intērvĕnĭō.
I set **between,**
Intērpōnō.

Preposition: Intĕr (acc.), as—

A quarrel arose **between** *Agamemnon and Achilles,*
Lītēs īntĕr Ătrīdēn ĕt Pēlīdem ēxōrtāē sūnt.

Sometimes may be rendered by "mĕdĭŭs," as—

He walked **between** *the young men,*
Mĕdĭŭs jŭvĕnum ībăt. (Poetical.)

Beyond.

Adverb: sŭprā, ūltrā, ūltĕrĭŭs. It is often included in the Latin Verb, as—

To go **beyond** = *to surpass,* &c,

Preposition:

(1) ūltrā (acc.), in all senses, as—

Beyond *the Po,*	Ūltrā Pădum.
Beyond *his strength,*	Ūltrā vīrēs.
Beyond *measure,*	Ūltrā mŏdum.

So also sŭprā (acc.),
prāētĕr (acc.).

(2) ēxtrā (acc.) = "outside," as—

Beyond *his province,* ēxtrā prōvĭncĭam.

(3) trāns (acc.) = "across," as—

Beyond *the river,* trāns flūmĕn.

(4) āntĕ = "above," as—

Beautiful **beyond** *all women,*
Pūlchrā āntĕ ăllĭās ōmnēs.

NOTE the phrase—

This is **beyond** *endurance,*
Hōc ēst grăvĭŭs quam quŏd tŏlĕrārī pŏssĭt.

Digitized by Google

Both.

Adjective:

āmbō = "both" (together);
ŭtērquĕ = "both" (considering each separately), as—

Caius and Balbus were Consuls: **both** *were Roman citizens;* **both** *were sent into Spain* (i.e. *each was a Roman citizen; both together were sent into Spain*).

Ŭtērquĕ ĕrăt cīvĭs Rōmānŭs; *āmbō* ĭn Hīspānĭam mīssī sūnt.

NOTE the phrases—

On **both** *sides,* Ŭtrīmqūĕ (Adv.)
In **both** *directions,* Ŭtrōquĕ (Adv.).

Conjunction: occurs in such sentences, as—

He was **both** *brave and wise,*

which may be rendered—

Ĕrăt *ĕt* fŏrtĭs *ĕt* prūdēns,
quum fŏrtĭs *tum* prūdēns,
tum fŏrtĭs *tum* prūdēns,
nōn mĭnŭs fŏrtĭs *quam* prūdēns,
nōn sōlum fŏrtĭs *vērum ĕtĭam* prūdēns.

But.

Conjunction: "sĕd" (first in its Clause), as—

He was brave, **but** *not wise,*
Ĕrăt fŏrtĭs *sĕd* nŏn prūdēns.

"Vērum" (first in its Clause), as—

Not only in acting, **but** *even in thinking,*
Nōn sōlum ăgēndō *vērum* ĕtĭam cōgĭtāndō.

"Āutem" (second in its Clause), as—

I write nothing, **but** *I read much,*
Nĭhĭl scrĭbō, lĕgō *āutem* mūltă.

"Vērō" (second in its Clause), as—

Three parts had crossed the river, **but** *the fourth was left,*
Trēs pārtēs flūmĕn trānslĕrānt, quārtă *vērō* rĕlĭctă ēst.

"Ăt" (first in its Clause). Usually at the beginning of a fresh sentence = "but yet," "but you say," "but you will say," "but you object," as—

But *you tell me the memory grows weak. No doubt, unless you use it,*
Ăt mĕmŏrĭă mĭnŭĭtŭr. Crēdō, nĭsĭ ĕam ēxĕrcĕās.

Preposition: = "except," prāĕtĕr (acc.), nĭsĭ (see "except"), as—

He killed all **but** *ten,*
Prāĕtĕr dĕcem ōmnēs ĭntĕrfĕcĭt.

Digitized by Google

NOTICE the expression—

The mountain was nothing **but** *a cloud.* (Lit. *nothing else than a cloud.*)
Mōns ĕrăt nĭhĭl ălĭŭd quam nūbēs.

NOTE.—"**But**" in English often = the Relative with a Negative, as—

There was no one **but** *said = There was no one who did not say.*

Render in Latin by "quīn" with Subj.

Nēmō ĕrăt, quīn dīcĕrĕt.

NOTE.

I cannot **but** *think = I cannot help thinking.*
Latin—*I cannot* **not** *think,*
Nōn pōssum *nōn* pŭtārĕ.

NOTE.—**But** = "only," mŏdŏ—

If I could **but** *see him, I should rejoice.*
Sī vĭdērĕ mŏdŏ pōssem, gāŭdērem.

NOTE.—"**But** that" = "unless," nĭsĭ, as—

The city would have been taken **but that** *Cæsar came,*
Nĭsĭ Cāēsăr vēnĭssĕt, ūrbs căptă ĕssĕt.

By.

Preposition:

(1) Sign of "Agent" or "Instrument." (See Rule 29.)

(2) = "near," ăd (acc.), ăpŭd (acc.), as—

By *the gate,* ăd pōrtam.

(3) Of time ("by night"—"by day"), Abl. without Preposition. "Nōctĕ," "dĭē"; or, "nōctū," "ĭntērdĭū" (Adverbs). Also "pĕr nōctem," "pĕr dĭem," "during the night" or "day." "Day by day," "ĭndĭēs."

(4) Of space. Ablative without Preposition, as—

By *land and sea,* tĕrrā mărĭquĕ.

(5) = "by means of," pĕr (acc.), as—

By (*means of*) *a letter,*
Pĕr lĭttĕrās.
By (*means of*) *force,*
Pĕr vīm, *or simply* vī (*abl.*)
He sent a letter **by** *a messenger,*
Lĭttĕrās pĕr nūntĭum mīsĭt.

(6) = "in the name of," pĕr (acc.), as—

By *the gods,* pĕr dĕōs,

Digitized by Google

In a number of other instances the Preposition "by" may be rendered by an Ablative Case without a Preposition, as—

A place fit for an ambuscade **by nature,**
Lŏcŭs *nātūrā* īnsĭdĭīs āptŭs.

He held him **by the hand,**
Mănū ĕum tĕnŭĭt.

By *your leave,*
Tŭā vĕnĭā.

Greater **by** *half,*
Dīmĭdĭō mājŏr.

By *chance,*
Cāsū, or fŏrtĕ.

Adverb: "by" is usually rendered by a Preposition included in, or compounded with, the Verb, as—

To go **by,** prāētĕrĕō.
To pass **by** (=*to neglect*), ŏmĭttō.
To stand **by,** ādsīstō; often=*to help*, jŭvō, &c.
To come **by** (=*to obtain*), ădĭpīscŏr.

NOTE the phrases—

By *degrees,* pāūlātim.
By *and* **by**=*soon.*
By *turns,* vĭcĭssim.

Can.

Verb: always followed in Latin by another Verb in the Infinitive Mood. (See Rule 33.) "Pŏssum," "quĕō" (rare, except with a Negative), as—

I **can** *see you,*
Tē vĭdērĕ pŏssum.

When "can" = "may," it is rendered by lĭcĕt, as—

You **can** *go, if you like,*
Lĭcĕt tĭbĭ, sī vīs, ăbīrĕ.

Cannot.

Verb: (see Rule 33), nĕquĕō, nōn pŏssum, as—

I **cannot** *write the rest,*
Nĕquĕō rĕlĭqŭă scrĭbĕrĕ.

NOTE the phrase—

It **cannot** *be denied that Cæsar is a great general,*
Nĕgārī nōn pŏtĕst quīn Cāēsăr sĭt māgnŭs īmpĕrātŏr.

But you may often substitute "prŏcŭl dŭbĭō," "without doubt," as—

Prŏcŭl dŭbĭō Cāēsăr ēst māgnŭs īmpĕrātŏr.

Certain.

Adjective: quīdam (Adj. or Pronoun), as—

A **certain** *man,*
Vĭr quīdam.

He sent **certain** *soldiers,*
Mĭsĭt quōsdam ē mĭlĭtĭbŭs.

Digitized by Google

Close to.

Preposition : = "**near,**" q.v.

Concerning.

Preposition : dē (abl.), as—

I have thought much **concerning** *this matter,*
Hāc *dē* rē mūltă dēlībĕrāvī.

Could.

Past Tense of the Verb "can," q.v., used in the same way (Rule 33).

Did.
Do.

Verb :

(1) făcĭō, &c.

(2) Sign of a tense, specially with a Negative, e.g. in English, we say—

	He **does** *not know,*	*He* **did** *not come,*
more often than—	"He knows not."	"He came not."
Latin—	Nēscĭt.	Nŏn vēnĭt.

(3) Used to introduce a question, e.g.—

Do *you fear the enemy?* **Did** *Cæsar conquer?*

In Latin the part of the Verb used *in a question* is the same as that used *in a statement,* but the fact that it is a question, which is shown in English by the order of the words, is shown in Latin by the use of an Interrogative Particle, such as -nĕ, num, nōnnĕ, e.g.—

Num hōstem tĭmēs? Vīcĭtnĕ Cāēsăr?

"Nōnnĕ" is used when the answer expected is "Yes," "num" when the answer expected is "No." "-Nĕ" is indifferent.

Do *you not see him?*
Nōnnĕ ĕum vĭdēs?

In double questions, e.g.—

Do *you hear me or not?*
Did *Cæsar conquer or fly?*

in Latin you put an Interrogative Particle with each part of the question, such as ŭtrum...ăn, -nĕ...ăn, e.g.—

Ŭtrum mē āudīs ānnōn?
Vīcĭtnĕ Cāēsăr ăn fŭgĭt?

Digitized by Google

(4) "do" is also used as a sign of the Imperative Mood in English, e.g.—

Do *not run = Run not,*
Nē cŭcūrrĕrĭs.
Do *not depart = Depart not,*
Nōlī ăbīrĕ (lit. *Be unwilling to depart*).

(5) When used emphatically, it may be rendered by "făc," e.g.—

Do *take care of your health,*
Făc vălētūdĭnem cūrēs.

Down.

Adverb: hŭmī (which means literally "on the ground"), as—

He sat **down** (i.e. *down on the ground*),
Sēdĭt hŭmī.

Usually expressed by dē, compounded with the Verb, as—

To run **down,** dēcūrrō.
To look **down,** dēspĭcĭō.
To send **down,** dēmĭttō.
To go **down** *hill,* dēscēndō.

Or it is included in the meaning of the Verb, as—

I lie **down,** jăcĕō, rĕcŭbō.
I sit **down,** cōnsīdō.

Preposition: dē (abl.), as—

He leaped **down** *from the wall,*
Dē mūrō dēsĭlŭĭt.

NOTE the phrase—

Down *stream,* sĕcūndō flūmĭnĕ.

During.

Preposition: pĕr (acc.), as—

During *all that time,*
Pĕr ōmnĕ ĭd tēmpŭs.

ĭn (abl.), as—

During *the consulship of Cicero,*
Ĭn cōnsŭlātū Cĭcĕrōnĭs.

But such sentences may be rendered by Abl. Abs., as—

Cĭcĕrōnĕ cōnsŭlĕ.

Or by "quum" (with Subj.), as—

Quum Cĭcĕrō cōnsŭl ēssĕt.

NOTE.

During *the war,* dum bēllum *gĕrĭtŭr,*
During *all the reign of Romulus,*
Dum Rōmŭlŭs rēgnābăt,
or Rēgnāntĕ Rōmŭlō.

Digitized by Google

Each.

Adjective: Be careful to distinguish

Each when it means *one of two*, from *each* when it means *one of any number larger than two*, as—

Each *of the consuls commanded an army,*
Ŭtērquĕ cōnsŭl,
Ŭtērquĕ cōnsŭlum,
Ŭtērquĕ ē cōnsŭlĭbŭs
} ēxērcĭtŭī prāēfēctŭs ēst.
The senators **each** *for himself praised Cicero,*
Sĕnātōrēs prō sē quīsquĕ Cĭcĕrōnēm lāudāvērūnt.

The word "quīsquĕ" is nearly always found with some part of the Reflexive Pronoun "sē" or the Possessive "sŭŭs" in the same clause, so much so that in the sentence given above, if the words "for himself" were not in the English, it would be right to add them in the Latin. Thus—

Each *one is afraid,*
Sĭbĭ quīsquĕ tĭmĕt.

I gave **each** *his share,*
Sŭam cūīquĕ pārtem dĕdĭ.

For the use of "quīsquĕ" with superlatives, see "all" (5).

Each is rendered by "ūnūsquīsquĕ" when it means "everyone," as—

Set **each** *king before your eyes,*
Pōnĭtĕ āntĕ ŏcŭlōs ūnūmquēmquĕ rēgem.

Each is rendered by "sīngŭlī," when it means "one by one," or "each taken singly," as—

Cæsar appointed a quæstor to **each** *legion,*
Cāēsăr *sīngŭlīs* lĕgĭōnĭbŭs quāēstōrem dĕdĭt.

Each *day* (i.e. *one day after another*),
Ĭn dĭēs *sīngŭlōs.*

Each is rendered by "ōmnĭs" or "nēmō nōn," when it means "all" or "every," as—

Each *soldier was ready to die for his leader,*
Ōmnĭs mīlĕs prō dŭcĕ mŏrī pārātŭs ĕrăt,
Nēmō mīlĭtum prō dŭcĕ mŏrī *nōn* pārātŭs ĕrăt.

Each other.

(1) Of two persons only, "āltĕr—āltĕr," as—

The brothers hate **each other,**
Frātrēs āltĕr āltĕrum ōdĕrūnt.

Digitized by Google

(2) Of more than two persons, "ălĭŭs—ălĭŭs," as—

The soldiers encourage **each other,**
Mīlĭtēs ălĭŭs ălĭum (*or* īntĕr sē) hōrtāntŭr.

NOTE.—"Each year," quŏtānnīs (adv.); "each day," quŏtīdĭē (adv.).

Either.

Conjunction: (followed by "or,") āūt ... āūt, vĕl ... vĕl with a slight difference in meaning, as—

I shall buy **either** *fish or vegetables* (*but certainly not both*),
Āūt pīscēs āūt ŏlĕrā ĕmam.

I shall buy **either** *fish or vegetables* (*certainly one, perhaps both*),
Vĕl pīscēs vĕl ŏlĕrā ĕmam.

Thus "we will either conquer or die," would be—"āūt vīncēmŭs āūt mŏrĭēmŭr."

NOTE that "āūt" is always to be used after a Negative, as—

I deny that we ought to favour **either** *Cæsar or Pompey,*
Nĕgō *āūt* Cāēsărī *āūt* Pŏmpēĭō ā nōbīs făvēndum ēssĕ.

The Negative, however, is often combined with the Conjunction. Thus—

I have not seen **either** *Cæsar or Pompey,*

becomes

I have seen **neither** *Cæsar nor Pompey,*
Nĕc Cāēsărem *nĕc* Pŏmpēĭum vīdī.

Pronoun: pron. adj.: āltĕrŭtĕr.

Else.

Adjective: ălĭŭs, as—

No one **else,** nēmō ălĭŭs.

Adverb:

(1) = "besides," praetĕrĕā, as—

All things **else** *are worthless,*
Ōmnĭă prāētĕrĕā sōrdēnt.

(2) = "otherwise." Render by "ĕnim," as—

You have not seen him, **else** *you would have told me,*
Nōn ĕum vīdīstī, mĭhĭ *ĕnim* dīxīssēs.

Enough.

Adverb: sătĭs, often followed by Gen. (See Rule 8.)

Digitized by Google

Enough in such expressions as "brave **enough** to . . ." is rendered by "tam," "ădĕō," "ĭtă," as—

He was brave **enough** *not to fear the elephant,*
Latin—*He was so brave that he did not fear the elephant,*
Tam fōrtĭs ĕrăt ŭt ĕlĕphāntem nōn tĭmērĕt.

Notice the phrase—"to be enough," sūffĭcĕrĕ.

Even.

Adverb:

(1) ĕtĭam, very often with Comparatives, as—

Cæsar is greater **even** *than Pompey,*
Ĕtĭam Pŏmpēĭō mājŏr ēst Caēsăr.

(2) vĕl, often with Comparatives or Superlatives, as—

Even *the greatest valour was of no avail,*
Vĕl sūmmă vīrtŭs nĭhĭl prōfŭĭt.

(3) īpsĕ, as—

Even *Pompey was worsted,*
Pŏmpēĭŭs *īpsĕ* vīctŭs ēst.

(4) = "not even," "nē . . . quĭdem," with the word on which stress is laid between "nē" and "quĭdem," as—

Not **even** *Cicero could save him,*
Nē Cĭcĕrō *quĭdem* ĕum sērvārĕ pŏtŭĭt.

Ever.

Adverb: ūnquam = "at any time," the use of which must be distinguished from "sēmpĕr" = "at all times."

It is only used—(1) in negative sentences; (2) in interrogative sentences; (3) after comparatives, as—

No mortal has **ever** *attained such glory,*
Nēmō *ūnquam* mŏrtālĭs tāntum dĕcŭs āssĕcūtŭs ēst.

He asked him why he had **ever** *run away,*
Rŏgābăt ĕum cūr *ūnquam* fŭgĭssĕt.

Greater than **ever** *before,*
Mājŏr quam ūnquam āntĕā.

Ever after "sĭ" or "num" is rendered by "quāndō" or "ălĭquāndō," as—

If rain **ever** *keeps the farmer at home,*
Ăgrĭcŏlam sī quāndō cōntĭnĕt ĭmbĕr.

Evermore.

Ever or *evermore* = "at all times," or "for ever," is

Digitized by Google

rendered by "sēmpĕr," "ūsquĕ" (poetical), "nūnquam nōn," "ĭn āĕtērnum" (but not "ūnquam"), as—

I will **ever** *love you,*
Tē sēmpĕr ămābō,
or, Tē nūnquam nōn ămābō.
One would **ever** *linger,*
Jŭvăt ūsquĕ mŏrārī.
Farewell for **ever**, *or* **evermore**,
Ĭn āĕtērnum vălē.

Every.

Adjective: ōmnĭs, nēmō nōn. (See "**each.**") With Numeral Adjectives, "quĭsquĕ," as—

The general beheaded **every** *tenth man,*
Ĭmpĕrātŏr *dĕcĭmum quēmquĕ* mīlĭtem sĕcūrī pĕrcūssĭt.

Everybody.
Everyone.

(1) = "each one." Latin, "prō sē quĭsquĕ"; *or* "ūnūsquĭsquĕ," as—

Everyone *must use his own judgment,*
Sŭō cuĭquĕ jūdĭcĭō ūtēndum ēst.

(2) = "anyone," quĭvĭs, quĭlĭbĕt, nēmō nōn, ōmnēs, as—

Everyone *agrees that he is a great man,*
Cōnsēntĭūnt ōmnēs ĕum ēssĕ māgnum vĭrum.

(See "**each**" and "**any.**")

Except.

Preposition: prāĕtĕr (acc.), as—

No one **except** *Lucullus,*
Nēmō prāĕtĕr Lūcūllum.

It might be rendered by Ablative Absolute, as—

Nēmō, ēxcēptō Lūcūllō.

Conjunction: nĭsĭ, as—

Friendship cannot exist **except** *in good men,*
Nĭsĭ ĭn bŏnĭs ămīcĭtĭă ēssĕ nōn pŏtēst.

Except is not often used in English with Verbs, as in Psalm 127. "Except the Lord build the house," &c. (See "**unless.**")

Far.

Adverb:

(1) In literal sense: "far away," "far off." Prŏcŭl,

Digitized by Google

lōngē (usually followed by Ablative with Preposition), as—

He is **far** *from home,*
Prŏcŭl (or lōngē) ăbēst ā dŏmō.

(2) = "by far," lōngē, mūltō, as—

The matter is **far** *otherwise,*
Lōngē ălĭtĕr rēs sē hăbĕt.

Far *the most powerful state of all,*
Mūltō pŏtēntĭssĭmă ōmnĭum cīvĭtās.

(3) With "how," quŏūsquĕ, in Interrogative Sentences, as—

How **far** *will you abuse our patience,*
Quŏūsquĕ ăbūtĕrĕ pătĭēntĭā nōstrā?

"Quātĕnŭs" in Dependent Clauses (41), as—

We must consider how **far** *he ought to go,*
Vĭdēndum ēst quātĕnŭs prōgrĕdī dēbĕăt.

Of space, as—

How **far** *is Rome from Tarentum?*
Quŏt mīlĭă
or Quŏt mīlĭbŭs } pāssŭum Rōmā ā Tărēntō dīstăt?

Literally "how many miles."

How **far** *is heaven from earth?*
Quāntum dīstăt ā cāēlō tērrā?

(4) "as far as" = "up to." Preposition, "tĕnŭs" (Abl. sometimes Gen.). Always after its case, as—

As **far** *as the chin,* mēntō tĕnŭs.
As **far** *as Mount Taurus,* Taūrō tĕnŭs.

NOTE the phrases—

As **far** *as I know,* quŏd scĭam.
Far *and wide,* lātē.
As **far** *as concerns me,* quŏd ăd mē ăttĭnĕt.

(5) With "so" or "thus," hāctĕnŭs, ĕātĕnŭs, as—

Thus **far** *for to-day: let us postpone the rest,*
In hūnc dĭem hăctĕnŭs: rĕlĭquă dĭffĕrāmŭs.

They went so **far** *as they could with safety,*
Ĕātĕnŭs prōgrēssī sūnt, quŏăd tūtō pŏtŭērūnt.

NOTE the phrase—

So **far** *from* . . . *that.*
Ădĕō nōn . . . ŭt.
or Nōn mŏdŏ nōn . . . sĕd.

Digitized by Google

As—

He was so **far** *from blaming him that he even praised him,*
Ădĕō nōn ĕum cūlpāvĭt *ŭt* ĕtĭăm lāūdārĕt,

or *Nōn mŏdŏ nōn* ĕum cūlpāvĭt *sĕd* ĕtĭam lāūdāvĭt.

For.

Preposition: In Latin "for" is very often only the sign of a Dative Case (see Rule 13), as—

A good man should live not **for** *himself but* **for** *his country,*
Vĭr bŏnŭs nŏn sĭbĭ sĕd pătrĭāē dēbĕt vīvĕrĕ.

I will provide **for** *your safety,*
Sălūtī tŭāē cōnsŭlam.

It has the following uses as a Preposition: (1) "instead of"; (2) "on behalf of"; (3) "in proportion to"; (4) "because of"; (5) "with a view to"; (6) "during"; (7) of time (fixing a date); (8) of price; (9) "towards," "in the direction of."

(1) = "instead of," prō (abl.), as—

They use copper **for** *money,*
Prō nūmmīs āērĕ ūtūntŭr.

(2) = "on behalf of," prō (abl.), as—

To die **for** *one's country,*
Prō pătrĭā mŏrī.

(3) = "in proportion to," prō (abl.), as—

Their lands were small **for** *the number of the people,*
Prō mūltĭtūdĭnĕ hŏmĭnum āngūstī ĕrānt fĭnēs.

NOTE the phrase—

Eloquent enough **for** *a Theban,*
Sătĭs dĭsērtŭs *ŭt* Thēbānŭs.

(4) = "because of," prāē (used only of a preventing cause, abl.), prōptĕr (acc.), ŏb (acc.), dē (abl.), as—

I could not speak **for** *joy,*
Prāē gāūdĭō lŏquī nōn pŏtĕram.

For *that reason,*
Prōptĕr (*or* ŏb) ĕam cāūsam.

For *these reasons,*
Hīs dē cāūsīs.

NOTE the phrase—

I blame you **for** *doing this = I blame you because you do this.*
Tē, quŏd hŏc făcĭs, cūlpō.

Digitized by Google

(5) = "with a view to," ĭn (acc.), ăd (acc.), or Dative Case, as—

To live **for** *the day,*
Ĭn diēm vīvĕrĕ.

Ships ready **for** *sailing,*
Nāvēs ăd nāvīgāndum pŏrātāē.

For *taking a city, we need ladders,*
Ăd ūrbem căpĭēndam ŏpŭs ēst scālīs.

Useful **for** *nothing,*
Ūtĭlĭs ăd nūllam rem,
or Ūtĭlĭs nūllī rĕī.

Such phrases are sometimes rendered by the Acc. in Apposition (Rule 3), as—

They chose Scipio **for** *general,*
Scīpĭōnem dŭcem ēlēgērūnt.

(6) Of time, "during," expressed by Acc. (Rule 23), pĕr (acc.), as—

He was absent **for** *ten years,*
Dĕcem ānnōs ăbĕrăt.

Games were celebrated **for** *ten days,*
Dĕcem pĕr dĭēs lūdī cĕlĕbrātī sūnt.

NOTE the phrases—

For *a long time,* dĭū.
For *a short time,* paūlīspĕr.
For *the present,* ĭn prāēsēns.
For *the future,* ĭn rĕlĭqŭum.

(7) Of time (fixing a date), ĭn (acc.), as—

They obtained a truce **for** *thirty days,*
Ĭndūtĭās ĭn trīgīntā dĭēs īmpĕtrāvērūnt.

(8) Of price, Ablative Case, sometimes Genitive, as—

I bought it **for** *two sesterces,*
Hŏc ēmī dŭōbŭs sēstērtĭīs.

For *a great price,*
Māgnō prĕtĭŏ, *or* māgnī (prĕtĭī omitted).

For *how much?*
Quāntō prĕtĭŏ, *or* quāntī?

For *less,*
Mĭnōrĕ prĕtĭŏ, *or* mĭnōrĭs.

(9) = "towards," "in the direction of," after certain Verbs of Motion, as—

He started **for** *Italy,*
Prŏfĕctŭs ēst ĭn Ĭtălĭam.

Digitized by Google

(10) Note that the English "for" is sometimes the sign of the Genitive Case in Latin, called the "Objective Genitive," as—

Grief **for** *a lost wife,*
Dŏlŏr āmĭssāē cōnjŭgĭs. (See Rule 8, *note.*)

(11) The word "for" is sometimes included in the Verb, and after these Verbs you must be very careful *not* to put the Object in the Dative Case, as—

I hope **for**, spērō (acc.).
I send **for**, ārcēssō (acc.).
I wish **for**, cŭpĭō (acc.), ōptō (acc.), &c.
I wait **for**, ēxspēctō (acc.).
I ask **for**, pĕtō (acc.), ōrō (acc.).

Conjunction: nam (first in its Clause), nāmquĕ (ditto), ĕnim (never first in its Clause), ĕtĕnim, quĭppĕ, as—

Avoid an asker of questions, **for** *he is likewise a gossip,*
Pĕrcōntātōrem fŭgĭtō, nam gārrŭlŭs īdem ēst.

"Ĕtĕnim" and "quĭppĕ" = "for in fact," as—

For (*truly*) *no one can speak well without a good understanding,*
Ĕtĕnim bĕnĕ dĭcĕrĕ nēmō pŏtēst nĭsĭ quī prūdēntĕr īntēllĭgĭt.

Forth.

Adverb:

When joined with Prep. "from," render by "ē" (abl.), as—

He came **forth** *from the house,*
Ē dŏmō ēgrēssŭs ēst.

It is often expressed by "prō" or "ē," compounded with the Verb, as—

I come **forth**, prōdĕō, ēgrĕdĭŏr.
I send **forth**, ēmittō.

NOTE.

From that day (or *time*) **forth**, īndĕ.

From.

Preposition:

In Latin "from" is often only the sign of the Dative Case (see Rule 13), as—

He took away the kingdom **from** *Mithridates,*
Rēgnum Mĭthrĭdātī ădēmĭt.

Digitized by Google

It is very often the sign of the Ablative of "Place Whence" or of "Origin" (see Rule 24), as—

Whence have you come? **From** *Rome.*
Ūndĕ vēnīstī? Rōmā.

He is descended **from** *Romulus,*
Rōmŭlō prōgnātŭs ēst.

It has the following uses as a Preposition—

(1) "away from;" (2) "down from;" (3) "changed from;" (4) "because of;" (5) "out of."

(1) = "away from," ā or ăb (abl.), as—

He came **from** *the shores of Troy,*
Trōjāē vēnĭt ăb ōrīs.
From *sunrise,*
Ā sōlĕ ōrtō.

From *top to toe,*
Ăd tālōs ā vērtĭcĕ.
From *boyhood,*
Ā pŭĕrō.

(2) = "down from," dē (abl.), as—

He leaped **from** *the wall,*
Dē mūrō dēsĭlŭĭt.

Often expressed by dē, compounded with the Verb (acc. and abl.), as—

They push the ships **from** *the rock,*
Dētrūdūnt nāvēs scŏpŭlō.

(3) = "changed from," dē (abl.), ēx (abl.), ăb (abl.), as—

How much changed **from** *that Hector,*
Quāntum mūtātŭs ăb īllō Hĕctŏrĕ.

(4) = "because of," dē (abl.) (see "**because**"), as—

Slow **from** *his wound,*
Dē vūlnĕrĕ tārdŭs.

(5) = "out of," ē or ēx (abl.), as—

Water **from** *a spring,*
Āquă ē fōntĕ sūmptă.

Often rendered by Ablative without Preposition, especially after a Compound Verb, as—

Thunderbolts sent **from** *heaven,*
Fūlmĭnă cāēlō ēmīssă.

(6) NOTE the Adverbs—

From *hence,* hīnc; **from** *thence,* īllīnc; **from** *all sides,* ūndĭquĕ; **from** *within,* īntrīnsĕcŭs; **from** *without,* ēxtrīnsĕcŭs; **from** *the foundation,* fūndĭtŭs; **from** *afar,* prŏcŭl.

Digitized by Google

(7) NOTE carefully the way to render "from," in such sentences as—

I will prevent you **from** *doing it,*
Prŏhĭbēbō tē *quōmĭnŭs* ĭd făcĭās.
Lit. *I will prevent you, so that you may do it the less.*

Whenever you find *from* joined to a Substantive ending in "ing" (such as "doing," "seeing," &c.), you should render it by "quōmĭnŭs" or "nē," with Subjunctive Mood. (See "**Quōmĭnŭs**" in List of Latin Conjunctions.)

This construction follows Verbs of "forbidding," "hindering," and "opposing."

Front.

Preposition: "in front of," prō (abl.), as—

In **front** *of all the temples,* prō tēmplīs ōmnĭbŭs.

Going, in such phrases as—

I am **going** *to make war.* *I am* **going** *to set out.*

is the sign of the future tense, as—

Bĕllum gĕstūrŭs sum. Prōfĕctūrŭs sum.

Had.

Verb:

(1) See "**have.**"

(2) In Conditional Sentences, as—

Had *you not come, I should have perished,*
= *If you* **had** *not come, I should have perished.*
Nĭsĭ vĕnĭssēs, pĕrĭĭssem.

(3) NOTICE the expression—

You **had** *better be silent,*
Tăcērĕ prāēstăt (impersonal).
i.e. *It is better to be silent.*

Hardly.

Adverb: vīx, āegrē, as—

The soldiers spared **hardly** *anyone,*
Vīx cuĭquam mĭlĭtēs pĕpĕrcērūnt.

It may often be rendered by "fĕrē," "fĕrmē" ("almost"), with a Negative, as—

Hardly *anyone = almost no one.*
Nēmō fĕrē.

Digitized by Google

Have.

Verb: "hăbĕō," but very often rendered by "ēst" or "sūnt" with the Dative Case, as—

I **have** *a father*, ēst mĭhĭ pătĕr.

NOTE the use of the Verb "have" in the following phrases—

I **have** *to write a letter* (i.e. *I must write*),
Ĕpīstŏlă mĭhĭ scrĭbēndă ēst.
Lit. *A letter is to be written by me.*

He **had** *to go to Spain* (i.e. *he was obliged to go*),
Ĕī ĭn Hīspānĭam ĕūndum ĕrăt.
Lit. *It was to be gone into Spain by him.*

I will **have** *this done*,
Hōc făcĭēndum cūrăbō.
Lit. *I will care for the doing of this.*

Had *you not better yield?*
Nōnnĕ tĭbĭ cēdĕrĕ mĕlĭŭs ēst?
Lit. *Is it not better for you to yield?*

In answering questions, "have" is really the Auxiliary to the Verb already used in the question itself, as—

Has *Cæsar conquered?* *Yes, he* **has** (i.e. *he has conquered*).
Vīcĭtnĕ Cāesăr? Vīcĭt.

Having.

Sign of the Past Participle Active in English. In the case of Deponent Verbs, the Past Participle is Active in Latin. In all other cases the Past Participle in Latin is Passive, and we must substitute either—

(1) quum with the Pluperfect Indicative, or (2) the Ablative Absolute, as—

Cæsar, **having** *seen the enemy, advanced*,
(1) Cāesăr quum hōstēs cōnspēxĭssĕt prōgrēssŭs ēst.
(2) Cāesăr hōstĭbŭs cōnspēctīs prōgrēssŭs ēst.

(See the "Ablative Absolute," pp. 113, 124, 125.)

He.

Pronoun: ĭs, hĭc, ĭllĕ.

He is often included in the Verb, and omitted in Latin. (Rule 4, Explanation.)

Digitized by Google

"Ĭs" is the usual Antecedent to the Relative "quĭ" in such sentences as—

He *whom I saw yesterday has gone away,*
Ĭs quem hĕrī vīdī dīscēssĭt.

The man who injures a stranger displeases Jove,
Ĭs quī hōspĭtem vĭŏlăt Jŏvī dīsplĭcĕt.

"Hĭc" means "this man here," and would be used where "this" could be substituted for "he," as—

He, he *is the man,*
Hĭc vĭr hĭc ēst.

"Īllĕ" is used where emphasis is needed, in reference to a person already mentioned, but not present, as

He (*certainly*) *will not neglect you,*
Nōn īllĕ tē nēglĕgĕt.

NOTE.—The word "he" being used in English both as a Demonstrative and as a Reflexive Pronoun, we find in Oblique Oration in English, such sentences as—

Cicero told Pompey that **he** *had heard* **he** *was going to leave Rome.*

In this sentence the first "he" refers to Cicero, the second "he" refers to Pompey; but the sentence is awkward, and not quite clear, as the second "he" might refer to Cicero.

There is no such want of clearness in the Latin sentence, as the two words are rendered by different pronouns, which show exactly who is meant, as—

Cĭcĕrō Pŏmpēō dīxĭt *sē* āūdīvīssĕ *ĕum* Rōmā dīscēssūrum ēssĕ.
sē = Cicero; ĕum = Pompey.

Here "Cicero" is the Subject of the Principal Verb, and we may take it as a general rule—

When the words "he," "him," "his," "they," "them," "theirs," refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, render by "sē," "sŭŭs."

When they refer to any other person, render by "ĭs" and its Cases.

You can often tell whether the Subject is referred to by adding to the words {"he, him" / "they, them"} the words

{"self" / "selves"}, and to the words {"his" / "their"} the word "own," as—

Cæsar said that **he** *would go to Gaul* (i.e. *he himself*),
Cāēsăr dīxĭt *sē* ĭn Gāllĭam ĭtūrum ēssĕ.

Cæsar thought that **his** *renown was greater than Pompey's* (i. e. *his own*),
Cāēsăr pŭtāvĭt *sŭam* glōrĭam mājōrem quam Pōmpēī ēssĕ.

They told Cæsar that **they** *did not fear* **his** *threats*,
Dīxērūnt Cāēsărī *sē ējŭs* mĭnās nōn tĭmērĕ.

(In this sentence "sŭās mĭnās" would mean "their own threats.")

Cæsar told them that **they** *could not frighten* **him**,
Dīxĭt ĭis Cāēsăr *ĕōs sē* tērrērĕ nōn pōssĕ.

Cicero told Pompey that **he** *could not help* **him**, *because Cæsar had bound* **him** *by an oath*,
Cĭcĕrō Pōmpēīō dīxĭt, *sē*, *quem* Cāēsăr jūrĕjūrāndō vĭnxĭssĕt, jŭvārĕ ĕum nōn pōssĕ.

Help.

Verb in such phrases, as—

I cannot **help** *saying.*

In Latin—*I cannot not say*, Nōn pōssum nōn dīcĕrĕ.

A more elaborate construction is—

Făcĕrĕ nōn pōssum quīn dīcam.

Hence.

Adverb: hĭnc.

Her.

Pronoun: Accusative Case of "she." For its use see under "**he**," with the necessary change of gender.

Possessive Pronoun: see "**his.**"

Here.

Adverb: hīc, but after a Verb of motion, hūc.

NOTE the phrase "here and there," pāssim. Sometimes rendered by an Adjective "rārŭs," as—

Trees grow **here** *and there*,
Rārāē ārbŏrēs nāscūntŭr.

To be **here**,
Ădēssĕ.

Not to be **here**,
Ăbēssĕ.

Here *is a gift for you*,
Ēn tĭbĭ dōnum.

Digitized by Google

Herself.

See "**he.**" Phrase: "by herself," sōlă, ūnă.

Him.

See "**he.**"

Himself.

See "**he.**" Phrase: "by himself," sōlŭs, ūnŭs, as—
He did it by **himself**, Sōlŭs fēcĭt.

His.

Possessive Pronoun: sŭŭs, or Cases of "ĭs." For their different uses, see "**he.**"

Hither.

Adverb: hūc.

Hitherto.

Adverb: "up to this time," hāctĕnŭs, ădhūc.

How.

Adverb:

(1) In direct questions: quōmŏdō, quĕmādmŏdum, ŭt, quī, as—

How *do you know?*
Quōmŏdō scīs? *or* Quī scīs?
How *did you get the money?*
Quĕmādmŏdum pĕcūnĭam ēxēgīstī?
How *is he?* Ŭt vălĕt?

(2) In indirect statements or questions: quōmŏdō, quemādmŏdum, ŭt (with Subjunctive, Rules 41–43), as—

Tell me **how** *you know.*
Dīc mĭhĭ quōmŏdō scĭās.
I will tell you **how** *they got the money,*
Dīcam tĭbĭ quĕmādmŏdum pĕcūnĭam ēxēgĕrīnt.

Observe that "how" often unites in Latin with the word following, as—

How *many*, quŏt; **how** *great*, quāntŭs; **how** *often*, quŏtĭēs; **how** *little*, quāntŭlŭs; **how** *much*, quāntŭs; **how** *far*, quātĕnŭs; **how** *much more*, quāntō măgĭs, &c.

However.

Adverb:

(1) = "in whatever way," ūtcūnquĕ, quōquōmŏdō, as—
However *it shall be*, ūtcūnquĕ ĕrĭt.
However *things may be*, quōquōmŏdō rēs sē hăbĕānt.

Digitized by Google

(2) = "to whatever degree," quāmvīs, quāntūmvīs, quāmlĭbĕt, as—

> **However** *wise you be,*
> Quāmvīs prūdēns sīs.
>
> **However** *much you excel,*
> Quāntūmvīs ēxcēllās.
>
> *Passion aids the hands* **however** *feeble,*
> Quāmlĭbĕt īnfīrmās ādjŭvăt īrā mănūs.
>
> **However** *great,* quāntūscūnquĕ.
>
> **However** *often,* quŏtĭēscūnquĕ.

(3) = "**Nevertheless,**" q.v.

If.

(1) For the use of "if" in Conditional Sentences, see page 127.

(2) "If," introducing a wish, is followed in Latin by the Subjunctive Mood, as—

> *Oh!* **if** *Jupiter would bring back past years to me!*
> Ō! sī prāetĕrĭtōs rĕfĕrăt mĭhĭ Jūppĭtĕr ānnōs!
>
> *Oh!* **if** *I had lived a hundred years ago!*
> Ō! sī vīxīssem cēntum ăbhīnc ānnōs!

(3) = "but if," sīn *or* sīn āūtem, as—

> **If** *you wish I will go, but* **if** *you prefer it I will stay*
> Sī vīs, dīscēdām, sīn āūtem māvīs, rēstābō.

(4) = "even if," ĕtĭamsī. See "**although.**"

(5) = "if only," dūmmŏdŏ (with Subjunctive), as—

> *Let him slay me* **if** *only he reign,*
> Ŏccīdăt mē dūmmŏdŏ īmpĕrĕt.

(6) "If" often = "whether," and must be rendered *not* by sī, but by -nĕ, num, ăn, *or* (in double questions) ŭtrum.

> *I know not* **if** *he will come or not,*
> Nēscĭŏ ăn vēntūrŭs sĭt nēcnĕ.

In.

Preposition: ĭn (abl.).

(1) Of place: "in Italy," ĭn Ītălĭă. But with names of towns it may often be rendered by the Locative Case. (See "at.")

Observe—"in the country," rūrĕ.

Digitized by Google

Where an Adjective is joined to the name of the place, the Preposition is often omitted (especially in poetry), as—

In *all Italy*, tōtā Ītălĭā.
In *the vast sea*, mărī măgnō.

NOTE the phrase—"in Homer," "in Plato," that is, "in the writings of Homer or Plato," "ăpŭd Hŏmērum," "ăpŭd Plătōnem."

(2) Of time. Usually Abl. without a Preposition (especially when an Adjective is joined to the Substantive), as—

Ăestātĕ, in *summer*; hĭĕmĕ, in *winter*; nōctĕ, in *the night*; dĭē, in *the day*; quārtō mēnsĕ, in *the fourth month*; tērtĭō ānnō, in *the third year*.

When the Preposition "ĭn" is used, stress is laid on the *duration* of the time, as—

I did this in (*the course of, or during*) *my youth*,
Hōc fēcī *ĭn* jŭvēntūtĕ.
In (i.e. *throughout*) *all my life*, *ĭn* ōmnī āĕtātĕ.

But when there is no such stress, a Substantive in apposition is generally used, as—

I did this in *my youth* (i.e. *at a time when I was a young man*),
Hōc jŭvĕnĭs fēcī.

Sometimes "in" is rendered by "dē," as—

In *the third watch*, dē tērtĭā vĭgĭlĭā.
To rise in *the night*, dē nōctĕ sūrgĕrĕ.

NOTE the expressions—

In *the consulship of Plancus*, cōnsŭlĕ Plāncō.
In *the reign of Pyrrhus*, rēgnāntĕ (*or* rēgĕ) Pȳrrhō.

(3) Of circumstance: ĭn (abl.), as—

To be in *danger*, ēssĕ ĭn pĕrīcŭlō.
In *debt*, ĭn āerĕ ălĭēnō.

NOTE the phrases—

I did it in *anger*,
Īllŭd pĕr īram fēcī, *or* īrātŭs fēcī.

"In proportion to," prō (abl.), as—

In *proportion to his deserts*, prō mĕrĭtīs.

"In consideration of," prōptĕr (acc.), ŏb (acc.), as—

I will pardon you in *consideration of your youth*,
Tĭbĭ prōptĕr jŭvēntūtem īgnōscam.
In *the meanwhile*, īntĕrim, īntĕrĕā.
In *vain*, frūstrā.

Digitized by Google

"In comparison with," prāē (abl.), as—

In *comparison with virtue all things are worthless,*
Prāē vīrtūtĕ sŏrdēnt ōmnĭă.

Instead of.

Preposition: prō (abl.), as—

He died **instead of** *his brother,*
Prō frātrĕ mŏrtŭŭs ēst.

NOTE.—"Instead of," when used in such phrases as—

Instead of *answering, they went away,*

cannot be rendered literally. The sentence must be recast, thus—

(α) *So far were they from answering, that they went away,*
Tāntum īīs ăbfŭĭt ŭt rēspōndērēnt ŭt ăbīrēnt.

(β) *To such a degree they answered not, that they went away,*
Ăděō nōn rēspōndērūnt ŭt ăbīrēnt.

(γ) *Not only did they not answer, but went away,*
Nōn mŏdŏ nōn rēspōndērūnt sĕd ĕtĭam ăbĭērūnt.

(δ) (less strong) *They went away, and did not answer,*
Ăbĭērūnt nĕquĕ rēspōndērūnt.

Into.

Preposition: ĭn (acc.), as—

Into *Italy,* ĭn Ĭtălĭam.
Into *the midst of the enemy,* ĭn mĕdĭōs hōstēs.

Sometimes rendered by a Compound Verb, as—

He went **into** *the house,*
Dŏmum īngrēssŭs ēst.

He entered **into** *a contract for building a house,*
Dŏmum cōndūxĭt āēdĭfĭcăndam.

He entered **into** *an alliance,*
Sŏcĭĕtātem īnĭĭt.

Is. See "am."

It.

Pronoun: ĭs, ĕă, ĭd.

Often omitted in Latin when it is the Subject of an Impersonal Verb, as—

It *is shameful,* pŭdĕt.
It *befits,* dĕcĕt, &c.

Digitized by Google

Where an Adjective is joined to the name of th
the Preposition is often omitted (especially in
as—

In all *Italy*, tōtā Ītălĭā.
In the *vast sea*, mărĭ māgnō.

NOTE the phrase—"in Homer," "in Plato," th
the writings of Homer or Plato," "ăpŭd H
"ăpŭd Plătōnem."

(2) Of time. Usually Abl. without a
(especially when an Adjective is joined to
stantive), as—

Āestātĕ, in *summer*; hĭĕmĕ, in *winter*; nōctĕ, in *the*
in *the day*; quārtō mēnsĕ, in *the fourth month*; tertio
third year.

When the Preposition "ĭn" is used, stress
the *duration* of the time, as—

I did this in (*the course of, or during*) *my youth*,
Hōc fēcī ĭn jŭvēntūtĕ.
In (i.e. *throughout*) *all my life*, ĭn ōmnī āetātĕ.

But when there is no such stress, a Substa
apposition is generally used, as—

I did this in *my youth* (i.e. *at a time when I was a yo*
Hōc jŭvĕnĭs fēcī.

Sometimes "in" is rendered by "dē," as—

In *the third watch*, dē tertĭā vĭgĭlĭā.
To rise in *the night*, dē nōctĕ sūrgĕrĕ.

NOTE the expressions—

In *the consulship of Plancus*, cōnsŭlĕ Plāncō.
In *the reign of Pyrrhus*, rēgnāntĕ (*or* rēgĕ) Pyrrhō.

(3) Of circumstance: ĭn (abl.), as—

To be in *danger*, ēssĕ ĭn pĕrīcŭlō.
In *debt*, ĭn āerĕ ălĭēnō.

NOTE the phrases—

I did it in *anger*,
Illŭd pĕr īram fēcī, *or* īrātŭs fēcī.

"In proportion to," prō[illegible] as—
In *proportion to* [illegible] mĕrĭtīs.

"In consideration of," [illegible], ŏb (acc.), as
I will pardon you i[illegible] *f your youth*,
Tibĭ propter jŭvēntū[illegible]
In *the meanwhile*, ĭntĕ[illegible]
In *vain*, frūstrā.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

So—

It *is clear*, mănĭfēstum ēst.
It *is pleasant*, dūlcĕ ēst, &c.

NOTE.—English sentences beginning with such words as—

It *is said*,
It *is believed*,
It *is thought*, &c.

should be rendered in Latin by Verbs with a personal Subject, as—

It *is said that Sulla loved literature*,
Latin—*Sulla is said to have loved literature*,
or—*They say that Sulla loved literature*,
Sūllă dĭcĭtŭr lĭttĕrās ămāvĭssĕ,
or—Dĭcūnt Sūllam lĭttĕrās ămāvĭssĕ.

It *is believed that Mælius aimed at the kingdom*,
Latin—*Mælius is believed to have aimed at the kingdom*,
Crēdēbātŭr Māēlĭŭs rēgnum āppĕtĕrĕ.

It, as the Object of the Verb, usually refers to something already mentioned, and can be variously rendered in Latin, as—

He took the city, and burnt it,
Lit. Ūrbem cēpĭt, ĕāmquĕ īncēndĭt,
or Ūrbem cāptam īncēndĭt,
Ūrbem cēpĭt īncēndĭtquĕ,
Ūrbem, quam cēpĕrăt, īncēndĭt,
Ūrbem, pōstquam cēpĭt, īncēndĭt.

Its. See "**he**," *note*.

Itself.

Pronoun: īpsĕ, as—

Virtue itself *was unavailing*,
Vīrtūs īpsă nĭhĭl prōfŭĭt.

But "by itself," sōlŭs, ūnŭs. See "**himself**."

Just.

Adverb:

(1) = "exactly." Render by "īpsĕ," as—

Just *thirty days ago*,
Hīs trīgintā dĭēbŭs īpsīs.

(2) Of time, "māxĭmē," as—

Just *as he was speaking*,
Quum māxĭmē lŏquĕrētŭr.

Digitized by Google

(3) = "just as," pĕrīndĕ { āc / ŭt / ātquĕ }, as—

Just *as I had thought,*
Pĕrīndĕ ātquĕ ĕgŏ pŭtāram.

(4) = "just as if," pĕrīndĕ āc sī, with Subjunctive, as—

Just *as if he were of the same age,*
Pĕrīndĕ āc sī āēquālĭs ēssĕt.

(5) = "only," mŏdŏ, as—

Just *see,* vĭdē mŏdŏ.

(6) = "just now," mŏdŏ, nūpĕr, as—

I saw the general **just** *now,*
Mŏdŏ vīdī dŭcem.

(7) = "just before," "just after," "just about" (of time), sŭb (acc.), as—

Just *about nightfall,* sŭb nŏctem.

(8) = "hardly," vīx, āegrē, as—

I **just** *escaped,* vīx ēffŭgī.

Less.

Adverb:

(1) = mĭnŭs.

(2) = "much less," nēdum (conj.), with Subj., as—

I cannot do it, much **less** *can you,*
Ĕgŏ făcĕre nōn pōssum, nēdum tū pōssīs.

Comparative Adjective: mĭnŏr, as—

Less *than twenty years old,*
Mĭnŏr vīgintī ānnīs.

Lest.

Conjunction: nē with Subjunctive Mood (41, 42, 43).

Let.

(1) Sign of the Imperative or Subjunctive Mood, as—

Let *us go,* ĕāmŭs.
Let *him go,* ĕăt.

When Negative, use nē, as—

Let *us not go,* nē ĕāmŭs.

(2) = "permit," sĭnŏ { 1. With Infinitive / 2. With Subj. (ŭt omitted) }, as—

Let *me speak,* sĭnĕ mē lŏquī.
Let *the fool live,* sĭnĕ vīvăt ĭnēptŭs.

Digitized by Google

NOTE.—The Subjunctive can only be used when "let" is Imperative.

(3) = "mind" or "take care," făcĭo *or* cūrō, with Subj., as—

Let *it be done at once,*
Făc stătim fĭăt.

Like.

Adjective:

(1) "Sĭmĭlĭs," with Genitive or Dative, "pār" with Dative, lit. "equal to;" "īnstăr," with Genitive, lit. "the image of."

Preposition:

(2) Rendered by a Substantive followed by Genitive; rītū, mōrĕ, mŏdō, īn mōrem, as—

Like *brute beasts,* Pĕcŭdum rītū.
Like *slaves,* Sērvōrum mŏdō.
Like *a king,* Rēgīs mōrĕ.

Or rendered by Adverb—ceū, vĕlŭt, vĕlŭtī, sīcŭt, ŭt, as—

Like *flame over pine trees,*
Ceū flămmă pĕr tāēdās.

Like *the moon amid the stars,*
Vĕlŭt īntĕr īgnēs Lūnă mĭnōrēs.

Honour justice, Scipio, **like** *me,*
Sīc, Scīpĭō, ŭt ĕgŏ, jūstĭtĭam cŏlĕ.

Likely.

Adverb: usually joined in English with "very" or "most," as—

Cæsar will most **likely** *return to Rome.*

Render by "vērīsĭmĭlĕ," as—

Vērīsĭmĭlĕ ēst ŭt Cāēsăr Rōmam rĕdĭtūrŭs sĭt.

May.

(1) Sign of the Primary Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood in Dependent Clauses introduced by "ŭt" and "nē," as—

I say this that you **may** *know my intention,*
Hōc dīcō ŭt cōnsĭlĭum mĕum scĭās.

(2) When "may" means "it is lawful," it is rendered by "lĭcĕt" with Infinitive or Subjunctive, or by "fās ēst" with Infinitive, as—

You **may** *do it if you like*
= *It is lawful for you to do it, if you like,*
Lĭcĕt făcĭās sī vīs, *or* lĭcĕt făcĕrĕ sī vīs.

Digitized by Google

Nor **may** *we know all things,*
Něc scīrĕ fās ēst ōmnĭă.

May *I go?*
Lĭcētnĕ mĭhĭ ăbīrĕ?

NOTE the phrases—

It **may** *be that I am mistaken,*
Fĭĕrī pŏtēst ŭt fāllăr.

Some one perhaps **may** *say,*
Fōrtāssĕ dīxĕrĭt quīspĭam, *or* dīcĕt (*or* dīxĕrĭt) ăllĭquĭs.

They **may** *look to it themselves,*
Vīdĕrīnt īpsī.

(3) Expressing a wish, the Subjunctive is used with or without "ŭtĭnam," as—

May *I perish,* pĕrĕam, *or* ŭtĭnam pĕrĕam.

The Negative used is "nē."

Means.

Preposition: "by means of," pĕr (acc.), as—

He became consul by **means** *of bribery,*
Pĕr āmbĭtum fāctŭs ēst cōnsŭl.

Adverb:

(1) "by all means," ōmnĭbŭs mŏdĭs, quōcūnquĕ mŏdō.
(2) "by this means" = **thus,** q.v.
(3) "by no means," hāūdquāquam, nēquāquam, mĭnĭmē.
(4) "by fair means," rēctē.
(5) "by any means," quōcūnquĕ mŏdō.

Might.

(1) Sign of the Historic Tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses introduced by "ŭt" or "nē," as—

I said this that you **might** *know my intention,*
Hōc dīxī ŭt cōnsĭlĭum mĕum scīrēs.

(2) "Might" is sometimes used as the Past Tense of "may" in the sense of "it is lawful," as—

You **might** *have done it, if you had wished,*
Lĭcēbăt tĭbĭ făcĕrĕ, sī vŏlŭīssēs.

And often in English it has much the same sense as "may," as—

You **might** *do it if you liked* =
You **may** *do it if you like.*

Digitized by Google

More.

Comparative Adjective: plūs. (See p. 28.)

Adverb:

(1) Sign of Comparative Degree, as—

Beautiful, pūlchĕr.
More *beautiful*, pūlchrĭŏr.

(2) Măgĭs, as—

For this I will love you **more**,
Hōc măgĭs tē ămābō.
Pious, pĭŭs.
More *pious*, măgĭs pĭŭs.

(3) = "further" or "in addition," āmplĭŭs, as—

What **more** *do you seek?*
Quĭd āmplĭŭs quāērĭtĭs?

(4) = "rather," "sooner," pŏtĭŭs, as—

I wish for this **more** *than that*,
Hōc pŏtĭŭs quam īllŭd ōptō.

NOTE "More," followed by words denoting number: plūs *or* āmplĭŭs, as—

Cæsar lost **more** *than forty men*,
Caēsăr dēsīdĕrāvīt āmplĭŭs quăādrāgīntā mīlĭtēs.

In such sentences "quam," *than*, is omitted in Latin.

NOTE "More," *Adjective*, is often rendered in Latin by "plūs," used as a Substantive governing a Genitive (see Rule 8), as—

He has **more** *valour than wisdom*,
Plūs hăbĕt vīrtūtĭs quam cōnsĭlĭī.

NOTE the phrase—

The **more** *he tries the less he succeeds*,
Quō măgĭs tēntăt ĕō mĭnŭs prōfĭcĭt.

Most.

Superlative Adjective:

(1) plūrĭmŭs, as—

Most *nations*, plūrĭmāē gēntēs.

(2) plērĭquĕ, as—

Most *men believe*, plērĭquĕ crēdūnt.

Adverb: (1) Sign of Superlative degree, as—

Beautiful, pūlchĕr.
Most *beautiful*, pūlchērrĭmŭs.

Digitized by Google

Also (2) "māxĭmē," as—

Of all things this pleased me **most**,
Hōc ōmnĭum māxĭmē mĭhĭ plăcŭĭt.

Pious, pĭŭs.
Most *pious*, māxĭmē pĭŭs.

NOTE the phrase—

For the **most** *part*, plērūmquĕ.

Much.

Adverb: (1) Māgnŏpĕrĕ.
(2) = "by far," longē, mūltō.

Much *the most powerful state of all*,
Lōngē pŏtēntĭssĭmă ōmnĭum cīvĭtās.

He formerly suffered a **much** *greater defeat*,
Clādem mūltō grăvĭōrem ōlim āccēpĭt.

"As much as." (See "**as.**")

Must.

You **must** *obey the laws*,

may be rendered in three ways—

(1) Nĕcēssĕ ēst tĭbĭ pārērĕ lēgĭbŭs,
or Nĕcēssĕ ēst pārēās lēgĭbŭs.
(2) Lēgĭbŭs ā tē pārēndum ēst.
(3) Ŏpōrtĕt tē (*or* dēbēs) lēgĭbŭs pārērĕ,
or Lēgĭbŭs pārēās ŏpōrtĕt.

But of these the first means that you have no choice in the matter—there *is absolute necessity;* the two last mean that it is your *duty*, in which sense we frequently use the word "must."

NOTE the phrase—

We **must** *make haste*, mātūrātō ŏpŭs ēst.

Must sometimes = "cannot help," e.g.—

Since Janiculum is taken, Rome **must** *fall.*

Render by "nōn pŏtēst nōn"—

Jānĭcŭlō cāptō, nōn pŏtēst Rōmă nōn pĕrīrĕ.

(See "**help.**")

Nay.

= "**No**" (*Negative Particle*), q.v.

Digitized by Google

Observe the phrase "nay more," used to correct or to strengthen a previous assertion. Latin: īmmō vērō, as—

Yet he lives. "Lives" do I say? **Nay** *more, he comes into the Senate,*
Hĭc tămĕn vīvĭt. Vīvĭt? Īmmō vērō ĭn Sĕnātum vĕnĭt.

It may also be rendered by "vĕl pŏtĭŭs" (lit. "or rather") or by "ātquĕ ădĕō," as—

They hint this; **nay** *more, they show it openly,*
Hōc sīgnĭfĭcānt, ātquĕ ădĕō ăpērtē ōstēndūnt.

Near.

Adverb: prŏpĕ, jūxtā, prōptĕr.

It is often compounded with the Verb, as ādsum, īnstō, īmmĭnĕō, as—

War is near, bĕllum īmmĭnĕt.

NOTE the phrase—prŏpĕ (*or* prŏpĭŭs), ăbēssĕ = "to be near," as—

Ruin is **near** *us,*
Nōbīs prŏpĕ ăbēst ēxĭtĭum.

Preposition:

(1) = prŏpĕ (acc.), prōptĕr (acc.), jūxtā (acc.), as—

Near *the enemy's camp,*
Prŏpĕ hōstĭum cāstrā.

(2) ăd (acc.), ăpŭd (acc.), used specially of battles, as—

The battle **near** *Cannæ,*
Pūgnā ăpŭd Cānnās cōmmĭssā.

Adjective: prŏpĭnquŭs, vīcĭnŭs, with Dative. (Rule 17.)

Nearly.

Adverb: "almost," q.v.

Need.

Substantive: ŏpŭs with Ablative (Rule 26), as—

There is **need** *of money,*
Pĕcūnĭā ŏpŭs ēst.

NOTE such a phrase as—

You must **needs** *admit it,*

which may be rendered in Latin—

(1) Nĕcēssĕ ēst hōc fātĕārĭs.
(2) Ŏpōrtĕt tē (*or* dēbēs) fātērī.
(3) Hōc tĭbĭ fātēndum ēst.

Digitized by Google

Neither.

Conjunction: followed by "nor," nĕquĕ . . . nĕquĕ, nĕc . . . nĕc.

Pronoun: nēūtĕr = "neither of two persons."

Note the phrases—

To **neither** *side,* **neither** *way,* nēūtrō.
To take **neither** *side,* mĕdĭum sē gĕrĕrĕ.

Nevertheless.

Conjunction: tămĕn, ăttămĕn, nĭhĭlōmĭnŭs, as—

It is difficult, **nevertheless** *I will try,*
Dĭfficĭlĕ făctū ēst, sĕd cōnābŏr tămĕn.

Next.

Preposition: (with "to") sĕcūndum (acc.), as—

Next *to you,* sĕcūndum tē.

Adjective: "nearest," prōxĭmŭs, with Dative or Accusative, as—

Next *to the door,* pōrtāē *or* pōrtam prōxĭmŭs.

Adverb: prōxĭmē.

It is often rendered by "sŭb" or "ex," compounded with the Verb, as—

Winter comes **next** *to summer,*
Aestātī sŭccēdĭt hĭēms.

Spring comes **next** *to it,*
Vēr ēxcĭpĭt īllam.

No.

Adjective:

(1) Nūllŭs *or* nōn ūllŭs, as—

In **no** *certain order,*
Nūllō cērtō ōrdĭnĕ.

Remember that "and . . . no" is in Latin "nĕquĕ . . ūllŭs," as—

The moon was eclipsed and gave **no** *light,*
Lūnă dēfēcĕrăt nĕquĕ ūllam lūcem dăbăt.

(2) Nēmō (used of persons), as—

No *good man,* nēmō vĭr bŏnŭs.

(3) Nĭhĭl (used of things), as—

No *news,* nĭhĭl nŏvī.

Digitized by Google

I have **no** *fault to find with old age,*
Nĭhĭl hăbĕō quŏd īncūsem sĕnēctūtem.

NOTE the phrase—

By **no** *means,* hāūdquāquam, mĭnĭmē.

Adverb: Used with Comparatives, "nĭhĭlō" or "nōn," as—

The danger is **no** *greater,*
Nĭhĭlō mājŭs (*or* nōn mājŭs) ēst pĕrīcŭlum.

Negative Particle: nōn, mĭnĭmē, nūllō mŏdō; but not commonly used alone like our English "No," as—

Don't you think so then? *No.*
Nōnnĕ ĭgĭtŭr ēxīstĭmās? Prōrsŭs nōn ārbĭtrŏr.

I say **No,** nĕgō.
No, *thank you,* bĕnīgnē.

None.
No one.

Nēmō, (gen.) nūllĭŭs, (dat.) nēmĭnī, (acc.) nēmĭnem, (abl.) nūllō.

NOTE here a difference between English and Latin usage—

He went away and **no one** *saw him,*
Dĭscēssĭt nĕquĕ quīsquam (*nor anyone*) ĕum vīdĭt (*not* ĕt nēmō).

NOTE the phrase—

None *the less,* nĭhĭlō mĭnŭs, lit. *less by nothing.*

Nor.

Conjunction: nĕc, nĕquĕ.

Not.

Negative Particle:

(1) nōn (usually stands close to the word it qualifies), hāūd (usually with Adjectives or Adverbs and a few Verbs, e.g. hāūd scĭŏ, hāūd dŭbĭtō).

(2) In prohibitions:
"nē," with the Perfect Subjunctive, as—

Do **not** *run,* nē cŭcūrrĕrĭs.

or "nōlī," with Infinitive, as—

Do **not** *do this,* nōlī hōc făcĕrĕ.
lit. *Be unwilling to do this.*

Digitized by Google

(3) nĭhĭl (with Verbs), as—

I do **not** *blame you*, nĭhĭl-tē cūlpō.

(4) pārum, mĭnŭs, mălĕ (usually with Adjectives to give a Negative sense), as—

Sane, sānŭs. **not** *sane*, mălĕ sānŭs.

(5) "not so" = "no," nūllō mŏdō, mĭnĭmē. (See "**No**," *Negative Particle.*)

(6) "and . . . not," nĕquĕ (not "ĕt nōn"), as—

The matter is troublesome and **not** *suited to me*,
Rēs ēst mŏlēstă nĕquĕ mĭhĭ āptă.

(7) = "if not," sīn mĭnŭs, as—

If you come I shall rejoice; if **not**, *I shall grieve*,
Sī vēnĕrĭs, gāudēbō; sīn mĭnŭs, dŏlēbō.

"if . . . not," nĭsĭ, as—

If you had **not** *come, I should have died*,
Nĭsĭ vēnĭssēs mōrtŭŭs ēssem.

(8) = "not even," nē . . . quĭdem, with the word on which stress is laid between "nē" and "quĭdem," as—

Not *even Cicero could save him*,
Nē Cĭcĕrō quĭdem ĕum sērvārĕ pŏtĕrăt.

(9) = "that . . . not" in a Dependent Clause "nē," when a purpose is introduced, as—

I went away **that** *I might* **not** *see him*,
Ăbĭī nē ĕum vĭdērem.

But after a Verb of fearing, "that not" is to be translated by "ŭt" or "nē nōn," as—

I fear **that** *he will* **not** *come*,
Vĕrĕŏr *ŭt* vĕnĭăt,
or Vĕrĕŏr *nē nōn* vĕnĭăt.

Observe the phrases—

Not *to say*, nē dīcam,
Not *to mention*, ŭt ŏmĭttam.

Notwithstanding.

Conjunction: see "**nevertheless.**"

Preposition: may sometimes be rendered by "ădvērsŭs" or "cōntrā," as—

Notwithstanding *the auspices he fought*,
Cōntrā āūspĭcĭă prăēlĭum cōmmĭsĭt.

Digitized by Google

more usually by Ablative Absolute, as—

Nĕglēctīs āūspĭcĭīs prāēlĭum cōmmīsĭt,

or by "quāmvīs," "ētsī," &c., as—

Quāmvīs āūspĭcĭă ādvērsă ēssēnt, pūgnāvĭt.

Nowhere.

Adverb: nūsquam, "nowhere" or "nowhither."

Nowhere *on earth*, nūsquam gēntĭum.

Of.

(1) = Sign of Genitive Case. (Rule 8.)

(2) = *Preposition:* = "out of," dē (abl.), ēx (abl.), as—

A few **of** *our men*, pāūcī dē nōstrīs.

NOTE the phrases—

A few **of** *us*, Nōs pāūcī.

A statue **of** *marble*, Stătŭă ē mārmŏrĕ făctă,
or Stătŭă mārmŏrĕă (*not* stătŭă mārmŏrĭs).

To make a prison **of** *a temple*,
Ē tēmplō cārcĕrem făcĕrĕ.

(3) = "by means of," as "to die **of** starvation," "**of** disease," &c. Use Ablative without Preposition, as "fāmē," "mōrbō," &c.

(4) = "About," dē (abl.), as—

He brought news **of** *the victory*,
Nūntĭum dē vīctōrĭă tŭlĭt.

NOTE the expression—

He is worthy **of** *being praised*,
Latin—*He is worthy who should be praised*,
Dīgnŭs ēst quī lāūdētŭr.

Of course.

Adverb:

(1) In simple meaning = "necessarily," "nĕcēssārĭō," as—

Of course *he told me the matter*,
Nĕcēssārĭō mĭhĭ rem dixĭt.

(2) Used ironically like "forsooth," scīlĭcĕt, as—

Of course *you think me foolish enough to side with Cæsar*,
Mē scīlĭcĕt ŭm ēssĕ pŭtās quī Cāēsārĭs pārtēs āmplēctār.

Off.

Adverb: usually included in or compounded with the Verb, as—

Digitized by Google

I carry **off**, aūfĕrō.
I come **off** *victor*, vĭctŏr ēvādō.
I get **off** = *I escape*, fŭgĭō.
I throw **off**, abjĭcĭō, ēxŭō.
I throw **off** *the scent*, fāllō, &c.

or included in other Adverbs, as—

A long way **off**, prŏcŭl, lōngē.

Preposition:

(1) Of position. Render by "near" or "opposite to," as—

Off *the coast*, prŏpĕ lĭtŭs, cōntrā lĭtŭs.

(2) = "from" (abl.), as—

He took the panniers **off** *the donkey*,
Clĭtēllās dē āsĭnō dētrāxĭt.

But in this sense it is often included in the Verb.

NOTE the phrases—

To be well **off**, ăbūndō,
To be badly **off**, lăbōrō,

with Ablative of the thing in which you are "well" or "badly off," as—

Gaul is well **off** *for corn*,
Gāllĭă frūmēntō ăbūndăt. (See Rule 27.)

Often.

Adverb: Sāēpĕ, sāēplĭŭs, sāēpĕnŭmĕrō.

How **often**, quŏtĭēs; *so* **often**, tŏtĭēs;
As **often** *as*, tŏtĭēs . . . quŏtĭēs

(of which the former is sometimes omitted).

Oh.

Interjection:

(1) Of sorrow. Heū, vāē, Ō (often with acc.), as—

Oh *wretch that I am*, Ō mē mĭsĕrum!

(2) Of surprise. Prō (sometimes spelt Prōh!), as—

Oh *heavens*, prō dĕōs īmmŏrtālēs!

(3) Introducing a wish, with "if" or "that," as—

Oh, *if I could see.*
Oh *that I had died.*

Render by sī, Ō sī, ŭtĭnam, all with Subjunctive, as—

Ō! sī vĭdērĕ pŏssim. Ŭtĭnam mŏrtŭŭs ēssem.

Digitized by Google

On.

Preposition:

(1) Ĭn (abl.), as—

He wears a garland **on** *his head,*
Ĭn căpĭtĕ cŏrōnam gĕrĭt.

But very often rendered by a Compound Verb, as—

I sit **on,** īnsĭdĕō; *I throw* **on,** īnjĭcĭō;
I leap **on,** īnsĭlĭō; *I set* **on** = *I attack,* āggrĕdĭŏr (6);
I move **on,** prōmŏvĕō (6), prōgrĕdĭŏr (Intrans.).
I get **on** = *I make progress,* prōfĭcĭō (abl. with or without prep.), &c.

(2) *On* sometimes = "near," ăd (acc.), ăpŭd (acc.), prŏpĕ (acc.), jūxtā (acc.), as—

A camp **on** *the Tiber,*
Cāstrā ăd Tĭbĕrim pŏsĭtā.

(3) = "on the side of," ā (abl.), ăb (abl.), as—

He was **on** *Cæsar's side,*
Ā Cāēsārĕ stābăt.

Or compounded with the Verb, as—"Cāēsārī ādstābăt, Cāēsārem ādjŭvābăt."

(4) = "on these terms" or "conditions" (abl. without prep.), as—

Peace was made **on** *condition that hostages should be given,*
Pāx fāctā ēst ĕā cōndĭtĭōnĕ ŭt dārēntŭr ōbsĭdēs.

(5) = "on an instrument of music" (abl. without prep.), as—

He plays **on** *the lyre,*
Fĭdĭbŭs cănĭt.

(6) = "hanging on," ēx (abl.), dē (abl.), as—

To hang **on** *a tree,*
Ex ārbŏrĕ pēndĕrĕ.

She hung **on** *his neck,*
Dē cōllō pĕpēndĭt.

(7) Of time (abl. without prep.), as—

On *that day,* ĕō dĭē.

(8) = "about," dē (abl.), as—

I will give my opinion **on** *this matter,*
Sēntēntĭam mĕam dē hāc rē dăbō.

Digitized by Google

(9) "on account of" = "because of," prōptĕr (acc.), ŏb (acc.), prāē (used only of a preventing cause—abl.), dē (abl.), as—

On *account of the number of missiles you will not see the sun,*
Sōlem prāē jăcŭlōrum mūltĭtūdĭnĕ nōn vĭdēbĭtĭs.

To weep **on** *account of his son's death,*
Flērĕ ŏb (*or* prōptĕr) mōrtem (*or* dē mōrtĕ) fīlĭī.

(10) With Participles—"on hearing," "on seeing," &c. Render by "quum" with Subjunctive, or by Past Participle of Deponent Verbs, or often by Ablative Absolute, as—

Cæsar, **on** *hearing these things, returned to Gaul,*
Caēsăr, hīs rēbŭs cōgnĭtīs, ĭn Gāllĭam rĕdĭīt.

Cæsar, **on** *returning to Rome, changed the laws,*
Caēsăr, Rōmam rĕvērsŭs, lēgēs mūtāvĭt.

Cæsar, **on** *being asked his opinion, said,*
Caēsăr, rŏgātŭs (*or* quum rŏgātŭs ēssĕt) sēntēntĭam, dīxĭt.

NOTE the phrase—

On *high,* sūblīmĭs (Adj.); **on** *a sudden,* rĕpēntĕ, sŭbĭtō.
On *the alert,* vĭgĭl. *To be* **on** *fire,* ārdĕō.

Adverb:

(1) = "onwards," pōrrō, but often included in or compounded with the Verb, as—

To go **on,** pērgō; *to ride* **on,** prōvĕhŏr.

(2) = "continually," ūsquĕ.

Once.

Adverb: distinguish carefully—

Once (that is, *once only,* not twice), sĕmĕl.

Once (that is, *once upon a time,* or *formerly*), ŏlim, quōndam.

Note the phrase—

At **once,** sĭmŭl, ūnō tēmpŏrĕ (meaning *at one and the same time*).
At **once,** prōtĭnŭs, stātim (meaning *immediately, without delay*).

One.

(1) *Cardinal Number:* ūnŭs.

(2) *Distributive Number:* sīngŭlī ("one by one," "one apiece"), as—

He gave **one** *legion apiece to each general,*
Sīngŭlās lĕgĭōnēs sīngŭlīs lēgātīs dĕdĭt.

(3) *Adverb:* "one by one," "one at a time," sīngĭllātim, as—

He encouraged the soldiers **one** *by* **one,**
Sīngĭllātim mīlĭtēs hŏrtātŭs ēst.

Digitized by Google

(4) Used indefinitely, "quĭdam," as—

I saw **one** *of the soldiers flying,*
Vīdī quēndam ē mīlĭtĭbŭs fŭgĕrĕ.

(5) (i) = "one," answered by "the other." Used of two persons or things only—

hĭc — īllĕ
āltĕr — āltĕr

as—

Of two brothers, **one** *fled, the other fell,*
Frātrum hĭc fŭgĭt, īllĕ ŏccĭdĭt
or āltĕr fŭgĭt, āltĕr ŏccĭdĭt.

(ii) = "one," answered by "another."

(*a*) of two persons or things only—

āltĕr — āltĕr

as—

The brothers hate **one** *another* (or "*each other*"),
Frātrēs āltĕr āltĕrum ŏdĕrūnt.

(*b*) of more than two persons or things—

ălĭŭs — ălĭŭs

as—

The soldiers encourage **one** *another* (or "*each other*"),
Mīlĭtēs ălĭŭs ălĭum (*or* ĭntĕr sē) hŏrtāntŭr.

(6) = the French "*on.*" Render by 2nd Person Singular, as—

One *would think he was mad,*
Īnsānīrĕ hŏmĭnem pŭtēs;

or by Impersonal Verb, as—

One *ought not to do it,*
Īllŭd făcĕrĕ nōn ŏpŏrtĕt.

One *must fight against old age,*
Rĕsīstēndum ēst sĕnēctūtī.

(7) Preceded by "the" (referring to something already mentioned), as—

When I saw the ring, I knew it was **the very one** *I had lost,*
Ŭbĭ vīdī ānnŭlum, āgnōvī *ĕum īpsum* ēssĕ quem pĕrdĭdī.

(8) With Relative Pronoun, as—

He is not **one** *to do it,*

where the Latin runs—

He is not **one** *who would do it,*
Nōn ēst īs quī ĭd făcĭăt.

Only.

Adjective: ūnĭcŭs, ūnŭs, sōlŭs, as—

An **only** *son,* fīlĭŭs ūnĭcŭs.

Digitized by Google

It is the **only** *thing to make one happy,*
Rēs ēst ūnă quāe tē bĕātum rĕddăt.

Adverb:

(1) Sōlum, tāntum, tāntŭmmŏdŏ, mŏdŏ, as—

I ask this **only**, hōc sōlum pĕtō.

"Nōn nĭsĭ," *or* "nĭhĭl nĭsĭ," as—

They think **only** *of slaughter,*
Nĭhĭl cōgĭtānt nĭsĭ cāedēs.

(2) Before Numerals, render by Adjective sōlŭs, as—

He lived **only** *nine years,*
Sōlōs nŏvem ānnōs vīxĭt.

Opposite.

Preposition: cōntrā (acc.), ē rĕgĭōnĕ (gen. or dat.), as—

Opposite *the tower,* ē rĕgĭōnĕ tūrrĭs, *or* tūrrī.

Adverb: cōntrā, as—

He stood **opposite**, cōntrā stĕtĭt.

Both Adverb and Preposition are often rendered by the Adjectives or Participles, cōntrārĭŭs (dat.) ādvērsŭs (dat.), ŏppŏsĭtŭs (dat.), &c.

Or.

Conjunction:

(1) In ordinary affirmative sentences, āūt, vĕl, -vĕ, often āūt ... āūt, vĕl ... vĕl.

There is a slight difference of meaning between āūt and vĕl, thus—

I shall buy fish **or** *vegetables* (*but certainly not both*),
Aut pīscēs āūt ŏlĕrā ĕmam.
I shall buy fish **or** *vegetables* (*certainly one, perhaps both*),
Vĕl pīscēs vĕl ŏlĕrā ĕmam.

Thus—

We will either conquer **or** *die,*

would be

Aut vĭncēmŭs āūt mŏrĭēmŭr.

NOTE that "āūt" is always to be used after a Negative, as—

Nĕgō āūt Caēsărī āūt Pompēiō ā nōbīs făvēndum ēssĕ—

(2) In direct questions. In English we say—

Shall I see you **or** *not?*

Digitized by Google

but in Latin, two Interrogatives, "ŭtrum . . . ăn" *or* "-nĕ . . . ăn" must be used. "Or not" is expressed by "ănnōn."

Utrum tē vĭdēbō ănnōn?
Tēnĕ vĭdēbō ănnōn?

So—

Shall I see Caesar or *Pompey?*
Caēsărēmnĕ ăn Pompēium vĭdēbō?
Ŭtrum Caēsărem ăn Pŏmpēium vĭdēbō?

(3) In indirect questions, "ŭtrum . . . ăn," "-nĕ . . . ăn," are used; "or not" is expressed by "nēcnĕ."

I will ask whether I shall see him or *not,*
Rŏgābō ŭtrum ĕum vīsūrŭs sim nēcnĕ.
Tell me whether you will go or *stay,*
Dīc mĭhĭ vĕlīsnĕ īrĕ ăn rēstārĕ.

(4) In statements, not questions, "whether" . . . . or is rendered by "sīvĕ" . . . "sīvĕ" (or "sēū," another form of "sīvĕ")—

Whether I stand or *sit, I am in pain,*
Sīvĕ stō, sēū sĕdĕō, dŏlĕō.

Other.

Adjective: āltĕr, when only two are mentioned, as—

Cæsar went to the Senate. The **other** *consul remained at home,*
Caēsăr ĭn cūrĭam īvĭt. Āltĕr cōnsŭl dŏmī mānsĭt.

ălĭŭs, as—

He was handsome to behold, but useful for no **other** *purpose,*
Vīsū quĭdem ĕrăt fŏrmōsŭs, sĕd ăd nūllam ălĭam rem ūtĭlĭs.

Substantive: (in plural) **others,** "ălĭī," "cētĕrī."

ălĭī = **others,**
cētĕrī = **the others,** or the rest;

as—

Of the soldiers a few fell, **others** *were captured, all* **the others** *escaped,*
Ē mīlĭtĭbŭs paucī cĕcĭdērūnt, ălĭī cāptī sūnt, cētĕrī ēffŭgērūnt.

Otherwise.

= "But if not," sīn ălĭtĕr *or* sīn mĭnŭs.

Ought.

(1) May be rendered by "dēbĕō" or "ŏpōrtĕt," with a Verb following in the Infinitive (Rule 33), as—

We **ought** *to follow virtue,*
Dēbēmŭs sĕquī vīrtūtem.

Digitized by Google

NOTICE a difference between Latin and English.

English—*I* **ought** *to go,*
Latin—dēbĕō īrĕ, *or* ŏpŏrtĕt mē īrĕ.

English—*I* **ought** *to have gone,*
Latin—dēbŭī īrĕ, *or* ŏpŏrtŭĭt mē īrĕ.

The English Verb "ought" does not vary in the Past Tense. Therefore the following Verb is put in the Perfect Infinitive. The Latin "dēbĕō" or "ŏpŏrtĕt" changes its tense, and the following Verb remains unaltered.

(2) *Ought* may be rendered by the Gerundive, Personal, or Impersonal, as—

He **ought** *to be loved,*
Āmāndŭs ēst.

The laws **ought** *to be obeyed,*
Lēgĭbŭs pārēndum ēst.

Out.

Adverb: fŏrīs, fŏrās, as—

He dined **out,**
Cēnābăt fŏrīs (verb of "rest").

He *went* **out,**
Prŏfēctŭs ēst fŏrās (verb of "motion").

Sometimes compounded with the Verb, as—

He went **out,** ēgrēssŭs ēst.

Preposition: "out of," ēx (abl.), dē (abl.), as—

Out of *the city,*
Ex ūrbĕ.

Out of *the whole number,*
Dē tŏtō nŭmĕrō.

A temple built **out of** *marble,*
Tēmplum ē mārmŏrĕ āēdĭfĭcātum.

Phrase—"out of the country," pĕrĕgrē.

(2) "out of," = "on account of," prōptĕr (acc.), prāē (abl.), as—

Out of *fear,*
Prōptĕr mĕtum, *or* prāē mĕtū.

Sometimes rendered by a Passive Participle, as—

Out of *love for Cæsar, he became an exile,*
Āmŏrĕ Cāēsărĭs *mōtŭs* ēxsŭlāvĭt.

NOTICE the phrases—

Out of *his mind,*
Īnsānŭs, *or* sŭī nōn cōmpŏs.

Out of *shot,*
Extrā tēlī jăctum.

Out of *season,* īntēmpēstīvŭs.

Digitized by Google

NOTE that "out" is very frequently compounded with Verbs, but in English as a Prefix (for instance, "to outdo," "outrun," &c.), so that they present no difficulty.

Over.

Adverb: sŭpĕr, sŭprā.

Over *and above,* īnsŭpĕr.

NOTE the phrases—

To remain **over,** sŭpĕrō.
When the battle was **over** (i.e. *ended*),
Cōnſĕctō prāēlĭō.
It is all **over** *with the army,*
Dē ēxĕrcĭtū āctum ēst.
Over *and* **over** *again,*
Sāēpĕnŭmĕrō, ĭdēntĭdem.

Preposition:

(1) of motion, sŭpĕr (acc.), sŭprā (acc.); more often pĕr (acc.), trāns (acc.), as—

To sail **over** *the sea,*
Pĕr pōntum nāvĭgārĕ.

NOTE.

A bridge **over** *a river,*
Pōns *ĭn* flūmĭnĕ fāctŭs.

(2) of rest, sŭpĕr (acc. or abl.), as—

Over *his neck,* sŭpĕr cervĭcĕ.

(3) = "commanding," as—

He was **over** *the troops.*

Express by Verb compounded with prāē, as—

Mīlĭtĭbŭs prāēĕrāt.

So "to put over" = "to put in command," "prāefĭcĕrĕ."

(4) = "more than," sŭpĕr (acc.), as—

Cæsar lost **over** *four hundred men,*
Cāēsăr dēsīdĕrāvĭt sŭpĕr quādrīngēntōs mīlĭtēs.

(5) "Over and above" = "besides," prāētĕr (acc.).

NOTE.—"Over" is often compounded with the Verb, either as Prefix or Suffix, as—

To **over***throw,* ēvĕrtō (Prefix).
To throw **over,** trājĭcĭō (Suffix).

"Over against" = "**opposite,**" q.v.

Digitized by Google

Owing to.

Preposition: ŏb (acc.), prōptĕr (acc.).

NOTE the phrase—

It was **owing to** *him that I did not come,*
Pĕr ĕum *stĕtĭt* quōmĭnŭs vĕnīrem.

Own.

Adjective: always preceded by "my," "thy," "his," "our," "your," "their," &c. (See "**he**," *note.*)

Perhaps.

Conjunction: fōrtāssĕ (with Adjective, or Verb in the Indic.), fōrsĭtăn (with Subj.), fōrtĕ (after sī, nĭsĭ, sīn, nē).

NOTE the phrase, nēscĭŏ ăn, hāūd scĭŏ ăn, as—

Perhaps *this never happened before,*
Nēscĭŏ ăn hōc nūnquam āntĕā ēvēnĕrĭt.

Possible.

In such expressions as "it is possible to go over the Alps." Rendered by "pōssum" (Personal) or "lĭcĕt" (Impersonal), as—

Pōssŭmŭs (pŏtēstĭs, &c.) Ālpēs trānsīrĕ *or* Ālpēs trānsīrĕ lĭcĕt.

"It is possible that he may have died." Render by "fĭĕrī pŏtēst ŭt," as—

Fĭĕrī pŏtēst ŭt mōrtŭŭs sĭt.

Possibly.

Adverb: Render as above: e.g.—

You may **possibly** *think,*
Fĭĕrī pŏtēst ŭt pŭtēs.

Probably.

Adverb: Render by "nēscĭŏ ăn" or "hāūd scĭŏ ăn," as—

Cæsar will **probably** *win the victory,*
Nēscĭŏ ăn Cāēsăr vĭctūrŭs sĭt.

Quite.

Adverb: prōrsŭs, ōmnīnō, plānĕ, as—

Quite *foolish,* plānĕ īnsĭpĭēns.

When joined to Verbs or Participles, use prōrsŭs, pĕnĭtŭs, fūndĭtŭs (lit. "from the foundation"), as—

Scipio **quite** *destroyed Carthage,*
Scīpĭŏ Cārthāgĭnem fūndĭtŭs dēlēvĭt.

I **quite** *understand your opinion,*
Tŭam sēntēntĭam pĕnĭtŭs īntēllĭgō.

Digitized by Google

I **quite** *think so,*
Ĭtă prōrsŭs ēxīstĭmō.

Reference.
Regard.
Relation.
Respect.

The Prepositions—"in reference to" = "referring to,"
"in regard to," or "as regards," = "regarding,"
"in relation to," = "relating to,"
"in respect of," = "respecting,"
may usually be rendered by "dē" (abl.).

Sometimes by the phrase "quŏd ăttĭnĕt ăd," as—

Respecting *the books don't trouble yourself,*
Dē lĭbrīs nē lăbōrāvĕrĭs,
or Quŏd ăd lĭbrōs ăttĭnĕt, nē lăbōrāvĕrĭs.

Round.

Adverb: cīrcum, cīrcā.

Phrase—

All the year **round**, tōtō ānnō.
I come **round** = *I recover*, cōnvălēscō.

Preposition: cīrcum (acc.), cīrcā (acc.); but often compounded with the Verb, as—

He drew a fosse **round** *the city,*
Fōssam dūxĭt cīrcā ūrbem,
or Ūrbī fōssam cīrcūmdĕdĭt.

Same.

Pronoun: ĭdem.

"The same as," ĭdem, followed by "quī," as—

Occupying a farm is not the **same** *thing* **as** *owning it,*
Pōssĭdērĕ fūndum nōn ēst ĭdem quŏd hăbērĕ.

NOTE the phrase—"all the same," = "nevertheless," tămĕn, ăttămĕn, nĭhĭlōmĭnŭs, as—

Though he was ill, he was present **all the same,**
Quāmvīs āegĕr ēssĕt, ăděrăt tămĕn.

In the **same** *place,* ĭbīdem.
To the **same** *place,* ĕōdem.

Save.

Preposition: = "except," prāētĕr (acc.), as—

No one **save** *Lucullus,*
Nĕmō prāētĕr Lūcūllum.

Digitized by Google

Or render by Abl. Abs., as—

Nēmō, ēxcēptō Lūcūllō.

Conjunction: "except," nĭsĭ, as—

Friendships cannot exist, **save** *in good men,*
Nĭsĭ ĭn bŏnīs, ămīcĭtĭă ēssĕ nōn pŏtēst.

It is not often used with Verbs in English. (See "**unless.**")

Scarce.
Scarcely.

Adverb:

(1) vīx, in all senses, as—

It was **scarcely** *honourable,*
Vīx ĕrăt hŏnēstum.

They could **scarcely** *be restrained,*
Vīx rĕtĭnērī pŏtŭērūnt.

(2) aegrē = "with difficulty," as—

They **scarcely** *reached the top of the hill,*
Aegrē ăd sūmmum cōllem pĕrvēnērūnt.

(3) Of time: vīx, vīxdum, as—

I had **scarcely** *read your letter,*
Vīxdum lĭttĕrās tŭās lēgĕram.

Self.

When you meet this word or its Plural "selves" in an English sentence, it will be rendered in Latin by "ipsĕ," if in the Nominative Case.

In other cases it will be rendered by "sē," "sŭĭ," "sĭbĭ," "sē" (Singular and Plural), if it refers to the Subject of the sentence, or, in Oratio Obliqua, to the person whose speech you are reporting.

If it does not refer to the Subject of the sentence, it will usually be rendered by the Cases (Singular or Plural) of "īpsĕ." It is very often joined with another Pronoun which will guide you.

Sometimes "sē" is strengthened by "īpsĕ" in Genitive, Dative, Accusative, or Ablative, as—

*Cæsar said they might go if they wished: he him***self** *would remain,*
Caēsăr dīxĭt ĭīs, sī vēllēnt, ăbīrĕ lĭcērĕ: *sē īpsum* mānsūrum ēssĕ.

Digitized by Google

Shall.

(1) Sign of the Future Tense, as—

I **shall** *see him to-morrow,*
Crās ĕum vĭdēbō.

(2) Implying "compulsion" or "duty," or (with a Negative) prohibition, as—

You **shall** *do it.* *You* **shall** *not do it.*

Render by "dēbĕō" or "ŏpōrtĕt," with Infinitive (Rule 33), or by Gerundive, as—

Hōc dēbēs făcĕrĕ. Hōc tĭbĭ nōn făcĭēndum ēst.

(3) Sometimes "shall" = "may," lĭcĕt as—

Shall *not a master order his own slaves,*
Nōnnĕ dŏmĭnŏ sērvīs sŭīs īmpĕrārĕ lĭcĕt?

She.

Pronoun: see "he," making the necessary change of gender.

Should.

(1) Sign of the Future Tense in Dependent Clauses, as—

I **shall** *see him to-morrow,*
Crās ĕum vĭdēbō.

Cæsar said that he **should** *see him to-morrow,*
Caēsăr dīxĭt sē ĕum crās *vīsūrum ēssĕ.*

Cæsar doubted whether he **should** *see him to-morrow,*
Caēsăr dŭbĭtāvĭt num ĕum crās *vīsūrŭs ēssĕt.*

(2) Sign of Imperfect Tense in Apodosis. (See p. 127.)

(3) Implying "duty," to be rendered by "dēbĕō," "ŏpōrtĕt," or the Gerundive, as—

You **should** *not do it = you ought not to do it.*
Făcĕrĕ nōn dēbēs.

Since.

Preposition: pōst (acc.), as—

Since *his son's death, he has never smiled,*
Pōst mōrtem fīlĭī nūnquam rīsĭt.

Since *the consulate of Cicero,*
Pōst cōnsŭlātum Cĭcĕrōnĭs.

Adverb: = "ago," ăbhīnc, as—

Three years **since,**
Ăbhīnc trēs ānnōs.

Digitized by Google

"Long since," prīdem, or jāmprīdem, as—

He died **long since,**
Jām prīdem mōrtŭŭs ēst.

NOTE.

A few days **since,**
Hīs pāucīs diēbŭs.

Conjunction:

(1) Of time: "ex quō tēmpŏrĕ," *or* "ex quō"; sometimes "pōstquam," as—

Since *I saw you, I have suffered much,*
Ex quō tēmpŏrĕ tē vīdī mūltă pāssŭs sum.

(2) = "because," "seeing that," quum (with Subj.), quŏnĭam (with Indic.), quŏd, quiă, as—

Since *Cæsar is dead, I shall return to Rome,*
Quum Cāesăr mōrtŭŭs sĭt Rōmam rĕdībō.

Since *you wish it, I will go away,*
Quŏnĭam ĭtă vīs, ăbībō.

Vulcan could not come, **since** (i.e. *because*) *he was lame,*
Vŭlcānŭs vĕnīrĕ nōn pŏtŭĭt, quiă clāudŭs ĕrăt.

So.

Adverb: sīc, ĭtă, ădĕō, tam. Of these, "ĭtă," "ădĕō," "tam," are joined to Adjectives or Adverbs, as—

Rēs { ĭtă / ădĕō / tam } dĭffĭcĭlĭs.

"Sīc," "ĭtă," "ădĕō" (rarely "tam"), are joined to Verbs, as—

{ sīc / ĭtă / ădĕō } ĕum dĭlēxĭt.

For the use of "so . . . as," "so . . . that," see "**as**" and "**that.**"

Observe the words—

So *great,* tāntŭs; **so** *small,* tāntŭlŭs, tāntĭllŭs; **so** *often,* tŏtĭēs; **so** *many,* tŏt.

Phrase—

The thing is **so,** rēs ĭtă sē hăbĕt.

(2) "So" or "so then" at the beginning of a Sentence or Clause = "therefore," ērgō, ĭgĭtŭr (usually not first), ĭtăquĕ (usually first), ĭdcĭrcō. (See "**therefore.**")

Digitized by Google

NOTICE the phrases—

So *far I have sung of crops,*
Hăctĕnŭs sĕgĕtēs cĕcĭnī.

So *far as I know,*
Quŏd scĭam.

So *far from fighting he fled,*
Ăděō nōn pūgnāvĭt ŭt fŭgĕrĕt. (See "instead of.")

So *long as I shall live,*
Quāmdĭŭ vīvam.

So *long as you are lucky,*
Dōnĕc ĕrĭs fēlīx.

And **so** *forth,*
Ĕt cētĕrā.

"So as to," expressing purpose, "ŭt" with Subjunctive, as—

I could not come **so as to** *help you,*
Vĕnīrĕ nōn pŏtŭī *ŭt* tē jŭvārem.

Some.

Pronoun:

(1) Adjective; ălĭquī, quīdam, nōnnūllŭs, nēscĭŏ quĭs, ălĭquŏt (Plural only), quĭs (after sī, num, nē, nĭsĭ, quum), where "some" = "any."

(2) Substantive = "somebody," "some one."

Ălĭquĭs, **some** *one or other.*
Quīdam, **some** *one* (i.e. *a certain person known to the speaker*).

Nēscĭŏ quĭs, **some** *one or other.*
Quĭs (after sī, num, nē, nĭsĭ, quum).

Ălĭquŏt, **Some** *few, several.* (Usually an Adjective.)
Nōn nēmō, **some.** (Distinguish from "nēmō nōn," which means *everyone.*)

NOTE.

"Sūnt quī" (with Subj.), as—

Sūnt quī dīcānt, **some** *say* (lit. *there are some to say*).

"Some" is often answered by "other."

Latin	hĭc	— īllĕ
	ălĭŭs	— ălĭŭs.

as—

Of the soldiers, **some** *fled, others fought,*
Mīlĭtum ălĭī fŭgĕrūnt, ălĭī pūgnāvĕrūnt.

NOTE the phrases—

Some*how or other,* nēscĭŏ quō pāctō.
Some *time or other,* ălĭquāndō.
Some *time ago,* dūdum, prīdem.
for **some** *time,* dĭū.

Digitized by Google

Sometimes.

Adverb: ĭntērdum, ălĭquāndō, nōnnūnquam.

Sometimes — *Sometimes* (or *at other times*).
ălĭās — ălĭās.
mŏdŏ — mŏdŏ.

Somewhat.

Substantive: ălĭquĭd, ălĭquāntum, ălĭquāntŭlum, with Gen.

Adverb: ălĭquāntum, ălĭquāntŭlum, nōnnĭhĭl, pāūlum; ălĭquāntō, or pāūlō with Comparative, as—

Ălĭquāntō mĕlĭŭs, **somewhat** (i.e. *a good deal*) *better*,
Pāūlō mĕlĭŭs, **somewhat** (i.e. *a little*) *better*.

Somewhere.

Adverb: ălĭcŭbĭ, ălĭquō lŏcō. "Somewhere else" = "elsewhere," ălĭō (after Verbs of motion).

Spite.

Preposition: "In spite of." Cannot be rendered literally. One of the following ways may be used—

In **spite** *of the enemy's threats, he advanced,*
Sprētīs hōstĭum mĭnīs, prōcēssĭt.
Quāmvīs hōstēs mūltă mĭnĭtārēntŭr, prōcēssĭt.
Hōstĭum mĭnās ăděō nōn tĭmŭĭt ŭt prōcēděrĕt.

It may sometimes be rendered by "ĭnvĭtŭs," as—

I will do this in **spite** *of you,*
Tĕ ĭnvĭtō, hōc făcĭam.

Still.

Adverb:

(1) = "nevertheless," tămĕn, as—

He tried to do it; **still** *he could not succeed,*
Rem tēntāvĭt: nĭhĭl tămĕn prōfĕcĭt.

(2) = "besides," ĕtĭam. (See "**besides.**")

(3) With Comparatives: "ĕtĭam," "ădhūc," as—

Still *greater*, mājŏr ĕtĭam.

(4) Of time: ădhūc, ĕtĭam nūnc, ĕtĭam.

Such.

Adjective:

(1) tālĭs, answered by "quālĭs" or "ŭt," *that*, as—

I am not **such** *as I was,*
Nōn sum tālĭs quālĭs ĕram.

Digitized by Google

In such sentences in Latin, "tālĭs" may be omitted.

We think ourselves **such** *that we are rightly praised,*
Tālēs nōs ēssĕ pŭtāmŭs ŭt jūrĕ laŭdēmŭr.

But "tālĭs" in such sentences is more often followed by the Relative and Subjunctive, as—

He committed **such** *a crime that it could not be pardoned,*
Tālĕ făcĭnŭs ādmĭsĭt cuī īgnōscī nōn pŏssĕt.

(2) "Such" often = "so great," "tāntŭs," as in the last example—

Such *a crime,* tāntum făcĭnŭs.

In this sense it is often rendered by "ĭs, ĕa, ĭd," as—

Such *was the valour of the men, that they scaled the wall,*
Ĕă ĕrăt mīlĭtum vīrtūs ŭt mūrum scāndĕrēnt,
or Ĕă ĕrānt vīrtūtĕ mīlĭtēs . . . (an Ablative of quality).
(Rule 25.)

(3) = "of such a kind," "ējūsmŏdī" (prop. a Genitive of Quality), as—

Such *a crime,* ējūsmŏdī făcĭnŭs.

Adverb: = "so," tam, as—

Such *good men,* tam bŏnī hŏmĭnēs.

Phrases—"In such a way," or "manner"—Sīc, ĭtă. (See "so.")

Notice the idiomatic use of "ĭs quī" in this sentence—

I did not think you **such** *a villain as to betray your country,*
Nōn tē ĕum pŭtāvī quī pătrĭam prōdĕrēs.

Than.

Particle of Comparison. (See Rule 30.)

Try to understand when you may substitute the Ablative Case for "quam" preceded and followed by the same Case. Take the sentence—

Cæsar was more hateful to Pompey **than** *to Cicero.*

This would be in Latin—

Caēsăr īnvīsĭŏr ĕrăt Pōmpēĭō quam Cĭcĕrōnī.

If we write—

Caēsăr īnvīsĭŏr ĕrăt Pōmpēĭō Cĭcĕrōnĕ,

it is doubtful whether it means—

Cæsar was more hateful to Pompey **than** *(he was) to Cicero,*
or *Cæsar was more hateful to Pompey* **than** *Cicero was.*

Digitized by Google

Or again—

The king was poorer in money **than** *in slaves,*

In Latin—

Rēx ĕgēntĭŏr ĕrăt pĕcūnĭāē quam sērvōrum.

If we wrote—

Rēx ĕgēntĭŏr ĕrăt pĕcūnĭāē sērvīs,

it is doubtful whether it means—

The king was poorer in money **than** *in slaves,*
or *The king was poorer in money* **than** *his slaves were.*

In other words, the Latin leaves it doubtful whether we are comparing—"The king and his slaves," or "money and slaves."

So we may get two Rules—

1. When the Ablative would leave your meaning doubtful, use "quam."

2. As a general rule, the Ablative may be substituted for "quam" with Nominative or Accusative, but not for "quam" with Genitive, Dative or Ablative.

When the comparison is between two Adjectives, or Adverbs, as—

He is more brave **than** *wise,*

both Adjectives in Latin are of the Comparative degree, as—

Fŏrtĭŏr ēst quam prūdēntĭŏr (*not* quam prūdēns).

You must always use "quam" (not the Ablative) in the comparison of Adjectives or Adverbs.

That.

Demonstrative Pronoun: ĭllĕ, īstĕ, ĭs, as—

This, hĭc; *that,* ĭllĕ.

"Īstĕ" often = "tŭŭs," as—

I praise your valour,
Lāŭdō īstam vīrtūtem (**that** *valour of yours*).

"Ĭs" is most commonly used as Antecedent to "quĭ," as in the next example.

Relative Pronoun: = "who" or "which," quĭ, as—

The man, **that** *I saw yesterday, is here,*
= *The man,* **whom** *I saw yesterday, is here,*
Ĭs, quem hĕrī vīdī, ădēst.

Digitized by Google

Conjunction:

(1) Introducing a *fact, statement, supposition* or *belief*, is not translated in Latin (see Rule 40, Acc. and Infin.), as—

I say **that** *the king is dead,*
= *I state as a fact that the king is dead,*
Āiō rēgem ēssĕ mōrtŭum.
I believe **that** *Cæsar will come,*
Crēdō Cāēsārem vēntūrum ēssĕ.

(2) "That," introducing *a Purpose*, or *a Consequence.*

Try if you can substitute for "that" the words "in order that," or "that in consequence," as—

I came **that** *I might see you,*
= *I came* **in order that** *I might see you.* (Purpose.)
He was so lame **that** *he could not walk,*
He was so lame **that in consequence** *he could not walk.* (Consequence.)

Render by "ŭt" with Subjunctive. (Rules 41, 42, 43.)

Vēnī ŭt tē vĭdērem,
Ăděō claūdŭs ĕrăt ŭt pĕdĭbŭs īrĕ nōn pōssĕt.

If there is a Negative in the Clause following "that," as—

I went away **that** *I might* **not** *see him* (Purpose),
He was so lame **that** *he could* **not** *walk* (Consequence),

for *a Purpose* put "nē;" for *a Consequence* "ŭt nōn," as—

Ăbĭī *nē* ĕum vĭdērem.
Ăděō claūdŭs ĕrăt *ŭt* pĕdĭbŭs īrĕ *nōn* pōssĕt.

There are five ways of expressing "purpose" in Latin, *e.g.*—

He came **that** *he might make peace,*
(1) Vēnĭt ŭt pācem făcĕrĕt.
(2) Vēnĭt ăd pācem făcĭēndam.
(3) Vēnĭt caūsā pācis făcĭēndāē.
(4) Vēnĭt pācem fāctum.

(Fāctum is the Active Supine. This construction can only be used after a Verb of Motion.)

(5) Vēnĭt pācem fāctūrŭs. (Rare.)

Notice the rendering of—

I do not doubt **that** *Cæsar was a great general,*
Nōn dŭbĭtō *quīn* Cāēsăr māgnŭs īmpĕrātŏr fŭĕrĭt.
It cannot be denied **that** *Cæsar was a great general,*
Nĕgārī nōn pŏtēst *quīn* Cāēsăr māgnŭs īmpĕrātŏr fŭĕrĭt.

Digitized by Google

After verbs of fearing, "that" is translated by "nē;" "that . . . not," by "ŭt," or "nē nōn."

The.

The English Article is not rendered in a Latin sentence, unless it is used emphatically, as—

Alexander **the** *Great*, Ălēxăndĕr *īllĕ* măgnŭs.

NOTICE the use of "the" in such sentences as—

The *more he tried* **the** *less he succeeded,*
Quō măgĭs tēntāvĭt *ĕō* mĭnŭs prōfēcĭt.
or Quāntō măgĭs tēntāvĭt *tāntō* mĭnŭs prōfēcĭt.

Their.

Possessive Pronoun: sŭŭs, or Oblique Cases of "ĭs." (See under "**he.**")

Then.

Adverb:

(1) Of time = "at that time," "tum" or "tūnc."

(2) Of succession: dĕīndĕ, as—

First he attacked the Gauls, **then** *the Germans,*
Prīmum Gāllōs, *dĕīndĕ* Gērmānōs āggrēssŭs ēst.

(3) = "therefore," or "so then," ĭgĭtŭr, ērgō, as—

What **then** *do you think?* Quĭd *ĭgĭtŭr* sēntīs?
Do we **then** *hesitate?* *Ērgō* dŭbĭtāmŭs?

(4) = "yet," "nevertheless," tămĕn.

If we cannot go to Athens **then** *we will go to Rome,*
Sī Āthēnās īrĕ nōn lĭcēbĭt Rōmam tămĕn ĭbĭmŭs.

Thence.

Adverb:

(1) Of place: ĭndĕ, ĭllĭnc, as—

Thence *he set out into Gaul,*
Ĭndĕ ĭn Gāllĭam prōfēctŭs ēst.

(2) Introducing a conclusion drawn from what has gone before: "ĭndĕ," or "ēx ĕō," or "quō," as—

Thence *it came to pass that he was conquered,*
Ĭndĕ / Ex ĕō / Quō } fāctum ēst ūt vĭncĕrētŭr.

Digitized by Google

There.

Adverb:

(1) Is very often not to be translated in Latin. No absolute rule can be laid down; but, generally, when "there" stands first in its Clause, or immediately before the Verb, it will not be translated, as—

> **There** *is a famous city, &c.*
> *While he supped* **there** *came a messenger, &c.*
> **There** *is no doubt, &c.*
> *If you try,* **there** *will be no difficulty, &c.*

(2) = "in that place," ĭbĭ.

(3) = "thither," ĕō.

Thereabouts.

Adverb:

(1) Render by fĕrē, fĕrmē, or cĭrcĭtĕr, as—

> *Ten talents or* **thereabouts**, dĕcem fĕrē tălēntă.

(2) = "there," ĭbĭ.

Thereby.

Adverb:

(1) Render by Ablative "ĕâ rē" ("by that thing").

(2) = "**Thence**" (2), q.v.

Therefore.

Adverb: Ĭtăquĕ (first in Clause); ĭgĭtŭr (usually not first in Clause); ĭdcĭrcō (usually first in Clause); ērgō.

Sometimes—"ŏb hōc," "ŏb hānc rem," "quămōbrem," or "quāē quum ĭtă sĭnt."

Therein.

Adverb: "in it," as—

> *I examined the chest, and found nothing* **therein**,
> Ârcam scrūtātūs sum, nĕquĕ quīdquam ĭn ĕâ īnvēnī.

Thereinto.

Adverb: = "into that."

Thereof.

Adverb: = "of it."

Digitized by Google

Thereto.
Adverb: = "to that."

Thereupon (or **Thereon**).
Adverb: = "**then**," q.v.

Therewith.
Adverb: = "with it."

They.
Pronoun: Plural of "**he**," q.v.

Thing.
Substantive: rēs; but must often be rendered in Latin by the Neuter Gender, as—

It is one **thing** *to fight, another to conquer,*
Ălĭŭd ēst pūgnārĕ, ăllĭŭd vĭncĕrĕ.
Woman is ever a wayward and changeable **thing,**
Vărĭum ĕt mūtābĭlĕ sĕmpĕr fĕmĭnă.

This.
Pronoun: hĭc, hāēc, hōc.

Those.
Pronoun: Plural of "that," ĭllĕ, ĭs.

Though.
Conjunction:
Quāmquam, ĕtsī, ĕtĭāmsī, lĭcĕt, ŭt, quum, quāmvīs. (See List of Latin Conjunctions.)

"Quāmvīs" is also used with Adjectives, the Verb being omitted, as—

Though *unwilling, he went away,*
Quāmvīs ĭnvĭtŭs, dĭscēssĭt.

Thousand.
Numeral Adjective and Substantive:
Mĭllĕ = 1000, is usually an indeclinable Adjective, as—

A **thousand** *men,* mĭllĕ vĭrī.
Of a **thousand** *men,* mĭllĕ vĭrōrum.

Dat. mĭllĕ vĭrīs, Acc. mĭllĕ vĭrōs, Abl. mĭllĕ vĭrīs. But the Plural "mĭlĭă" is a Declinable Substantive, as—

Two **thousand** *men,* dŭŏ mĭlĭă vĭrōrum. (See Rule 8.)
The city was besieged by two **thousand** *men,*
Ūrbs ōbsēssă ēst ā dŭŏbŭs mĭlĭbŭs vĭrōrum. (See also p. 91.)

Digitized by Google

Through.

Preposition:

(1) Pĕr (acc.), of space or time, as—

Through *all Asia,* pĕr ōmnem Ăsĭam.
Through *all my life,* pĕr ōmnem vītam.

But the latter may be rendered by the Accusative alone. (Rule 23.)

(2) Often = "by," and expresses the Instrument or Cause by which a thing is done. It is then rendered by the Ablative Case without a Preposition, as—

He gained office **through** *bribery,*
Ămbĭtū hŏnōrēs ădēptŭs ēst.

This happened **through** *your fault,*
Tŭā cūlpā hōc ăccĭdĭt. (See "**by**" (5).)

(3) = "Because of," prōpter (acc.), ŏb (acc.), as—

Through *her beauty she became queen,*
Ŏb pūlchrĭtūdĭnem fāctă ēst rēgīnă.

(4) It is sometimes expressed by "pĕr" or "trāns," compounded with the Verb, as—

To run **through** *with a sword,*
Glădĭō trānsĭgĕrĕ.

To run **through** *a country,*
Rĕgĭōnem pĕrcūrrĕrĕ.

Thus.

Adverb: ĭtă, sīc, hōc mŏdō, ăd hūnc mŏdum, as—

He **thus** *addressed the soldiers,*

{Sīc / Ăd hūnc mŏdum} mīlĭtēs āllŏcūtŭs ēst.

NOTICE, "thus far," "hāctĕnŭs."

Thy.

Possessive Pronoun: tŭŭs, īstĕ.

NOTE.—"My" in Latin may be rendered "mĕŭs" or "nōstĕr," but "thy" must not be rendered "vēstĕr," which only means "your," addressing more than one person.

Till.

(1) *Conjunction:* dum, dōnĕc, quŏăd. (See List of Latin Conjunctions.)

Digitized by Google

(2) *Preposition:* ăd (often, ūsquĕ ăd), as—

Till *evening*, ūsquĕ ăd vēspĕrum.

To.

(1) Sign of the Dative Case, as—

I give this **to** *you*, hōc tĭbĭ dō. (Rule 13.)

(2) Sign of the Infinitive Mood (Rules 33–35, 40), as—

I wish **to** *depart*, ăbīrĕ vŏlŏ.
I promise **to** *help you*,
Prōmittō mē tĭbĭ āūxĭlĭātūrum ēssĕ.
I hope **to** *come*,
Spērō mē vēntūrum ēssĕ.

(3) Sign of the Subjunctive Mood, when for the word "to" you can substitute the word "that," introducing a *purpose* or a *consequence*, as—

I came **to** *see you* = *I came* **that** *I might see you*,
Vēnī *ŭt* tē vĭdērem.

He was too lame **to** *walk* = *He was* **so** *lame* **that** *he could not walk*,
Ăděō clāūdŭs ĕrăt *ŭt* pĕdĭbŭs īrĕ nōn pōssĕt.

There are five ways of expressing *purpose* in Latin, e.g.—

He came **to** *make peace.*
1. Vēnĭt ŭt pācem făcĕrĕt.
2. Vēnĭt ăd pācem făcĭēndam.
3. Vēnĭt cāūsā pācĭs făcĭēndāē.
4. Vēnĭt pācem fāctum.

(Fāctum is the Active Supine. This construction can only be used after a Verb of Motion.)

5. Vēnĭt pācem fāctūrŭs (rare).

Notice the expressions—

I see nothing **to** *admire*,
Nĭhĭl *quŏd* ădmīrĕr vĭdĕō.

He is not the man **to** *do this*,
Nōn *ĭs* ĕst *quī* hōc făcĭăt.

(4) *Preposition:* Of motion.

1. Sometimes omitted, as with names of towns, &c. (Rule 22.)
2. If "to" = "into," ĭn (acc.).
3. When used of motion to a person, ăd (acc.), as—

They go **to** (i.e. *into*) *Gaul to Cæsar*,
Ĕūnt ĭn Gāllĭam ăd Cāesărem.

Digitized by Google

If you wrote "ĭn Caēsărem" here, it would mean *against Cæsar.*

(5) Of time = "till," ăd (often ūsquĕ ăd) (acc.), ĭn (acc.).

(6) = "towards," ĭn (acc.), ērgā (acc.), ādvērsŭs (acc.), as—

Dutiful **to** *his parents,* pĭŭs ērgā părēntēs.

Too.

Adverb:

(1) = "also," ĕtĭam, quŏquĕ, prāētĕrĕā, as—

Answer me this **too,** hŏc quŏquĕ mĭhĭ rēspōndē.

(2) = "excessively," nĭmĭs, nĭmĭum, as—

Too *thrifty,* nĭmĭs pārcŭs.

Note the phrases—"too much," "nĭmĭum;" "too little," "părum," followed by Genitive Case. (See Rule 8.)

(3) "Too" is often rendered by the Comparative in such sentences as—

My misfortunes are **too** *great to be borne,*
Latin—*My misfortunes are greater than which can be borne,*
Mălă mĕă măjōrā sūnt, quam quāē fĕrrī pōssĭnt.

He was **too** *bold to fly,*
Latin—*He was bolder than who should fly,*
Audācĭŏr ĕrăt, quam quī fŭgĕrĕt.

Touching.

Preposition: "About" (2), q.v.

Towards.

Preposition:

(1) Of motion, vērsŭs (acc.), following the Case it governs, as—

Towards Rome, Rōmam vērsŭs.

(2) Of time: sŭb (acc.), as—

Towards *night,* sŭb nōctem.

(3) Of relation: ĭn (acc.), ērgā (acc.), ādvērsŭs (acc.), as—

Dutiful **towards** *his parents,* pĭŭs ērgā părēntēs.

Under.

Preposition: Sŭb (acc. or abl.), sūbtĕr (acc. or abl.), as—

To go **under** *the earth,* sŭb tĕrrās īrĕ (motion).
To be **under** *the earth,* sŭb tĕrrīs ēssĕ (rest).

Digitized by Google

Often compounded with the Verb, as—

I place **under**, sūppōnō (Rule 13).

Note the phrase—

Under *a pretence of friendship*, pĕr spĕcĭem ămīcĭtĭāē.
Under *your guidance*, tē dŭcē (abl. abs.).
Under *these circumstances*, quāē quum ĭtă sīnt (lit. *since these things are so*).
Under *arms*, ārmātŭs.
He is **under** *twenty*, mĭnŏr vīgīntī ănnīs ēst.

Unless.

Conjunction: nĭsĭ (contracted form, nĭ).

"Unless" = "if not," and nĭsĭ has the same construction as "sĭ" in Conditional Sentences. (See p. 127.)

Until.

Conjunction: dum, dōnĕc, quŏăd. Used with Indicative in reference to past facts, as—

They fought until they conquered,
Pūgnāvērūnt dōnĕc vīcērūnt.

But in all other sentences (and in Oratio Obliqua) used with Subjunctive, according to Rules 41, 42, 43, as—

They will fight **till** *they conquer,*
Pūgnābūnt dōnĕc vīncānt.

Up.

Preposition: Is nearly always included in, or compounded with, the Verb, as—

To go **up** *the hill*, cōllem scāndĕrĕ.
To take **up** *arms*, ārmă sūmĕrĕ.
To rise **up**, sūrgĕrĕ.
To sit **up** *at night*, nōctem vĭgĭlārĕ, lit. *to be awake during the night.*

It often implies *completion* of the action of the Verb, as—

To burn **up**, ēxūrĕrĕ.
To eat **up**, cŏmĕdĕrĕ.

NOTE the phrases—

Up *stream*, ădvērsō flūmĭnĕ.
He led his men **up** *the hill*, ăcĭem ĭn ădvērsum cōllem ērēxĭt.
It is all **up** *with the state*, āctum ēst dē rēpūblĭcā.

Up to.

Preposition: tĕnŭs (abl.) stands after the word it governs, as—

Up to *the hilt*, căpŭlō tĕnŭs.

Digitized by Google

Phrases—

Up to *the present time*, ūsquĕ ăd prāēsēns tēmpŭs.
To come **up to** = *to equal*, āēquārĕ.

Upon.

Preposition:

(1) Literally: sŭpĕr (acc. abl.), as—

They are slaughtered one **upon** *another*,
Ălĭī sŭpĕr ălĭŏs trŭcīdāntŭr.

It is often compounded with the Verb, as—

to fall **upon**, { 1. (lit.) īncĭdō. 2. = *To attack*, āggrĕdĭŏr.
To play **upon**, as—*To play* **upon** *the lyre*, fĭdĭbŭs cănĕrĕ.
To impose **upon** = *to deceive*, &c.

(2) = "about," dē (abl.), as—

Upon *this subject*, dē hāc rē.

NOTE the phrases—

Upon *this*, **Upon** *which*, } quō fāctō.
To be **upon** *Cæsar's side*, stārĕ ā Cāēsărĕ.
Upon *the right*, ā dēxtrā.

Very.

Adjective: īpsĕ, as—

At that **very** *time*, ĕō īpsō tēmpŏrĕ.

NOTE the phrase—

At this **very** *moment*, nūnc quum māxĭmē.

Adverb:

(1) Sign of Superlative Degree, as—

Very *large*, māxĭmŭs.

(2) Vāldē, ādmŏdum, sătĭs, as—

Very *young*, ādmŏdum ădŏlēscēns.

(3) Used with comparatives: mūltō, lōngē, as—

Very *much bolder*, mūltō *or* lōngē āūdācĭŏr.

(4) With Negatives: ĭtă, as—

Not **very** *long afterwards*, nōn ĭtă mūltō pōst.

(5) With Verbs: māgnŏpĕrĕ, as—

He was **very** *much pleased*, māgnŏpĕrĕ dēlēctātŭs ēst.

Digitized by Google

Well.

Adverb: bĕnĕ. Phrase—

To be **well** (i.e. *in good health*), vălērĕ.

NOTE the phrase "as well as," nōn mĭnŭs quam, as—

Pompey subdued Sicily as **well** *as Spain,*
Pōmpēĭŭs Sĭcĭlĭam nōn mĭnŭs quam Hĭspānĭam sŭbēgĭt.

(See "**besides,**" adv. and prep.)

What.

Interrogative Pronoun or Adjective: quĭs, quĭsnam (in Dependent Clauses), as—

What *have you done,* quĭd fēcīstī?
I asked him **what** *he had done,* rŏgāvī ĕum quĭdnam fēcĭssĕt.

Relative Pronoun: = "that which," quĭ, as—

What *you say is hard for me to understand,*
Ĭd quŏd tū dĭcĭs, mĭhĭ quĭdem dĭfficĭlĕ ĭntēllēctū ēst.

"What" often = "how great," or "of what sort," quāntŭs, quālĭs, as—

What *a crime is thine!* quāntum ĭstŭd făcĭnŭs!

When.

Conjunction:

(1) In Interrogative Sentences: quāndō, as—

When *shall I see you,* quāndō tē āspĭcĭam?

(2) Quum. (See List of Latin Conjunctions.)

(3) Ŭbĭ, with Indic.

(4) Ŭt, with Indic.

(5) Often render Clauses introduced by "when" by Participles, as—

Cæsar **when** *he saw the enemy joined battle,*
Caēsăr, vĭsō hŏstĕ, prōēlĭum cōmmĭsĭt (abl. abs.)

Cæsar **when** *he had encouraged his men, joined battle,*
Caēsăr, hŏrtātŭs sŭŏs, prōēlĭum cōmmĭsĭt (Deponent Participle).

(6) Note the expression—

I did this **when** *a boy,*
Hōc pŭĕr fēcī.

Whence.

Conjunction: ūndĕ.

Digitized by Google

Whenever.

Conjunction: quŏtĭēscūnquĕ.

Where.

Conjunction:

(1) Interrogative: ŭbĭ, as—

ŭbĭ ĕs? **where** *art thou?*

(2) Relative: quā, ŭbĭ.

Whereas.

Conjunction:

(1) = "since," quum, with Subjunctive.

(2) = "but," sĕd, as—

He was there, **whereas** *he ought to have been away,*
Ăděrăt sĕd ăbēssĕ dēbŭĭt,

or like (1) Quum ăbēssĕ dēbērĕt, ăděrăt.

Whereby.

Conjunction = "by which."

Wherefore.

Conjunction:

(1) Interrogative: = "**why,**" q.v.

(2) Relative: quārē, quŏcĭrcā, quămōbrem.

Wherein.

Conjunction = "in which."

Wherever.

Conjunction: ŭbĭcūnquĕ, quācūnquĕ.

Whereupon.

Conjunction (phrase):

quō fāctō (lit. "which being done")
pōst quāē (lit. "after which").

Whether.

Conjunction:

(1) Interrogative, as—

Whether *shall I see you or not?*

is usually omitted in English. We should say—

Shall I see you or not?

Digitized by Google

But it must be expressed in Latin, as—

Ŭtrum tē vĭdēbō *ānnōn?*
Tēnĕ vĭdēbō *ānnōn?*

(2) In indirect questions, as—

I will ask **whether** *I shall see him or not,*
Rŏgābō *ŭtrum* ĕum vīsūrŭs sim *nēcnĕ.*

Tell me **whether** *you will go or stay,*
Dīc mĭhĭ vĕlīs*nĕ* īrĕ *ăn* rēstārĕ.

In all such sentences observe Rules 41, 42, 43. Notice that "or not," in a direct question, is "ānnōn;" in an indirect question, "nēcnĕ."

(3) After Verbs of doubting, "not knowing," "ăn," as—

I doubt **whether** *it is true,*
Dŭbĭtō *ăn* vērum sĭt.

(4) In statements, not questions, "**whether**" ... "**or**" is rendered by "sīvĕ" . . . "sīvĕ" (or "seū," another form of "sīvĕ")—

Whether *I stand or sit, I am in pain,*
Sīvĕ stō, *seū* sĕdĕō, dŏlĕō.

Pronoun = "which of the two," ŭtĕr. (See "**who.**")

Which.

Relative Pronoun: (see "**who.**")

While.

Conjunction:

(1) dum, with Indicative Mood, and usually with Present Tense, even when the rest of the sentence refers to past time, as—

While *they were fighting, the general fell,*
Dum pūgnānt (*or* pūgnātŭr) dŭx cĕcĭdĭt.

If "while" = "as long as," the tense may be Past, as—

I did it **while** *I might,*
Dum lĭcŭĭt, fēcī.

While *Numa reigned there was peace* (i.e. "*as long as*" *Numa was reigning*),
Dum rēgnābăt Nŭmă, pāx ĕrăt.

(2) Quum, with Subj., as—

While *I was at Athens, I heard Zeno,*
Quum Āthēnīs ĕssem, Zēnōnem āūdĭēbam.

Digitized by Google

NOTICE that in English we say—

While *talking he was sitting down,*
While *fighting he was slain, &c.*

But these must be rendered in Latin either by one of the constructions given above, or by the Present Participle without "dum," as—

Dum lŏquĭtŭr, sĕdēbăt.
Pūgnāns ŏccīsŭs ēst.

Who.

Relative Pronoun: quī, quāē, quŏd (see Rule 39, and page 156).

Interrogative Pronoun: (1) quĭs, quīsnam (in Dependent Clauses), as—

Whom *do I see?* Quem vĭdĕō?

(2) which of the two, "ŭtĕr," as—

Which *of you (two) will help me?*
Ŭtĕr vēstrum mē jŭvābĭt?

Whoever.
Whoso.
Whosoever.

Pronoun: Quīcūnquĕ, quīsquīs.

Why.

(1) *Interrogative:* cūr, quārē, quĭd, quămōbrem.
"Why not" = quīdnī, quīn, as—

Why *do we not mount our horses?*
Quīn cōnscēndĭmŭs ĕquōs?

(2) *Relative:* cūr, quārē, quămōbrem, quam ŏb caūsam, quā dē caūsā, with Subjunctive (41, 42, 43).

Will.

(1) Sign of Future Tense, as—

I **will** *try,* tēntābō.

(2) = "to be willing," vŏlŏ; "to be not willing," nōlō, as—

I ask him repeatedly, but he **will** *not do it,*
Ĭdēntĭdem rŏgō, ĭs aūtem nōnvūlt făcĕrĕ.

(3) In Interrogative Sentences, e.g.—

Will *he come?*

In English the order of the words shews that the sentence is a question.

Digitized by Google

In Latin an Interrogative Particle is needed, e.g.—

Num věnĭět *or* věnĭētně?

"Num" is used when the answer "No" is expected. "Ně" is quite indefinite.

If the question in English contains a Negative, use "nōnně" in Latin to ask the question, e.g.—

Will *he not come?* nōnně věnĭět?

Wish.

In such expressions as—"I wish that," = "would that." See "**would**" (6).

With.

Preposition: is very often in Latin the sign of the Ablative *without* a Preposition, as—

(1) Of the instrument—

With *a stick*, băcŭlō (Rule 29).

(2) Of manner—

With *great diligence*, sūmmā dĭlĭgēntĭā.

(3) "Cum" means "together with" or "in company with," as—

To talk **with** *a friend*, cōllŏquī cum ămīcō.
To fight **with** *an enemy*, pūgnārě cum hōstě.

NOTICE also—

To sup **with** *Cæsar* (i.e. *as his guest*),
Cēnārě *ăpŭd* Cāēsărem.

With *your usual courtesy*,
Prō tŭā hūmānĭtātě.

Withal.

Adverb: sĭmŭl, ĕtĭam, quŏquě.

Within.

Adverb: ĭntūs.

Preposition: ĭntrā (acc.), of place or of time, as—

Within *the walls*, ĭntrā mūrōs.
Within *ten days*, ĭntrā dĕcem dĭēs.

NOTE the phrase—

He was **within** *a little of being killed*,
Mĭnĭmum ĕī ābfŭĭt *quin* ĭntērfĭcĕrētŭr.

Digitized by Google

Without.

Adverb: ēxtrā, ēxtrĭnsĕcŭs, fŏrīs ("out of doors").

Preposition:

(1) = "outside," ĕxtrā (acc.), as—

Without *the walls*, ēxtrā mūrōs.

(2) Sĭnĕ (abl.), as—

Without *hope*, sĭnĕ spē.

But often rendered by an Adjective, Verb, or Participle governing the Ablative (Rule 27), as—

Without *fear*, mĕtū { cărēns, / văcŭŭs, / lĭbĕr.

Without *friends*, ōrbŭs ămīcīs.

He is **without** *blame*,
Cūlpā văcăt *or* cărĕt.

(3) "Without" can sometimes be expressed by the Latin Negative, as—

He hears **without** *being called*,
Nōn vŏcātŭs āudĭt.

No one is condemned **without** *his cause being heard*,
Īncōgnĭtā cāūsā nēmō dāmnātŭr ("*ĭn-*" here is a negative particle).

He went away **without** *saluting me*,
Mē nōn sālūtātō dĭscēssĭt,
or Dĭscēssĭt nĕquĕ mē sālūtāvĭt.

Would.

(1) Sign of the Future tense in Dependent Clause, as—

I **will** *tell you all the matter*,
Rem ōmnem tĭbĭ dīcam.

Cæsar said that he **would** *tell him all the matter*,
Cāēsăr dīxĭt sē ĕī rem ōmnem *dĭctūrum ēssĕ*.

Cæsar doubted whether he **would** *tell him all the matter*,
Cāēsăr dŭbĭtāvĭt num ĕī rem ōmnem *dĭctūrŭs ēssĕt*.

(2) "Would" is often the sign of the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in Conditional sentences, as—

If you asked me I **would** *tell you*,
Sĭ rŏgēs *dīcam*.

Digitized by Google

(3) = "would have," sign of Pluperfect Subjunctive in Conditional sentences, as—

If he had sinned he **would have** *grieved,*
Sī pēccāvĭssĕt, *dŏlŭĭssĕt.*

(4) Past tense of "will" in the sense of "to be willing," as—

I asked him repeatedly, but he **would** *not tell me,*
Īdēntĭdem rŏgāvī, ĭs āutem mĭhĭ dĭcĕrĕ *nōlŭĭt.*

(5) Sometimes "would" = "will," Present tense, in courteous questions, as—

Would *you tell me,*
Vīsnĕ mĭhĭ dĭcĕrĕ?

(6) Used to express a wish, as—

Would *I had seen him,*
or **Would** *that I had seen him.*

Render by ŭtĭnam, sī, ō sī (with Subj.), as—

Ŭtĭnam ĕum vīdĭssem.

Yea.

Adverb: ĭtă.

Yes.

Often rendered by repeating the word to which assent is given, as—

Has Cæsar conquered? **Yes.**
Vīcĭtnĕ Cāēsăr? Vīcĭt.

Phrase—

To say **yes,** āĭō. *To say* **no,** nĕgō.

Yet.

Adverb:

(1) = "up to this time," ădhūc, hăctĕnŭs, as—

I have not **yet** *seen him,*
Hăctĕnŭs ĕum nōn vīdī.

(2) = "still," ĕtĭam, ĕtĭam nūnc, ădhūc, as—

Many have come, and more **yet** *will follow,*
Ādsūnt mūltī, sĕquēntŭr ĕtĭam plūrēs.

(3) = "nevertheless," tămĕn, as—

He tried to do it, **yet** *he could not succeed,*
Ręm tēntāvĭt, nĭhĭl tămĕn prōfĕcĭt.

Digitized by Google

(4) With Comparatives: ĕtĭam, as—

Yet *greater*, mājŏr ĕtĭam.

Yonder.

Render by "ĭstĕ" or "ĭllĕ."

Your.

Possessive Pronoun:

"Tŭŭs," "ĭstĕ," "vĕstĕr" (which last must only be used in reference to more than one person).

Yourself.

"Īpsĕ," as—

Not even you **yourself** *could do this,*
Nē tū quĭdem *īpsĕ* hōc făcĕrĕ pŏtĕs.

Digitized by Google

TRANSLATION OF EXAMPLES.

I.

1. I sing. Thou runnest. He comes. We fight. Ye are here. The enemy disperse.
2. Go, boy.
3. Let the ox plough.
4. The poor man everywhere lacks honour (lit., lies low).
5. Speed back, O Xanthus!
6. Why boastest thou, O Parthian?
7. Time glides by.
8. Lo! all are silent.
9. It was spring: I was roaming: Zephyr spied me: I was retreating: he pursues: I flee.

II.

1. A lucky day is dawning.
2. Hail, joyful day!
3. Toil itself pleases.
4. The poor child cries.
5. The Greek chiefs returned.
6. Fresh scarlet shines.
7. Great child, be thou born!
8. The watch dogs were silent.
9. Though conquered, yet thou wilt conquer; though overthrown, O Troy, yet thou wilt rise again.

III.

1. Riches are dug out, incentives to wrong.
2. Greece, a nation eloquent but unwarlike.
3. Tender hearts, they weep alike, the maid and the old man.
4. Hermes all things in one and thrice unique.
5. Sire of nymphs and of rivers, O Rhine.
6. We flee the crags of Ithaca, realm of Laertes.
7. We too did these things when young.
8. The Parthian possessed Roman standards, the pride of war.
9. Earth gave birth to giants, a savage brood, huge monsters.
10. Son, who alone art my strength, my mighty power.

IV.

1. Altars smoke.
2. Chiron groaned.
3. Live thou to-day.
4. Thus fight bulls, thus fell warriors.

Digitized by Google

5. This way flowed Simois.
6. This victory will ruin thee.
7. The soldier tells his wounds, the shepherd his sheep.
8. Both the Lar and Diana's company rout thieves.
9. Hyas his mother, Hyas his sad sisters bewailed.
10. Thou wast silent, O dog, ye too were silent, ye tribes of birds.

V.

1. To weep is no help.
2. Not to live, but to live in health is life.
3. May power to die be mine.
4. Pleasing is madness.
5. It is a leader's chief gift to know his friends.
6. It had become customary to graze the public pastures.
7. To gather booty is a pleasure.
8. It is not poverty, Nestor, to have nothing at all.
9. Loyal learning of generous arts refines the nature.
10. To retrace the steps, and reach the upper air, this is the task, this the toil.

VI.

1. What climes dost thou inhabit?
2. The coppices please not all.
3. Arms and a warrior I sing.
4. Press the couches, call for wine, take rose garlands.
5. Greet, O Vesta! the gods of Troy.
6. Gnaw the vine, O goat!
7. What have ye deserved, thou ox, and ye harmless sheep?
8. Check thy tears, my son.
9. Let the hamlet keep holiday: purify the hamlet, ye rustics.
10. Phœbus and the year have the same beginning.

VII.

1. I am the good Æneas.
2. Wouldest thou become free?
3. To-morrow's life is too late.
4. These are bad, but you make no better.
5. I am, I admit, Callistratus, and I always have been poor.
6. Am I wrong, or will these hills become a mighty city?
7. We may not be so eloquent.
8. Lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.
9. Fire, water, earth, were one confused mass.
10. Trustfulness is wont to be a harm to maidens.
11. He hoped that this, as gotten by his virtue, would be a great credit to him.

Digitized by Google

VIII.

1. Love of money grows.
2. I begin the walls of my much desired city.
3. The swallow, harbinger of spring, has come.
4. Thousands of hornets gather.
5. Brutus was a clever imitator of a fool.
6. What that is safe remains?
7. Calves, unused to toil, offer their necks to the stroke.
8. The mind conscious of uprightness laughs at the lies of rumour.
9. Great of old time was the reverence for the hoary head.

IX.

1. A sharp-pointed lance.
2. Lydia of wide fame.
3. A lad of a hundred graces.
4. A youth of constant loyalty.
5. He forms a plan of much skill.
6. Artless Ennius and Accius, poet of spirited voice.
7. A lad of noble mien and noble bashfulness.
8. At his side sped Acontius, a youth of the same age.
9. For ten thousand sesterces Bassus buys Tyrian mantles of the choicest hue.
10. Nowadays riches are of more value.

X.

1. Agamemnon repents of his anger.
2. Fame is not ashamed of thy record, O Rome!
3. Thou pitiest the fallen.
4. They loathe their purpose and the light of day.
5. Nor hast thou pity for thy son and thyself.
6. Let Danaus and those cruel sisters repent their crime.
7. Then at last Phineus repents the wrongful war.
8. And those that are weary of thy great undertaking and thy fortunes.
9. Cowards, do not your unhappy country, your ancient gods, and great Æneas move your pity and your shame?

XI.

1. Forbear, Cupid, to condemn thy poet for crime.
2. I without thee shall be a culprit accused of this charge.
3. Convict me of cowardice.
4. Why am I alone accused of a joint crime?

XII.

1. A lioness forgetful of her cubs.
2. Is he well? Does he remember me?
3. Even a god bids thee remember death.
4. Suffer me to forget my fate.

Digitized by Google

5. Even now remember approaching old age.
6. Forgetful of the sacred shields, the name, the gown, and eternal Vesta.
7. Pity, O pity me and mine.
8. Pity, I beseech thee, two if not one.
9. Pity these grievous troubles, pity a heart undeservedly afflicted.

XIII.

1. Grant us peace.
2. The author preferred this work to that.
3. Every soil is fatherland to the brave.
4. My daughter has been torn from me.
5. What mischance took thee from me?
6. Restore the son to the father.
7. Treacherous Jason promised Medea everything.
8. Why dost thou commit seed to the barren sand?
9. What mean the masks? What means the long robe?
10. For at home I have a father, I have a cruel stepmother.

XIV.

1. White milk I always have.
2. I have the right to survive my ashes.
3. Dry land is lacking for his flight.
4. Luck did not fail his erring hand.
5. Rejoice to dwell among Quirinus' folk.
6. No small longing possesses me.
7. When thou comest, the people will not lack day.
8. What availed me beauty or voice, or youth?
9. "The luck is wont to be in the first start," said he.
10. Cæsar's eternal godhead guards the eternal fires.

XV.

1. Ilia pleases Mars.
2. Cæsar himself obeyed his own law.
3. Spare a holy race.
4. Aid the abandoned.
5. Gathered wealth is each one's master or his slave.
6. Gods of the woodland, pardon our deeds.
7. The wild boar obeys the scarlet bridle.
8. To have wedded Jove is something.
9. Death harms not writings, time helps them.
10. Wrongdoing brought harm to the sow, wrongdoing also brought harm to the she-goat.

XVI.

1. It is ill trusting a foe.
2. Deal gently with the young.
3. You cannot well trust the bank.
4. Forth from the gates should each be met.
5. Field mushrooms are the best: others you trust to your cost.

Digitized by Google

XVII.

1. A favourite of the gods themselves.
2. To the fatherland let him be useful, to his lands serviceable.
3. A match for fleeting winds and likest unto winged sleep.
4. The wind was fit for the sailors, for the lover unfit.
5. The hue that was white is now the opposite to white.
6. Not for glory, not for arms am I by birth fitted.
7. Already the city walls were standing, too small for their future citizens.
8. Hard by the Capene Gate is Mercury's fount.
9. A rout unkind to peace, and a foe to quiet repose.
10. Crossways are pleasing to the god, are pleasing to the dog.

XVIII.

1. A thousand ways he flees backwards and forwards.
2. Suffer me, I pray, first to rage out my rage.
3. Who look honest men and live riotous lives.
4. Who did force thee to grow pale with shifting hues?
5. My Lynceus himself feels the frenzy of passion too late.
6. I am forced to set out on a long journey to learned Athens.
7. Let the stream learn how to run in strange courses.
8. Hard oaks shall drip honey dew.
9. A race hateful to me sails the Tyrrhene sea.
10. I will teach you that the public, all alike, are mad with a madness like to this.

XIX.

1. Ask the gods for pardon.
2. I ask arms of a deity sacred to me.
3. Caught by the storm in the open sea, he prays the gods for peace.
4. For nothing more do I importune the gods, nor beg more bounty of my powerful friend.
5. Never have I asked the gods for wealth.
6. Now my muse teaches me another strain.
7. What does the poet ask of Apollo on his day of dedication?
8. Thou that art skilled in the speech of either tongue.
9. Thracian Chloe rules me now, skilled in sweet music.

XX.

1. We, Fortune, we make thee a goddess.
2. Our Roman forefathers called sin-offerings "Februa."
3. Brutus he calls the sun of Asia, his suite benignant stars.
4. Rome when free called Cicero "Father of his fatherland."
5. Thou hast made me rich.
6. Not rightly wilt thou call him happy who possesses much.
7. Time makes poems better, like wine.
8. A long syllable following a short is called an "Iambus."
9. From the turning of the stream I am called the god Vertumnus.
10. Here be content to be called sire and leader.

Digitized by Google

XXI.

1. Like to a god in face and shoulders.
2. He quivers in ears and trembles in limbs.
3. Now with limbs outstretched beneath the green arbutus.
4. The sheep went, its body clothed with its own wool.
5. His towering head encompassed with bright mist.
6. Io, changed in head, had lowed in early years.
7. Afire in her queenly locks, afire in her chaplet.
8. I had both my hands bound behind my back.
9. I saw Deiphobus, his face foully mangled.
10. In all things like to Mercury, in voice, and hue, and golden hair.

XXII.

1. Go to Rome, my book.
2. Thou wilt go, Macer, to Salonæ on the shore.
3. To Baiæ and to the oysters they run.
4. He had the courage to take his boy to Rome.
5. Is it not enough to sail back to Ithaca?
6. I remember Teucer's coming to Sidon.
7. Ceres marvelled at the sounds of woe: she had just come to Henna.
8. Was Bassus on his way to Rome? Nay, he was off to the country.
9. "Let him go," said he, "to learned Athens."
10. Go home, my full-fed goats (lo! Hesperus comes), go home!

XXIII.

1. I am missing all August.
2. After luncheon we creep on three miles.
3. You cannot be alone one hour.
4. For ten nights already has Cynthia offered sacrifice.
5. For five years I could serve thee loyally.
6. All these years I wage war with a single tribe.
7. The offspring of Mars had grown for eighteen years.
8. Night and day alike the portal of gloomy Dis is open.
9. Hence we hurry four-and-twenty miles in postchaises.
10. Full three days, ill-marked in blinding darkness, we wander on the deep: full three starless nights.

XXIV.

1. Neither in summer nor winter does my fresh milk run short.
2. First to pluck in spring the rose, the apple in autumn.
3. From all sides the Trojan warriors come streaming around in their eagerness to see.
4. For joy the forest-clad hills themselves fling upwards their voices.
5. It is pleasant to go on the hills.
6. He shall wage a mighty war in Italy.

Digitized by Google

7. The fable goes that a country mouse welcomed a town mouse in his poor hole.
8. Raising a visage pale in wondrous wise.
9. The true goddess was evident in her gait.
10. By nature lofty and vigorous.
11. Mingle honey with milk and mellow wine.
12. Thou, O lyre, skilled to give forth sounds on seven strings.
13. With huge bulk Dares uplifts his head, and stands erect amid loud applause.
14. Euryalus shoots forward, and, winning by a friend's kindness, holds first place, and flies onward amid noisy shouts of applause.
15. For gold Achilles was selling the corpse.
16. Say for what stake do you match me?
17. They scarce project with the tips of their antlers.
18. But the more he shall change himself into all shapes, the more, my son, strain tight the firm bonds.
19. Ausonian settlers, a race sent from Troy.
20. I roam the wilds of Libya, an exile from Europe and Asia.
21. Spells can even draw down the moon from heaven.
22. Son of a goddess.
23. He sends down Maia's son.
24. Mæcenas, descendant of kingly ancestors.

XXV.

1. It was a stag of excellent shape and with huge antlers.
2. Rakes of cruel weight.
3. Endive with bitter fibres.
4. Staves of pointed wood.
5. Of little mention wouldest thou now be, Ilion!
6. She speeding along her thousand-hued bow.
7. I have fourteen nymphs of surpassing beauty.
8. Sordid love is wont to be deaf-eared.
9. Brandishing in hand two lances of broad blade.
10. These waters and streams Charon guards, a ferryman of grisly filth.

XXVI.

1. Act a mother's part, father.
2. Spring do I ever enjoy.
3. Herself using her own hand, fell Dido.
4. He feeds on the wretches' flesh and black blood.
5. Iarbas the Moor is lord of the captured palace.
6. The Trojans landing win the longed-for shore.
7. Worthy of a prison wast thou.
8. A man that is worthy of praise the Muse will not let die.
9. Shouting out words fit for speech and unfit.
10. That one quicker in motion of foot, and trusting to his youth.

Digitized by Google

11. Trusting thereto he stirs the winds and cleaves the storm-clouds.
12. We need a brief peace.
13. There must be shouting that the ear may hear.
14. Now strength is needed, and active hands, and all skill of guidance.

XXVII.

1. The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, lacks money.
2. I lack bread.
3. Nor were his cheeks without tears.
4. Night is innocent of the crime.
5. Let the ears be free from the sound of quarrel.
6. With cries I filled the roads.
7. No niggard of his old vinegar.
8. Needing no help of ours.
9. Rich in lands, rich in money placed at interest.
10. Love is a matter full of troublous fear.
11. Rich in steeds, rich in embroidery and gold.
12. A plain full of herbage and bounteous in fruitfulness.
13. They take their fill of old wine and fat venison.

XXVIII.

1. When thou hast slain thy wife's father, take the kingdom.
2. Bees, their sovereign lost, wander uncertainly.
3. With Hercules as substitute Atlas supported the heavens.
4. Now that Cæsar is coming, Phosphor, give back the day.
5. Bailiff, let the soil rest now that the sowing is over.
6. If once the flower be hurt, vetches and beans are ruined.
7. There is laughter at sham jests, with Balatro to back it.
8. I will pay the penalty by my death, convicted with a goddess as my judge.
9. The thing I will relate happened when I was an old man.
10. Never despair with Teucer's guidance and Teucer's luck.
11. With me for guide thou wilt be safe.

XXIX.

1. I am conquered by Æneas.
2. By these he is praised, by those he is blamed.
3. Who knows not that painters are supported by Isis?
4. Now, his nuts forsaken, the sad schoolboy is summoned back by the bawling master.
5. They defend themselves actively, some with darts, others with stones.
6. By wine beauty is ruined: by wine life's vigour is spoiled.
7. A neck fit for the yoke must not be struck by the axe.

Digitized by Google

XXX.

1. This little work will owe much more to you than to its author.
2. More harmful to thee than Juno was Venus.
3. Something greater than the Iliad is coming to birth.
4. O daughter, fairer than thy fair mother.
5. I have completed a monument more lasting than bronze.
6. Silver is worth less than gold, gold than noble qualities.
7. Colder than ice was the lover's heart.
8. Issa is more coaxing than all girls.
9. Nought is sillier than a silly laugh.

XXXI.

1. Till it shall please his majesty of Bithynia to wake.
2. Often it is even my pleasure to go over the swelling waves.
3. They may be happy.
4. It repented the gods that they escaped the flames.
5. Shame it is that I could not die.
6. She is weary of gazing on heaven's vault.
7. It is no shame that the she-wolf was the nurse of the race.
8. Let it be my joy to have dwelt on Helicon in early youth.
9. What good is it now that Tarquin's axes have been broken?
10. It is sheer gain to forswear a mother's buried ashes.
11. From this quarter it thunders, from that the sky is rent by lightning flash.

XXXII.

1. There is sport in camp.
2. They had come to the banks.
3. With rival shouts they meet.
4. They run to and fro through all the city.
5. To-morrow, as report says, there will be fighting all over the city.
6. If thou wilt not obey, thou must die.
7. We must pray for a healthy mind in a healthy body.
8. They go into an ancient forest, the wild beasts' deep lair.
9. They rise, the council is dismissed, and the princes are bidden to depart.
10. That man enjoys life cheaply, on whose frugal board shines the ancestral salt cellar.

XXXIII.

1. Dost thou wish to be greeted?
2. Forbear to defile righteous hands.
3. They prepare to go into the wood.
4. Fancy thou seest my tears.
5. She takes joy to handle the rough ropes.
6. Love knows not how to yield to great wealth.

Digitized by Google

7. They that wish not to slay any one, wish to be able to do so.
8. He that would become rich, would become so quickly.
9. Learn from our she-wolf to spare boys.
10. Often did I wish to distinguish and count the hues, but I could not.

XXXIV.

1. To have lodged in the byres and fed flocks, was against them.
2. Often by sinning has a man made the gods his foes.
3. For mere life's sake to lose all reasons for living.
4. At dawn I come to greet thee.
5. Wondrous to tell.
6. Mæcenas goes to play, Virgil and I to doze.
7. In her zeal for gathering by degrees she goes too far.
8. They come to look, they come to be looked at themselves.
9. There lurked a viper ill to touch.
10. Allow me, putting guile aside, to disclose things not pleasant in the telling.

XXXV.

1. To whom will Jupiter give the task of atoning for guilt?
2. By singing thy wars I shall be a great poet.
3. Thou hast the right of learning.
4. Septimius, ready to go with me to Gades!
5. The deadly dropsy grows by self-indulgence.
6. Thou mayest have a wider realm by curbing thy ambition.
7. I shall go to be the slave of Greek ladies.
8. Following the gods' behests we are come to ask from hence oracles for our fallen fortunes.
9. Inborn love of gaining urges the Attic bees.
10. May the field yield increase of wheat, and spelt that will feel the fire twice, and barley with abundant usury.

XXXVI.

1. Soon overpowered by bonds he returns to his own shape.
2. Landing we pay reverence to Apollo's city.
3. The chariots rush streaming from the barriers.
4. Thou wilt depart from the woodlands thou hast purchased and thy house.
5. Having thrice lived a lifetime.
6. There is no lustre on silver while buried in the niggard earth.
7. What wrong have we left undone?
8. O, ye who have borne worse troubles than these, even to these will God give an end.

XXXVII.

1. I fall, a burden for my maidens to catch.
2. Battles for wives to tell of.
3. Now must I tell of the king's flight.
5. The wretches must buy cabbages and fuel.

Digitized by Google

4. A region unapproachable by man or beast.
6. The funeral procession goes, a mark for the applause of angry friends.
7. Thou must imitate thy own Diana's arms.
8. Is Lavinia given up to be mated with Trojan exiles?
9. Daughter of Sidon, thus hadst thou been meet for Jove's regard.
10. I appeal to my ancestors' ashes, worthy of thy reverence, O Rome!
11. If thou wouldest have me weep, thou must first grieve thyself.

XXXVIII.

1. Thou beginnest better than thou endest.
2. Unlike are this man and that boy.
3. Those they praise, but these they read.
4. Virtue is praised, and starves.
5. The rich man owned either flocks or broad acres.
6. Numa omits not Janus, nor the shades of his ancestors.
7. Crassus at Euphrates lost his eagles, his son, his men.
8. Fear not, nor long for the day of death.
9. Countless men stand around and are silent.
10. To thy embraces will come mother, and brother, and father, and sister.

XXXIX.

1. The load, which is contentedly borne, becomes light.
2. The wealth, which thou shalt bestow, thou shalt alone possess always.
3. What is thine, keep to thyself: what is mine, give back to me.
4. I, that am called Flora, was Chloris.
5. I am not such as I was.
6. Obey the advice, most excellent advice, which Nautes gives.
7. Happy ye whose city is already rising.
8. Hail, reverend sire, whom fierce Juno now favours.
9. Dost thou eat the plumage which thou commendest?
10. She bore herself the fate, which she averted from her brother.

XL.

1. He believes that the enemy's bands are at hand.
2. I have been taught that gods live a life free from care.
3. We believe that deep rivers ran dry.
4. The Arcadians believe that they have seen Jove himself.
5. Thinkest thou that two can sit on one horse?
6. Who would think the place could have so great a destiny?
7. It is a common saying that bad women marry in May.
8. Thou knowest, and dost admit thou knowest, that Æneas is due to the heaven.
9. Segius maintains that there are no gods, that heaven is empty.
10. I remember when a boy having often made the weary sun set while singing.

Digitized by Google

XLI.

1. What are those heavenly powers, he demands.
2. The fleeting year is a warning not to hope for things immortal.
3. No one is so savage that he cannot grow mild, if only he lends a patient ear to training.
4. We see not what cause produces the sound.
5. Learn songs which thou mayest sing with that lovely voice.
6. If only he can get out of it a laugh for himself, he will not spare any friend.
7. Lastly he asked why he had ever run away.
8. I have nothing to do.
9. Praise, that thou mayest be praised when away.

XLII.

1. The countryman waits till the river flow past.
2. Knowest thou not to what end money serves?
3. Thou seest with what tumult Orion hastens to his setting.
4. Forbear to ask what will be to-morrow.
5. What I fear I know not.
6. There will be another to rule Thrace.
7. I have hands which a sceptre might become.
8. What reason is there why Jupiter should not rightly puff out in his wrath both his cheeks at them, and say he will not hereafter be so complacent as to lend an ear to their vows.

XLIII.

1. There was not one who would marry a Roman.
2. What my beauty was, it troubles my modesty to tell.
3. I doubt whether I should boast more of brother or of husband.
4. It makes a difference whether thou art good or only wishest to seem so.
5. He will ask why I am away.
6. So mean that he never dressed himself better than a slave.
7. Unhappy Ufens fell that he might not see our disgrace.
8. Lest you should think I have stolen the portfolio of blear-eyed Crispinus, I will add not another word.

Digitized by Google

INDEX.

N.B.—Words in Italics are to be looked out in one of the three Lists :—

List of Latin Verbs.
List of Latin Conjunctions.
List of English Prepositions, &c.

A very few only of the words in these Lists are repeated in this Index.

Figures in brackets refer to the words which immediately precede them.
All other figures refer to pages.

A.

Ablative Absolute, 113, 124, and "*on*"
Ablative Singular, 3rd Declension, 84
—— of Adjectives, 23
Abounding, Verbs and Adjectives of, 113
Accusative Singular, 3rd Declension, 84
Accusing, Verbs of, 106
Ăcĕr, 23
Acquitting, Verbs of, 106
Ădĕŏr, 74
Adverbs, 89
—— Comparison of, 28
Agent, 113
Aiō, 78
Ălĭŭs, 21. See "*one*"
Ăltĕr, 21. See "*one*"
Ambō, 25. See "*both*"
Ăntĕquam, 152. See "*before*"
Apodosis, 127
Apposition, 100
Ās, 93
Asking, Verbs of, 109
Āt. See "*but*"
Aut. See "*either*"
Autem. See "*but*"
Āvē, 79

C.

Calling, Verbs of, 109
Cardinal numbers, 90, etc.
Cause, Ablative of, 112
Cœpi, 78
Complement, 102
—— in Dative, 102
Condemning, Verbs of, 106
Conditional Sentences, 127

D.

Dates, 95, 96
Dative of Complement, 102
—— Plural, 1st Decl., 83
Dĕă, 83
Dēbĕō. See "*ought*"
Declinable words, 4
Defective Substantives, 87
—— Verbs, 78
Dependent Clauses, 122
Deponent Verbs, 79
Dignŭs, 113
Diminutives, 88
Distributive numerals, 90
Dō, 80
Dŏmum, 110
Dŏmŭs declined, 15
Dōnĕc, 152
Dum, 153
Duration of Time, 111

E.

Ĕdō, 64
Empty, Verbs and Adjectives signifying, 113
Ĕō, 72
Epithet explained, 105
Ĕtsĭ, 153

F.

Fārĭ, Fātŭr, } 79, 80
Fĕrō, 60
Fĭlĭă, 83
Fīō, 76
Forgetting, Verbs of, 106
Fractions, 93
Frĕtŭs, 113
Full, Verbs and Adjectives signifying, 113
Future Infinitive, formation and use of, 121

G.

Genders of Substantives, 5
—— 1st Declension, 6, 85
—— 2nd Declension, 9, 86
—— 3rd Declension, 85, 86
—— 4th Declension, 15
—— 5th Declension, 17
Genitive Singular of 2nd Declension, 83
—— Singular of 5th Declension, 85
—— Plural of 1st Declension, 83
—— Plural of 2nd Declension, 83, 84
—— Plural of 3rd Declension, 13, 84, 85
Gerunds, 116, 117
Gerundive, 117
Greek Substantives, 83

H.

HS and **H̄S,** 94

I.

"**-ī**" for "**-ē**" in Ablative Singular of 3rd Declension, 84
"**-im**" for "**-em**" in Accusative Singular of 3rd Declension, 84
Imperative Mood, 123.
Impersonal Verbs, 79, 105, 114
Indeclinable Parts of Speech, 4
Indignŭs, 113
Infinitive Mood, 116, 117
—— Future, formation and use of, 121
Inquam, 79

Digitized by Google

Instăr. See "*like*"
Instrument, Ablative of, 113
Interest of money, 93
Intĕrēst, 189
Intransitive explained, 98
"-lĭ," Verbs of 3rd Conjugation in, 54 etc.

K.

Kindred meaning, Accusative of, 109

L.

Licĕt, Conjunction, 154
Licĕt, Impersonal Verb, 191 and "*may*"
Link Verbs, 101, 102
Locative Case, 232

M.

Making, Verbs of, 109
Mālō, 70
Manner, Ablative of, 112
Means, Ablative of, 112
Measure, Ablative of, 112
Mĕmĭnĭ, 78, 106, 193
Millĕ, 91, 293
Money, 94
Motion from, 112
—— to, 110

N.

"-nĕ" (enclitic). See "*do*" and "*whether*"
Nĕ, 154. See "*do*" and "*lest*"
Nēmō, Declension of, 270
Nēmō nōn. See "*all*"
Nōlō, 68
Nōnnĕ. See "*will,*" 303
Nōvī, 78
Nullŭs nōn. See "*all*"
Numerals, 90, etc.
Num. See "*will,*" 303, and "*if*" (6)

O.

Objective Genitive, 104. See "*for*"
Ŏdī, 78
Origin, Ablative of, 112
Ŏmnĭs. See "*all*"
Ŏpŏrtĕt. See "*ought*"
Ŏpŭs ("need"), 113
Oratio Obliqua, 126
Ordinal numbers, 90, etc.

P.

Part affected, 110
Parts of Speech, 4
Partitive Genitive, 104
Pătĕrfămĭlĭās, 87
Place whence, 112
—— where, 112
—— whither, 110
Possessive Genitive, 103
—— Pronoun, 30. See "*he*" and "*self*"
Pŏssum, 58
Pŏstquam, 155 and "*after*"
Predicate, 97
Prepositions, list of Latin, 81, 82
Price, Genitive of, 103
—— Ablative of, 112
Prĭūsquam, 155. See "*before*"
Pronouns, 29, etc., 88, etc.
Prŏtāsis, 127

Q.

Quālēsō, 79
Quality, Genitive of, 105
—— Ablative of, 112
Quam, 114. See "*than*"
Quāmquam, 155
Quāmvis, 155
Quāndō, 155
Questions. See "*do*" and "*whether*"
Quī, 33, 156
Quīdam, 89, 220
Quīn, 157. See "*but*" and "*that*"
Quīs, 33, 34. See "*any*"
Quīsquam, 89. See "*any*"
Quīsquē. See "*all*" and "*each*"
Quīvis, 89. See "*any*"
Quŏād. 158
Quōmĭnŭs, 158. See "*from*"
Quum, 158

R.

Rĕcōrdŏr, 106
Rĕfĕrĭ, 209
Relative, 118, 156
Remembering, Verbs of, 106
Rĕspŭblĭcā, 87
Rich, Verbs and Adjectives signifying, 113
Rŭs, 110

S.

Sālvē, 79
Sēstĕrtĭŭs, 94
Sī, 127
Space, in Accusative, 111
Subject, 97, 100, 101
—— Case of, 101, 119
Subjective Genitive, 103
Sŭī, 30. See "*he*" and "*self*"
Sum, 36
—— Compounds of, 107
Sŭŭs. See "*he*" and "*self*"

T.

Thinking, Verbs of, 109
Time, how long, 111
—— when, 112
Transitive explained, 98

U.

Ūnquam. See "*ever*"
Ūsŭs ("use"), 113
Ŭt, 160. See "*that*"
Ŭtĕr, 21. See "*whether*" and "*who*"
Ŭtĕrquĕ. See "*both*" and "*each*"
Ŭtĭnam. See "*would,*" 305
Ŭtrum. See "*whether*"

V.

Vās (vāsis), 88
Vĕl. See "*either*"
Vĕrō. See "*but*"
Vĕrum. See "*but*"
Vĕspĕrā, 88
Vōstĕr. See "*thy,*" "*your*"
Vocative Singular of 2nd Declension, 83
Vŏlŏ, 66

W.

Wanting, Verbs and Adjectives of, 113
Whether, 300, 301

LONDON: PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED, STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

NOV 17 1888

SEP 19 1895

DUE NOV 8 1920

DUE SEP 2 1928

DUE OCT 20 39

Western Res.
5/1/42

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google